THE UNIVERSAL ANGLER,

Made ſo, by

Three BOOKS OF

FISHING.

The *Firſt*
Written by Mr. *IZAAK WALTON*;

The *Second*
By *CHARLES COTTON* Eſq;

The *Third*
By Col. *ROBERT VENABLES*.

All which may be bound together, or ſold each of them ſeverally.

LONDON,
Printed for *Richard Marriott*, and ſold by moſt Bookſellers. MDCLXXVI.

THE

UNIVERSAL

PART. I.

BEING A

DISCOURSE

OF

Rivers, Fish-ponds, Fish & Fishing.

Written by *IZAAK WALTON.*

The Fifth Edition, much corrected and enlarged.

London, Printed for *R. Marriot*, and are to be sold by *Charles Harper* at his Shop, the next door to the *Crown* near *Sergeants-Inn* in *Chancery Lane*, 1676.

To the Right worſhipful

JOHN OFFLEY

Of *Madely* Manor in the County of *Stafford*, Eſq;

My moſt honoured Friend,

SIR,

I Have made ſo ill uſe of your former favours, as by them to be encouraged to intreat that they may be enlarged to the *Patronage* and *protection* of this Book; and I have put on a modeſt confidence, that I ſhall not be deny'd, becauſe

it is a Diſcourſe of *Fiſh* and *Fiſhing*, which you know ſo well, and both love and practiſe ſo much.

You are aſſured (though there be ignorant men of another belief) that *Angling* is an *Art*; and you know that *Art* better than others; and that this is truth is demonſtrated by the fruits of that pleaſant labour which you enjoy when you purpoſe to give reſt to your mind, and deveſt your ſelf of your more ſerious buſineſs, and (which is often) dedicate a day or two to this *Recreation*.

At which time if *common Anglers* ſhould attend you, and be eye witneſſes of the ſucceſs, not of your *fortune*

tune but your *skill*, it would doubtleſs beget in them an emulation to be like you, and that emulation might beget an induſtrious diligence to be ſo; but I know it is not attainable by common capacities. And there be now many men of great *wiſdom*, *learning* and *experience* which love and practiſe this *Art*, that know I ſpeak the truth.

Sir, This pleaſant curioſity of Fiſh and Fiſhing, (of which you are ſo great a Maſter) has been thought worthy the *Pens* and *Practiſes* of divers in other Nations, that have been reputed men of great *Learning* and *Wiſdom*, and amongſt thoſe of this Nation, I remember Sir *Henry*

Wotton (a dear lover of this Art) has told me that his intentions were to write a Diſcourſe of the Art, and in praiſe of *Angling*, and doubtleſs he had done ſo, if death had not prevented him; the remembrance of which hath often made me ſorry, for if he had lived to do it, then the unlearned *Angler* had ſeen ſome better Treatiſe of this Art, a Treatiſe that might have prov'd worthy his peruſal, which (though ſome have undertaken) I could never yet ſee in Engliſh.

But mine may be thought as *weak*, and as *unworthy* of common view; and I do here freely confeſs, that I ſhould rather excuſe my ſelf, than

than cenſure others, my own Diſcourſe being liable to ſo may exceptions; againſt which you (Sir) might make this one, *That it can contribute nothing to your Knowledge.* And leſt a longer Epiſtle may diminiſh your pleaſure, I ſhall make this no longer than to add this following Truth, *That I am really,*

SIR,

Your moſt affectionate Friend,

and moſt humble Servant,

Iz. Wa.

To all Readers of this Discourse, but especially to the honest *ANGLER*.

Think fit to tell thee these following truths, That I did neither undertake, *nor* write, *nor* publish, *and much less* own, *this Discourse to please my self: and having been too easily drawn to do all to please others, as I propos'd not the gaining of credit by this undertaking, so I would not willingly lose any part of that to which I had a just title before I begun it, and do therefore desire and hope, if I deserve not commendations, yet, I may obtain pardon.*

And though this Discourse may be liable to some Exceptions, yet I cannot doubt but that most Readers may receive so much pleasure *or* profit *by it, as may make it worthy the time of their perusal, if they be not too grave or too busie men. And this is all the confidence that I can put on concerning the merit of what is here offered to their consideration and censure; and if the last prove too severe, as I have a liberty, so I am resolv'd to use it and neglect all sowre Censures.*

And I wish the Reader *also to take notice, that in writing of it I have made my self a* recreation *of a* recreation, *and that it might prove so to him, and not read* dull *and* tediously, *I have in several places mixt (not any scurrility, but) some innocent, harmless mirth, of which, if thou be a severe, sowre-complexion'd man, then I here disallow thee to be*

a competent judge; for Divines *say,* There are offences given, and offences not given but taken.

And I am the willinger to justifie the pleasant part of it, because though it is known I can be serious at seasonable times, yet the whole discourse is, or rather was, a picture of my own disposition, especially in such days and times as I have laid aside business, and gone a fishing with honest Nat. *and* R. Roe; *but they are gone, and with them most of my pleasant hours, even as a shadow, that passeth away, and returns not.*

And next let me add this, that he that likes not the book, should like the excellent picture of the Trout, *and some of the other fish, which I may take a liberty to commend, because they concern not my self.*

Next let me tell the Reader, *that in that which is the more useful part of this* Discourse, *that is to say, the observations of the* nature *and* breeding, *and* seasons, *and* catching of Fish, *I am not so simple as not to know, that a captious Reader may find exceptions against something said of some of these; and therefore I must entreat him to consider, that experience teaches us to know, that several Countries alter the time, and I think almost the manner, of fishes breeding, but doubtless of their being in season; as may appear by three Rivers in* Monmouthshire, *namely* Severn, Wie, *and* Usk, *where* Cambden (Brit. f. 633.) *observes, that*

in

in the River Wie, Salmon *are in season from* Sept. *to* April, *and we are certain, that in* Thames *and* Trent, *and in most other Rivers they be in season the six hotter months.*

Now for the Art of catching *fish, that is to say, how to make a man that was none, to be an Angler by a book? he that undertakes it shall undertake a harder task, than Mr.* Hales *(a most valiant and excellent Fencer) who in a printed book called,* A private School of Defence *) undertook to teach that art or science, and was laugh'd at for his labour. Not but that many useful things might be learnt by that book, but he was laugh'd at, because that art was not to be taught by words, but practice: and so must Angling. And note also, that in this Discourse I do not undertake to say all that is known, or may be said of it, but I undertake to acquaint the Reader with many things that are not usually known to every Angler; and I shall leave gleanings and observations enough to be made out of the experience of all that love and practise this recreation, to which I shall encourage them. For* Angling *may be said to be so like the* Mathematicks, *that it can ne'r be fully learnt; at least not so fully, but that there will still be more new experiments left for the tryal of other men that succeed us.*

But I think all that love this game may here learn something that may be worth their money, if they be not poor and needy men; and in case they be,

I then wiſh them to forbear to buy it; for I write not to get money, but for pleaſure, and this Diſcourſe boaſts of no more; for I hate to promiſe much, and deceive the Reader.

And however it proves to him, yet I am ſure I have found a high content in the ſearch and conference of what is here offer'd to the Reader's view and cenſure: I wiſh him as much in the peruſal of it, and ſo I might here take my leave, but will ſtay a little and tell him, that whereas it is ſaid by many, that in fiye-fiſhing for a Trout, *the Angler muſt obſerve his* 12 *ſeveral flies for the twelve months of the year; I ſay, he that follows that rule, ſhall be as ſure to catch fiſh, and be as wiſe, as he that makes Hay by the fair days in an Almanack, and no ſurer; for thoſe very flies that uſe to appear about and on the water in one month of the year, may the following year come almoſt a month ſooner or later; as the ſame year proves colder or hotter; and yet in the following Diſcourſe I have ſet down the twelve flies that are in reputation with many Anglers, and they may ſerve to give him ſome obſervations concerning them. And he may note that there are in* Wales *and other Countries, peculiar* flies, *proper to the particular place or Country; and doubtleſs, unleſs a man makes a flie to counterfeit that very flie in that place, he is like to loſe his labour, or much of it: But for the generality, three or four* flies *neat and rightly made, and not too big, ſerve for a* Trout *in moſt Rivers all the Summer. And*

for

for Winter fiie-fiſhing *it is as uſeful as an Almanack out of date. And of theſe (becauſe as no man is born an artiſt, ſo no man is born an Angler) I thought fit to give thee this notice.*

When I have told the Reader, that in this fifth Impreſſion there are many enlargements, gathered both by my own obſervation, and the communication with friends, I ſhall ſtay him no longer than to wiſh him a rainy evening to read this following Diſcourſe; *and that (if he be an honeſt Angler)* the Eaſt wind may never blow when he goes a Fiſhing.

J. W.

TO

To my dear Brother Mr Izaak Walton, *upon his* Compleat Angler.

ERaſmus in his learned Colloquies
Has mixt ſome toys, that by varieties
He might entice all Readers: for in him
Each *child* may wade, or talleſt *giant* ſwim.
And ſuch is this Diſcourſe: there's none ſo low,
Or highly learn'd, to whom hence may not flow
Pleaſure and information: both which are
Taught us with ſo much art, that I might ſwear
Safely, the choiceſt Critick cannot tell,
Whether your matchleſs judgment moſt excell
In *Angling* or its *praiſe*: where commendation
Firſt charms, then makes an *art* a *recreation*.
'Twas ſo to me: who *ſaw* the chearful *Spring*
Pictur'd in every *meadow*, heard *birds* ſing
Sonnets in every *grove*, ſaw *fiſhes* play
In the cool *cryſtal ſtreams*, like *lambs* in *May*:
And they may play, till *Anglers* read this *book*;
But after, 'tis a wiſe *fiſh* ſcapes a *hook*.

Jo. Floud, Mr. of Arts.

To

To the Reader of the *Compleat Angler*.

FIrſt mark the Title well; my Friend that (gave it
Has made it good; this book deſerves to have (it.
For he that views it with judicious looks,
Shall find it full of *art*, *baits*, *lines* and *hooks*.
The *world* the *river* is, both you and I,
And all mankind are either *fiſh* or *fry*:
If we pretend to reaſon, firſt or laſt
His baits will tempt us, and his hooks hold faſt.
Pleaſure or profit, either proſe or rhime,
If not at firſt, will doubtleſs take's in time.
Here ſits in ſecret bleſt *Theology*,
Waited upon by grave *Philoſophy*,
Both *natural* and *moral*, *Hiſtory*
Deck'd and adorn'd with flowers of *Poetry*,
The matter and expreſſion ſtriving which
Shall moſt excell in worth, yet not ſeem rich:
There is no danger in his *baits*, that *hook*
Will prove the ſafeſt, that is ſureſt took.
Nor are we caught alone, but (which is beſt)
We ſhall be wholſom, and be toothſom dreſt:
Dreſt to be fed, not to be fed upon;
And danger of a ſurfeit here is none.
The ſolid food of ſerious Contemplation
Is ſauc'd here with ſuch harmleſs recreation,
That an *ingenuous* and *religious* mind
Cannot inquire for more than it may find

Ready

Ready at once prepar'd, either t' excite
Or ſatisfie a curious appetite.
More praiſe is due; for 'tis both poſitive
And truth, which once was interrogative,
And utter'd by the Poet then in jeſt,
Et piſcatorem piſcis amare poteſt.

Ch. Harvie. Mr. of Arts.

To my dear Friend, Mr. Iz. Walton, *in praiſe of Angling, which we both love.*

DOwn by this ſmooth ſtreams wandring ſide,
Adorn'd & perfum'd with the pride
Of *Flora*'s Wardrobe, where the ſhrill
Aerial Quire expreſs their skill,
Firſt in alternate melody,
And then in Chorus all agree.
Whilſt the charm'd fiſh, as extaſi'd
With ſounds, to his own throat deni'd,
Scorns his dull Element, and ſprings
I'th' air, as if his Fins were wings.
Tis here that pleaſures ſweet and high
Proſtrate to our embraces lye.
Such as to Body, Soul or Fame
Create no ſickneſs, ſin or ſhame.
Roſes not fenc'd with pricks grow here,

No

No sting to th' Hony-bag is near.
But (what's perhaps their prejudice)
They difficulty want and price
An obvious Rod, a twist of hair,
With hook hid in an insect, are
Engines of sport, would fit the wish
O'th' Epicure and fill his dish.
In this clear stream let fall a *Grub*.
And straight take up a *Dace* or *Chub*.
Ith' mud your worm provokes a *Snig*,
Which being fast, if it prove big
The *Gotham* folly will be found
Discreet, e're ta'ne she must be drown'd.
The *Tench* (Physician of the Brook)
In yon dead hole expects your hook,
Which having first your pastime been,
Serves then for meat or medicine.
Ambush'd behind that root doth stay
A *Pike*, to catch and be a prey.
The treacherous Quill in this slow stream
Betrays the hunger of a *Bream*.
And at that nimbler Ford, (no doubt)
Your false flie cheats a speckled *Trout*.
When you these creatures wisely chuse
To practise on, which to your use
Owe their creation, and when
Fish from your arts do rescue men;
To plot, delude, and circumvent,
Ensnare and spoil, is innocent.

Here

Here by theſe cryſtal ſtreams you may
Preſerve a Conſcience clear as they;
And when by ſullen thoughts you find
Your haraſſed, not buſied, mind
In ſable melancholy clad,
Diſtemper'd, ſerious, turning ſad;
Hence fetch your cure, caſt in your bait,
All anxious thoughts and cares will ſtraight
Fly with ſuch ſpeed, they'l ſeem to be
Poſſeſt with the *Hydrophobie*.
The waters calmneſs in your breaſt,
And ſmoothneſs on your brow ſhall reſt.
Away with ſports of charge and noiſe,
And give me cheap and ſilent joys,
Such as *Actæons* game purſue,
Their fate oft makes the Tale ſeem true.
The ſick or ſullen *Hawk* to day
Flyes not; to morrow, quite away.
Patience and Purſe to Cards and Dice
Too oft are made a ſacrifice:
The Daughters dower, th' inheritance
O'th' ſon, depend on one mad chance.
The harms and miſchiefs which th'abuſe
Of wine doth every day produce,
Make good the Doctrine of the *Turks*,
That in each grape a devil lurks,
And by yon fading ſapleſs tree,
Bout which the *Ivy* twin'd you ſee,
His fate's foretold, who fondly places
His bliſs in womans ſoft embraces.

All pleaſures, but the Anglers, bring
I'th' tail repentance like a ſting.
Then on theſe banks let me ſit down,
Free from the toilſom Sword and Gown,
And pity thoſe that do affect
To conquer Nations and protect.
My Reed affords ſuch true content,
Delights ſo ſweet and innocent,
As ſeldom fall unto the lot
Of Scepters, though they'r *juſtly got*.

1649. *Tho. Weaver*, Mr. of Arts.

To the Readers of my moſt ingenuous Friends Book, The Compleat Angler.

He that both knew and writ the lives of men,
Such as were once, but muſt not be agen:
Witneſs his matchleſs *Donne* and *Wotton*, by
Whoſe aid he could their ſpeculations try:
He that convers'd with *Angels*, ſuch as were
Ouldſworth and *Featly*, each a ſhining ſtar
Shewing the way to *Bethlem*; each a Saint;
(Compar'd to whom our *Zelots* now but paint)
He that our pious and learn'd *Morley* knew,
And from him ſuck'd *wit* and *devotion* too:
He that from theſe ſuch excellencies fetch'd,
(reach'd;
That *He* could tell how high and far they
What

What learning this, what graces th'other had;
And in what ſeveral dreſs each ſoul was clad.

Reader, this *HE*, this *Fiſherman* comes forth,
And in theſe Fiſhers weeds would ſhroud his worth.
Now his mute Harp is on a Willow hung,
With which when finely toucht, & fitly ſtrung,
He could friends paſſions for theſe times allay;
Or chain his fellow-*Anglers* from their prey.
But now the muſick of his pen is ſtill,
And he ſits by a brook watching a quill:
Where with a fixt eye, and a ready hand,
He ſtudies firſt to hook, and then to land
Some *Trout*, or *Pearch*, or *Pike*; and having done,
Sits on a Bank, and tells how this was won,
And that eſcap'd his hook; which with a wile
Did eat the bait, and Fiſherman beguile. (thrown,
Thus whilſt ſome vex they from their lands are
He joys to think the waters are his own,
And like the *Dutch*, he gladly can agree
To live at peace now, and have *fiſhing* free.

April 3. 1650. *Edw. Powel*, Mr. of Arts.

To my dear Brother, Mr. Iz. Walton *on his* Compleat Angler.

THis Book is so like you, and you like it,
For harmless Mirth, Expression, Art & Wit,
That I protest ingenuously 'tis true,
I love this Mirth, Art, Wit, the Book and You.

Rob. Floud, C.

Clarissimo amicissimoq; Fratri, Domino *Isaaco Walton*, Artis Piscatoriæ peritissimo.

UNicus est Medicus reliquorum piscis, & istis
Fas quibus est Medicum tangere, certa salus.
Hic typus est Salvatoris mirandus Jesu,
b Litera mysterium quælibet hujus habet.
Hunc cupio, hunc capias (bone frater Arundinis) (ἰχθὺν
q *Solveret hic pro me debita, teque Deo.*
Piscis is est, & piscator (mihi credito) qualem
Vel piscatorem piscis amare velit.

q Mat. 17. 27. the last words of the Chapter.

b Ἰχθὺς *Piscis.*
Ι Ἰησοῦς *Jesus.*
χ Χριςὸς *Christus.*
θ Θεοῦ *Dei.*
υ Υἱὸς *Filius.*
σ σωτὴρ *Salvator.*

Henry Bayley, *Artium Magister*,

Ad Virum optimum, & Piſcatorem peritiſſimum, *Iſaacum Waltonum*.

Magiſter artis docte Piſcatorie,
Waltone *ſalve, magne dux arundinis,*
Seu tu reductâ valle ſolus ambulas,
Præterfluentes interim obſervans aquas,
Seu fortè puri ſtans in amnis margine,
Sive in tenaci gramine & ripâ ſedens,
Fallis peritâ ſquameum pecus manu;
O te beatum! qui procul negotiis,
Foriq; & urbis pulvere & ſtrepitu carens,
Extraq; turbam, ad lenè manantes aquas
Vagos honeſtâ fraude piſces decipis.
Dum cætera ergo pænè gens mortalium
Aut retia invicem ſibi & technas ſtruunt,
Donis, ut hamo, aut divites capt ant ſenes,
Gregi natantûm tu interim nectis dolos,
Voracem ineſcas advenam hamo lucium,
Avidamvè percam parvulo alburno capis,
Aut verme ruffo, muſculâ aut truttam levi,
Cautumvè cyprinum, & ferè indocilem capi
Calamoq; linoq; (ars at hunc ſuperat tua)
Medicamvè tincam, gobium aut eſcâ trahis,
Gratum palato gobium, parvum licet,
Prædamvè, non æque ſalubrem barbulum,
Etſi ampliorem, & myſtace inſignem gravi.
Hæ ſunt tibi artes, dum annus & tempus ſinunt,
Et nulla tranſit abſq; linea dies.

Nec ſola praxis, ſed theoria & tibi
Nota artis hujus; unde tu ſimul bonus
Piſcator, idem & ſcriptor; & calami potens
Utriusq; necdum & ictus, & tamen ſapis.
Ut hamiotam nempe tironem inſtruas,
Stylo eleganti ſcribis en Halieutica
Oppianus alter, artis & methodum tuæ, &
Præcepta promis rite piſcatoria,
Varias & eſcas piſcium, indolem, & genus.
Nec tradere artem ſat putas piſcariam,
(Virtutis eſt & hæc tamen quædam Schola
Patientiamq; & temperantiam docet)
Documenta quin majora das, & regulas
Sublimioris artis, & perennia
Monimenta morum, vitæ & exempla optima;
Dum tu profundum ſcribis Hookerum, *& pium*
Donnum *ac diſertum, ſanctum &* Herbertum, *ſa-*
Vatem; hos videmus uam penicillo tuo (*crum*
Graphicè, & peritâ, Iſace, *depictos manu.*
Poſt fata factos hoſce per te Virbios
O quæ voluptas eſt legere in ſcriptis tuis!
Sic tu libris nos, lineis piſces capis,
Muſiſq; litteriſq; dum incumbis, licet
Intentus hamo, interq; piſcandum ſtudes.

Aliud

Aliud ad *Iſaacum Waltonum*, virum & Piſcatorem optimum.

ISACE, *Macte hâc arte piſcatoriâ;*
Hâc arte Petrus *Principi cenſum dedit;*
Hâc arte Princeps nec Petro *multò prior,*
Tranquillus ille, teſte Tranquillo, Pater
Patriæ, ſolebat recreare ſe lubens
Auguſtus, hamo inſtructus ac arundine.
Tu nunc, Amice, proximum clari es decus
Poſt Cæſarem hami, gentis ac Halieuticæ:
Euge o Profeſſor artis haud ingloriæ,
Doctor Cathedræ, perlegens Piſcariam!
Næ tu Magiſter, & ego diſcipulus tuus,
(Nam candidatum & me ferunt arundinis)
Socium hac in arte nobilem Nacti ſumus.
Quid amplius, Waltone, *nam dici poteſt?*
Ipſe hamiota *Dominus en orbis fuit!*

Jaco. Dup. D. D.

THE COMPLEAT ANGLER, OR, THE Contemplative MAN'S RECREATION.

PART I.

CHAP. I.

A Conference betwixt an Angler, *a* Faulkner, *and a* Hunter, *each commending his Recreation.*

PISCATOR.
VENATOR.
AUCEPS.

Pisc. YOu are well overtaken, Gentlemen, a good morning to you both; I have ſtretched my legs up *Tottenham-hill* to overtake you, hoping your buſineſs may occaſion you towards *Ware* whether I am going this fine, freſh *May* morning.

Venat.

Venat. Sir, I for my part shall almost answer your hopes, for my purpose is to drink my mornings draught at the *Thatcht House* in *Hodsden*, and I think not to rest till I come thither, where I have appointed a friend or two to meet me: but for this Gentleman that you see with me, I know not how far he intends his journey; he came so lately into my company, that I have scarce had time to ask him the question.

Auceps. Sir, I shall by your favour bear you company as far as *Theobalds*, and there leave you, for then I turn up to a friends house who mews a Hawk for me, which I now long to see.

Venat. Sir, we are all so happy as to have a fine, fresh, cool morning, and I hope we shall each be the happier in the others company. And Gentlemen, that I may not lose yours, I shall either abate or amend my pace to enjoy it; knowing that (as the Italians say) *Good company in a Journey makes the way to seem the shorter.*

Auceps. It may do so Sir, with the help of good discourse, which methinks we may promise from you that both look and speak so chearfully: and for my part I promise you, as an invitation to it, that I will be as free and openhearted, as discretion will allow me to be with strangers.

Ven. and Sir, I promise the like.

Pisc.

Piſc. I am right glad to hear your anſwers, and in confidence you ſpeak the truth, I ſhall put on a boldneſs to ask you Sir, Whether buſineſs or pleaſure cauſed you to be ſo early up, and walk ſo faſt, for this other Gentleman hath declared he is going to ſee a Hawk, that a friend mews for him.

Ven. Sir mine is a mixture of both, a little buſineſs and more pleaſure, for I intend this day to do all my buſineſs, and then beſtow another day or two in hunting the *Otter*, which a friend that I go to meet, tells me, is much pleaſanter than any other chaſe whatſoever; howſoever I mean to try it; for to morrow morning we ſhall meet a pack of Otter dogs of *noble Mr Sadlers* upon *Amwell hill*, who will be there ſo early, that they intend to prevent the Sun-riſing.

Piſc. Sir, my fortune has anſwered my deſires, and my purpoſe is to beſtow a day or two in helping to deſtroy ſome of thoſe villanous vermin, for I hate them perfectly, becauſe they love fiſh ſo well, or rather, becauſe they deſtroy ſo much; indeed ſo much, that in my judgment all men that keep *Otter-dogs* ought to have penſions from the King to encourage them to deſtroy the very breed of thoſe baſe *Otters*, they do ſo much miſchief.

Ven. But what ſay you to the Foxes of the Nation, would not you as willingly have them de-

destroyed? for doubtless they do as much mischief as *Otters* do.

Pisc. Oh Sir, if they do, it is not so much to me and my fraternity as those base Vermine the *Otters* do.

Auc. Why Sir, I pray, of what Fraternity are you, that you are so angry with the poor *Otters*.

Pisc. I am (Sir) a brother of the *Angle*, and therefore an enemy to the *Otter*: for you are to note, that we Anglers all love one another, and therefore do I hate the *Otter* both for my own and for their sakes who are of my brotherhood.

Ven. And I am a lover of Hounds; I have followed many a pack of dogs many a mile, and heard many merry huntsmen make sport and scoff at Anglers.

Auc. And I profess my self a Faulkner, and have heard many grave, serious men pity them, 'tis such a heavy, contemptible, dull recreation.

Pisc. You know Gentlemen, 'tis an easie thing to scoff at any Art or Recreation; a little *wit* mixt with ill nature, confidence and *malice* will do it; but though they often venture boldly, yet they are often caught even in their own trap, according to that of *Lucian*, the father of the family of Scoffers.

Lucian

Lucian well skill'd in scoffing, this hath writ,
Friend, that's your folly which you think your wit:
This you vent oft, void both of wit and fear,
Meaning another, when your self you jeer.

If to this you add what *Solomon* says of Scoffers, that they are abomination to mankind. Let him that thinks fit, scoff on, and be a Scoffer still, but I account them enemies to me, and to all that love vertue and Angling.

And for you that have heard many grave serious men pity Anglers; let me tell you Sir, there be many men that are by others taken to be serious and grave men, which we contemn and pity. Men that are taken to be grave, because Nature hath made them of a sowre complexion, money-getting-men, men that spend all their time first in getting, and next in anxious care to keep it; men that are condemned to be rich, and then always busie or discontented: for these poor-rich-men, we Anglers pity them perfectly, and stand in no need to borrow their thoughts to think our selves so happy. No, no, Sir, we enjoy a contentedness above the reach of such dispositions, and as the learned and ingenuous* *Mountagne* sayes like him-self freely, ['When my Cat and I entertain each other with mutual apish tricks (*as playing with a garter*) who knows but 'that

* *in Apol. for Ra. Sebund.*

'that I make my Cat more ſport than ſhe makes 'me? ſhall I conclude her to be ſimple, that 'has her time to begin or refuſe to play as freely 'as I my ſelf have? Nay, who knowes but that 'it is a defect of my not underſtanding her 'language (for doubtleſs Cats talk and rea-'ſon with one another) that we agree no better: 'and who knows but that ſhe pitties me for be-'ing no wiſer, than to play with her, and laughs 'and cenſures my follie for making ſport for her 'when we too play together?

Thus freely ſpeaks *Mountaigne* concerning Cats, and I hope I may take as great a liberty to blame any man, and laugh at him too let him be never ſo grave, that hath not heard what Anglers can ſay in the juſtification of their Art and Recreation; which I may again tell you is ſo full of pleaſure, that we need not borrow their thoughts to think our ſelves happy.

Venat. Sir, you have almoſt amazed me, for though I am no ſcoffer, yet I have (I pray let me ſpeak it without offence) alwayes looked upon Anglers as more patient and more ſimple men, than I fear I ſhall find you to be.

Piſc. Sir, I hope you will not judge my earneſtneſs to be impatience: and for my *ſimplicity*, if by that you mean a harmleſneſs, or that ſimplicity which was uſually found in the primitive Chriſtians; who were (as moſt Anglers are) quiet men, and followers of peace; men that

that were so simply-wise, as not to sell their Consciences to buy riches, and with them vexation and a fear to die, If you mean such simple men as lived in those times when there were fewer Lawyers? when men might have had a Lordship safely conveyed to them in a piece of Parchment no bigger than your hand, (though several sheets will not do it safely in this wiser age) I say Sir, if you take us Anglers to be such simple men as I have spoke of, then my self and those of my profession will be glad to be so understood: But if by simplicity you meant to express a general defect in those that profess and practise the excellent Art of Angling, I hope in time to disabuse you, and make the contrary appear so evidently, that if you will but have patience to hear me, I shall remove all the Anticipations that discourse, or time, or prejudice have possess'd you with against that laudable and ancient art; for I know it is worthy the *knowledge* and *practise* of a wise man.

But (Gentlemen) though I be able to do this, I am not so unmannerly as to ingross all the discourse to my self: and therefore, you two having declared your selves, the one to be a lover of *Hawks*, the other of *Hounds*, I shall be most glad to hear what you can say in the commendation of that recreation which each of you love and practise; and having heard what you can say, I shall be glad to exercise your attention with what

what I can say concerning my own Recreation & Art of Angling, and by this means, we shall make the way to seem the shorter: and if you like my motion, I would have Mr. *Faulkner* to begin.

Anc. Your motion is consented to with all my heart, and to testifie it, I will begin as you have desired me.

And first, for the Element that I use to trade in, which is the Air, an Element of more worth than weight, an Element that doubtless exceeds both the Earth and Water; for though I sometimes deal in both, yet the Air is most properly mine, I and my Hawks use that most, and it yields us most recreation; it stops not the high soaring of my noble generous *Falcon*; in it she ascends to such an height, as the dull eyes of beasts and fish are not able to reach to; their bodies are too gross for such high elevations: in the Air my troops of Hawks soar up on high, and when they are lost in the sight of men, then they attend upon and converse with the gods, therefore I think my *Eagle* is so justly styled, *Joves servant in Ordinary*: and that very *Falcon*, that I am now going to see deserves no meaner a title, for she usually in her flight endangers her self, (like the son of *Dædalus*) to have her wings scorch'd by the Suns heat, she flyes so near it, but her mettle makes her careless of danger, for she then heeds nothing, but makes her nimble Pinions cut the fluid air, and so makes her high

way

way over the ſteepeſt mountains and deepeſt rivers, and in her glorious carere looks with contempt upon thoſe high Steeples and magnificent Palaces which we adore and wonder at; from which height I can make her to deſcend by a word from my mouth (which ſhe both knows and obeys) to accept of meat from my hand, to own me for her Maſter, to go home with me, and be willing the next day to afford me the like recreation.

And more; this Element of Air which I profeſs to trade in, the worth of it is ſuch, and it is of ſuch neceſſity, that no creature whatſoever, not only thoſe numerous creatures that feed on the face of the Earth, but thoſe various creatures that have their dwelling within the waters, every creature that hath life in its noſtrils ſtands in need of my Element. The Waters cannot preſerve the Fiſh without Air, witneſs the not breaking of Ice in an extream Froſt; the reaſon is, for that if the inſpiring and expiring Organ of any animal be ſtopt, it ſuddenly yields to Nature, and dies. Thus neceſſary is Air to the exiſtence both of Fiſh and Beaſts, nay, even to Man himſelf; that Air or breath of life with which God at firſt inſpired Mankind, he, if he wants it, dies preſently, becomes a ſad object to all that loved and beheld him, and in an inſtant turns to putrefaction.

Nay more, the very birds of the air, (those that be not Hawks) are both so many, and so useful and pleasant to mankind, that I must not let them pass without some observations: They both feed and refresh him; feed him with their choice bodies, and refresh him with their Heavenly voices. I will not undertake to mention the several kinds of Fowl by which this is done; and his curious palate pleased by day, and which with their very excrements afford him a soft lodging at night. These I will pass by, but not those little nimble Musicians of the air, that warble forth their curious Ditties, with which Nature hath furnished them to the shame of Art.

As first the *Lark*, when she means to rejoyce; to chear her self and those that hear her, she then quits the earth, and sings as she ascends higher into the air, and having ended her Heavenly imployment, grows then mute and sad to think she must descend to the dull earth, which she would not touch but for necessity.

How do the *Black-bird* and *Thrassel* with their melodious voices bid welcome to the chearful Spring, and in their fixed Months warble forth such ditties as no art or instrument can reach to?

Nay, the smaller birds also do the like in their particular seasons, as namely the *Leverock*, the *Tit-lark*, the little *Linnet*, and the honeſt

neſt *Robin*, that loves mankind both alive and dead.

But the *Nightingale* (another of my Airy Creatures) breaths ſuch ſweet loud muſick out of her little inſtrumental throat, that it might make mankind to think Miracles are not ceaſed. He that at midnight (when the very labourer ſleeps ſecurely) ſhould hear (as I have very often) the clear airs, the ſweet deſcants, the natural riſing and falling, the doubling and redoubling of her voice, might well be lifted above earth, and ſay; Lord, what Muſick haſt thou provided for the Saints in Heaven, when thou affordeſt bad men ſuch muſick on Earth!

And this makes me the leſs to wonder at the many *Aviaries* in *Italy*, or at the great charge of *Varro* his *Aviarie*, the ruines of which are yet to be ſeen in *Rome*, and is ſtill ſo famous there, that it is reckoned for one of thoſe Notables which men of forraign Nations either record, or lay up in their memories when they return from travel.

This for the birds of pleaſure, of which very much more might be ſaid. My nextſhall be of Birds of Political uſe; I think 'tis no to be doubted that Swallows have been taught to carry Letters betwixt two Armies. But 'tis certain that when the Turks beſieged *Malta* or *Rhodes* (I now remember not which 'twas) *Pi-*

geons are then related to carry and recarry Letters. And Mr. *G. Sandis* in his Travels (*fol.* 269.) relates it to be done betwixt *Aleppo* and *Babylon*. But if that be disbelieved, 'tis not to be doubted that the *Dove* was sent out of the Ark by *Noah*, to give him notice of Land, when to him all appeared to be Sea; and the *Dove* proved a faithful and comfortable messenger. And for the Sacrifices of the Law, a pair of *Turtle Doves* or young *Pigeons* were as well accepted as costly *Bulls* and *Rams*. And when God would feed the Prophet *Elijah*, (*1 King.* 17.) after a kind of miraculous manner he did it by *Ravens*, who brought him meat morning and evening. Lastly, the Holy Ghost when he descended visibly upon our Saviour, did it by assuming the shape of a *Dove*. And, to conclude this part of my discourse, pray remember these wonders were done by birds of the Air, the Element in which they and I take so much pleasure.

There is also a little contemptible winged Creature (an Inhabitant of my Aerial Element) namely, the laborious *Bee*, of whose *Prudence*, *Policy* and regular Government of their own Commonwealth I might say much, as also of their several kinds, and how useful their honey and wax is both for meat and Medicines to mankind; but I will leave them to their sweet labour, without the least disturbance, believing them to be all very busie at this very time amongst

mongſt the herbs and flowers that we ſee nature puts forth this *May* morning.

And now to return to my Hawks from whom I have made too long a digreſſion; you are to note, that they are uſually diſtinguiſhed into two kinds; namely, the long-winged and the ſhort-winged Hawk: of the firſt kind, there be chiefly in uſe amongſt us in this Nation,

The *Gerfalcon* and *Jerkin.*
The *Falcon* and *Taſſel-gentel.*
The *Laner* and *Laneret.*
The *Bockerel* and *Bockeret.*
The *Saker* and *Sacaret,*
The *Marlin* and *Jack Marlin.*
The *Hobby* and *Jack.*
There is the *Stelletto* of *Spain.*
The *Bloud* red *Rook* from *Turky.*
The *Waskite* from *Virginia.*
And there is of ſhort-winged Hawks
The *Eagle* and *Iron.*
The *Goſhawk* and *Tarcel.*
The *Sparhawk* and *Musket.*
The French *Pye* of two ſorts.

Theſe are reckoned Hawks of note and worth, but we have alſo of an inferiour rank.

The *Stanyel*, the *Ringtail.*
The *Raven*, the *Buzzard.*
The forked *Kite*, the bald *Buzzard.*

The *Hen-driver*, and others that I forbear to name.

Gentlemen, If I should enlarge my discourse to the observation of the *Eyes*, the *Brancher*, the *Ramish Hawk*, the *Haggard*, and the two sorts of *Lentners*, and then treat of their several *Ayries*, their *Mewings*, rare order of casting, and the renovation of their *Feathers*; their reclaiming, dyeting, and then come to their rare stories of practice; I say, if I should enter into these, and many other observations that I could make, it would be much, very much pleasure to me: but lest I should break the rules of Civility with you, by taking up more than the proportion of time allotted to me, I will here break off, and entreat you Mr. *Venator*, to say what you are able in the commendation of Hunting, to which you are so much affected, and if time will serve, I will beg your favour for a further enlargement of some of those several heads of which I have spoken. But no more at present.

Venat. Well Sir, and I will now take my turn, and will first begin with a commendation of the earth, as you have done most excellently of the Air, the Earth being that Element upon which I drive my pleasant, wholsom, hungry trade. The Earth is a solid, setled Element; an Element most universally beneficial both to man and beast: to men who have their several Re-

Recreations upon it, as Horſe-races, Hunting, ſweet ſmells, pleaſant walks: The Earth feeds man, and all thoſe ſeveral beaſts that both feed him, and afford him recreation: What pleaſure doth man take in hunting the ſtately *Stag*, the generous *Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the cunning *Otter*, the crafty *Fox*, and the fearful *Hare*? And if I may deſcend to a lower Game? what pleaſure is it ſometimes with Gins to betray the very vermine of the earth? as namely, the *Fichat*, the *Fulimart*, the *Ferret*, the *Pole-cat*, the *Mould-warp*, and the like creatures that live upon the face, and within the bowels of the earth. How doth the earth bring forth *herbs*, *flowers* and *fruits*, both for *phyſick* and the *pleaſure* of mankind? and above all, to me at leaſt, the fruitful *Vine*, of which, when I drink moderately, it clears my brain, chears my heart, and ſharpens my wit. How could *Cleopatra* have feaſted *Mark Antony* with eight Wild Boars roaſted whole at one Supper, and other meat ſuitable, if the earth had not been a bountiful mother? But to paſs by the mighty *Elephant*, which the earth breeds and nouriſheth, and deſcend to the leaſt of creatures, how doth the earth afford us a doctrinal example in the little *Piſmire*, who in the Summer provides and lays up her Winter proviſion, and teaches man to do the like? the earth feeds and carries thoſe horſes that carry us. If I would be prodigal of my time and your pati-

ence, what might not I say in commendations of the earth? That puts limits to the proud and raging *Sea*, and by that means preserves both man and beast that it destroys them not, as we see it daily doth those that venture upon the Sea, and are there ship-wrackt, drowned, and left to feed Haddocks; when we that are so wise as to keep our selves on *earth*, *walk*, and *talk*, and *live*, and *eat*, and *drink*, and go a *hunting*: of which recreation I will say a little, and then leave Mr. *Piscator* to the commendation of Angling.

Hunting is a game for Princes and noble persons; it hath been highly prized in all Ages; it was one of the qualifications that *Xenophon* bestowed on his *Cyrus*, that he was a Hunter of wild beasts. Hunting trains up the younger Nobility to the use of manly exercises in their riper age. What more manly exercise than *hunting the Wild Bore*, the *Stag*, the *Buck*, the *Fox* or the *Hare*? How doth it preserve health, and increase strength and activity?

And for the Dogs that we use, who can commend their excellency to that height which they deserve? How perfect is the Hound at *smelling*, who never leaves or forsakes his first scent, but follows it through so many changes and varieties of other scents, even over, and in the water, and into the earth? What musick doth a pack of Dogs then make to any man, whose heart and ears are so happy as to be set to the tune

tune of such instruments? How will a right *Greyhound* fix his eye on the best *Buck* in a *herd*, single him out, and follow him, and him only through a whole herd of Rascal game, and still know and then kill him? For my Hounds I know the language of them, and they know the language and meaning of one another as perfectly as we know the voices of those with whom we discourse daily.

I might enlarge my self in the commendation of *Hunting*, and of the noble Hound especially, as also of the docibleness of *dogs* in general; and I might make many observations of Land-creatures, that for composition, order, figure and constitution, approach neareſt to the compleatness and understanding of man; especially of those creatures which *Moses* in the Law permitted to the Jews, (which have cloven Hoofs and chew the Cud) which I shall forbear to name, because I will not be so uncivil to Mr. *Piscator*, as not to allow him a time for the commendation of *Angling*, which he calls an Art; but doubtless 'tis an easie one: and Mr. *Auceps*, I doubt we shall hear a watry discourse of it; but I hope twill not be a long one.

Auc. And I hope so too, though I fear it will.

Pisc. Gentlemen; let not prejudice prepossess you. I confess my discourse is like to prove

prove ſuitable to my Recreation *calm* and *quiet*; we ſeldom take the name of God into our mouths, but it is either to praiſe him or pray to him; if others uſe it vainly in the midſt of their recreations, ſo vainly as if they meant to conjure; I muſt tell you, it is neither our fault nor our cuſtom; we proteſt againſt it. But, pray remember I accuſe no body; for as I would not make a *watry* diſcourſe, ſo I would not put too much *vinegar* into it; nor would I raiſe the reputation of my own Art by the diminution or ruine of anothers. And ſo much for the Prologue to what I mean to ſay.

And now for the *Water*, the Element that I trade in. The *water* is the eldeſt daughter of the Creation, the Element upon which the Spirit of God did firſt move, the Element which God commanded to bring forth living creatures abundantly; and without which thoſe that inhabit the Land, even all creatures that have breath in their noſtrils muſt ſuddenly return to putrefaction. *Moſes* the great Law-giver and chief Philoſopher, skilled in all the learning of the Egyptians, who was called the friend of God, and knew the mind of the Almighty, names this Element the firſt in the Creation; this is the Element upon which the Spirit of God did firſt move, and is the chief Ingredient in the Creation: many Philoſophers have made it to comprehend all the other Elements, and

and moſt allow it the chiefeſt in the mixtion of all living creatures.

There be that profeſs to believe that all bodies are made of *water*, and may be reduced back again to water only: they endeavour to demonſtrate it thus,

Take a *Willow* (or any like ſpeedy growing plant) newly rooted in a box or barrel full of earth, weigh them altogether exactly when the tree begins to grow, and then weigh all together after the tree is increaſed from its firſt rooting to weigh an hundred pound weight more than when it was firſt rooted and weighed; and you ſhall find this augment of the tree to be without the diminution of one dram weight of the earth. Hence they infer this increaſe of wood to be from water of rain, or from dew, and not to be from any other Element. And they affirm, they can reduce this wood back again to water; and they affirm alſo the ſame may be done in any *animal* or *vegetable*. And this I take to be a fair teſtimony of the excellency of my Element of Water.

The *Water* is more productive than the *Earth*. Nay, the earth hath no fruitfulneſs without ſhowers or dews; for all the *herbs*, and *flowers*, and *fruit* are produced and thrive by the water; and the very Minerals are fed by ſtreams that run under ground, whoſe natural courſe carries them to the tops of many high mountains, as

we

we see by several springs breaking forth on the tops of the highest hills; and this is also witnessed by the daily trial and testimony of several Miners.

Nay, the increase of those creatures that are bred and fed in the water, are not only more and more miraculous, but more advantagious to man, not only for the lengthning of his life, but for the preventing of sickness; for 'tis observed by the most learned Physicians, that the casting off of Lent and other Fish-daies, (which hath not only given the Lie to so many learned, pious, wise Founders of Colledges, for which we should be ashamed) hath doubtless been the chief cause of those many putrid, shaking, intermitting Agues, unto which this Nation of ours is now more subject than those wiser Countries that feed on Herbs, Sallets, and plenty of Fish; of which it is observed in Story, that the greatest part of the world now do. And it may be fit to remember that *Moses* (*Lev.* 11. 9. *Deut.* 14. 9.) appointed Fish to be the chief diet for the best Common-wealth that ever yet was.

And it is observable not only that there are *fish*, (as namely the *Whale*) three times as big as the mighty Elephant; that is so fierce in battel; but that the mightiest Feasts have been of Fish. The *Romans* in the height of their glory have made Fish the mistress of all their enter-

entertainments; they have had Muſick to uſher in their *Sturgeons*, *Lampreys*, and *Mullets*, which they would purchaſe at rates rather to be wondred at than believed. He that ſhall view the Writings of *Macrobius* or *Varro*, may be confirmed and informed of this, and of the incredible value of their Fiſh, and fiſh-ponds.

But, Gentlemen, I have almoſt loſt my ſelf, which I confeſs I may eaſily do in this Philoſophical Diſcourſe; I met with moſt of it very lately (and I hope happily) in a conference with a moſt learned Phyſician, Dr. *Wharton*, a dear Friend; that loves both me and my Art of Angling. But however I will wade no deeper in theſe myſterious Arguments, but paſs to ſuch Obſervations as I can manage with more pleaſure, and leſs fear of running into error. But I muſt not yet forſake the Waters, by whoſe help we have ſo many known advantages.

And firſt (to paſs by the miraculous cures of our known *Baths*) how advantagious is the *Sea* for our daily Traffique; without which we could not now ſubſiſt? How does it not only furniſh us with food and Phyſick for the bodies, but with ſuch Obſervations for the mind as ingenious perſons would not want?

How ignorant had we been of the beauty of *Florence*, of the *Monuments*, *Urns*, and *Rarities* that yet remain in, and near unto old and new *Rome*, (ſo many as it is ſaid will take up a years time

time to view, and afford to each of them but a convenient consideration;) and therefore it is not to be wondred at, that so learned and devout a Father as St. *Jerome*, after his wish to have seen Christ in the flesh, and to have heard St. *Paul* preach, makes his third wish, to *have seen Rome in her glory*; and that glory is not yet all lost, for what pleasure is it to see the Monuments of *Livy*, the choicest of the Historians: of *Tully*, the best of Orators; and to see the Bay-trees that now grow out of the very Tomb of *Virgil*? These to any that love Learning must be pleasing. But what pleasure is it to a devout Christian to see there the humble house in which St. *Paul* was content to dwell; aud to view the many rich *Statues* that are there made in honour of his memory? nay, to see the very place in which St. *Peter* and he lie buried together? These are in and near to *Rome*. And how much more doth it please the pious curiosity of a Christian to see that place on which the blessed Saviour of the world was pleased to humble himself, and to take our nature upon him, and to converse with men: to see Mount *Sion*, *Jerusalem*, and the very Sepulchre of our Lord Jesus? How may it beget and heighten the zeal of a Christian to see the Devotions that are daily paid to him at that place? Gentlemen, lest I forget my self I will stop here, and remember you, that but for my Element of water the Inhabi-

tants

tants of this poor Island must remain ignorant that such things ever were, or that any of them have yet a being.

Gentlemen, I might both enlarge and lose my self in such like Arguments; I might tell you that Almighty God is said to have spoken to a *Fish*, but never to a *Beast*; that he hath made a *Whale* a Ship to carry and set his Prophet *Jonah* safe on the appointed shore. Of these I might speak, but I must in manners break off, for I see *Theobalds* house. I cry you mercy for being so long, and thank you for your patience.

Auceps. Sir, my pardon is easily granted you: I except against nothing that you have said; nevertheless, I must part with you at this Park-wall, for which I am very sorry; but I assure you Mr *Piscator*, I now part with you full of good thoughts, not only of your self, but your Recreation. And so Gentlemen, God keep you both.

Pisc. Well, now Mr. *Venator* you shall neither want time nor my attention to hear you enlarge your Discourse concerning Hunting.

Venat. Not I Sir, I remember you said that *Angling* it self was of great Antiquity, and a perfect Art, and an Art not easily attained to; and you have so won upon me in your former discourse, that I am very desirous to hear what you can say further concerning those particulars.

Pisc.

Pisc. Sir, I did say so, and I doubt not but if you and I did converse together but a few hours, to leave you possest with the same high and happy thoughts that now possess me of it; not only of the Antiquity of *Angling*, but that it deserves commendations, and that it is an Art, and an Art worthy the knowledg and practise of a wise man.

Venat. Pray Sir, speak of them what you think fit, for we have yet five miles to the *Thatcht-House*, during which walk, I dare promise you, my patience, and diligent attention shall not be wanting. And if you shall make that to appear which you have undertaken, first, that it is an Art, and an Art worth the learning, I shall beg that I may attend you a day or two a fishing, and that I may become your Scholar, and be instructed in the Art it self which you so much magnifie.

Pisc. O Sir, doubt not but that *Angling* is an Art; is it not an Art to deceive a *Trout* with an artificial Flie? a *Trout*! that is more sharp sighted than any Hawk you have nam'd, and more watchful and timorous than your high mettled *Marlin* is bold? and yet, I doubt not to catch a brace or two to morrow, for a friends breakfast: doubt not therefore, Sir, but that *Angling* is an Art, and an Art worth your learning: the Question is rather, whether you be capable of learning it? for *Angling* is some-

what

what like *Poetry*, men are to be born so: I mean, with inclinations to it, though both may be heightned by discourse and practice, but he that hopes to be a good *Angler* must not only bring an inquiring, searching, observing wit; but he must bring a large measure of hope and patience, and a love and propensity to the Art it self; but having once got and practis'd it, then doubt not but *Angling* will prove to be so pleasant, that it will prove to be like Vertue, *a reward to it self.*

Venat. Sir, I am now become so full of expectation that I long much to have you proceed; and in the order that you propose.

Pisc. Then first, for the *antiquity* of *Angling*, of which I shall not say much, but onely this; Some say it is as ancient as *Deucalions* Flood; others that *Belus*, who was the first Inventer of Godly and vertuous Recreations, was the first Inventer of *Angling*: and some others say (for former times have had their disquisitions about the Antiquity of it) that *Seth*, one of the Sons of *Adam*, taught it to his Sons, and that by them it was derived to posterity: others say, that he left it engraven on those pillars which he erected, and trusted to preserve the knowledge of the *Mathematicks*, *Musick*, and the rest of that precious knowledge, and those useful Arts which by Gods appointment or allowance and his noble industry were thereby preserved from perishing in *Noahs* flood.

These, Sir, have been the opinions of several men, that have possibly endeavored to make *Angling* more ancient than is needful, or may well be warranted; but for my part, I shall content my self in telling you that Angling is much more ancient than the Incarnation of our Saviour; for in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of *fish-hooks*; and in the Book of *Job* (which was long before the days of *Amos* (for that book is said to be writ by *Moses*) mention is made also of fish-hooks, which must imply Anglers in those times.

But, my worthy friend, as I would rather prove my self a *Gentleman* by being *learned* and *humble*, *valiant*, and *inoffensive*, *vertuous*, and *communicable*, than by any fond ostentation of riches, or wanting those vertues my self, boast that these were in my Ancestors (and yet I grant that where a noble and ancient descent and such merits meet in any man, it is a double dignification of that person:) So if this Antiquity of *Angling*, (which for my part I have not forced,) shall like an ancient family, be either an honour or an ornament to this vertuous Art which I profess to love and practice, I shall be the gladder that I made an accidental mention of the antiquity of it; of which I shall say no more but proceed to that just commendation which I think it deserves.

And

And for that I ſhall tell you, that in ancient times a debate hath riſen, (and it remains yet unreſolved) Whether the happineſs of man in this world doth conſiſt more in *Contemplation* or *action?*

Concerning which ſome have endeavoured to maintain their opinion of the firſt, by ſaying, *That the nearer we Mortals come to God by way of imitation, the more happy we are.* And they ſay, *That God enjoys himſelf only by a contemplation of his own infiniteneſſe, Eternity, Power and Goodneſs,* and the like. And upon this ground many Cloyſteral men of great learning and devotion prefer *Contemplation* before *Action.* And many of the fathers ſeem to approve this opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the words of our Saviour to *Martha, Luke* 10. 41, 42.

And on the contrary, there want not men of equal authority and credit, that prefer *action* to be the more excellent, as namely *experiments in Phyſick, and the application of it, both for the eaſe and prolongation of mans life;* by which each man is enabled to act and do good to others; either to ſerve his Countrey, or do good to particular perſons; and they ſay alſo, *That action is Doctrinal, and teaches both art and vertue, and is a maintainer of humane ſociety,* and for theſe, and other like reaſons to be preferred before *contemplation.*

Concerning which two opinions I ſhall forbear to add a third by declaring my own, and reſt my ſelf contented in telling you (my very worthy friend) that both theſe meet together, and do moſt properly belong to the moſt *honeſt*, *ingenuous*, *quiet*, and *harmleſs* art of *Angling*.

And firſt, I ſhall tell you what ſome have obſerved, (and I have found it to be a real truth) that the very ſitting by the Rivers ſide is not only the quieteſt and fitteſt place for *contemplation*, but will invite an Angler to it: and this ſeems to be maintained by the learned *Pet. du Moulin*, who (in his Diſcourſe of the fulfilling of Propheſies) obſerves, that when God intended to reveal any future events or high notions to his Prophets, he then carried them either to the *Deſarts* or the *Sea-ſhore*, that having ſo ſeparated them from amidſt the preſs of *people* and *buſineſs*, and the cares of the world, he might ſettle their mind in a quiet repoſe, and there make them fit for Revelation.

And this ſeems alſo to be intimated by the Children of *Iſrael*, (*Pſal.* 137.) who having in a ſad condition baniſhed all mirth and muſick from their penſive hearts, and having hung up their then mute Harps upon the Willow-trees growing by the Rivers of *Babylon*, ſate down upon thoſe banks bemoaning the ruines of *Sion*, and contemplating their own ſad condition.

And

And an ingenuous *Spaniard* says, *That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wise men to contemplate, and fools to pass by without consideration.* And though I will not rank my self in the number of the first, yet give me leave to free my self from the last, by offering to you a short contemplation, first of *Rivers*, and then of *Fish*; concerning which I doubt not but to give you many observations that will appear very considerable: I am sure they have appeared so to me, and made many an hour pass away more pleasantly, as I have sate quietly on a flowry Bank by a calm River, and contemplated what I shall now relate to you.

And first concerning Rivers; there be so many wonders reported and written of them, and of the several Creatures that be bred and live in them; and, those by Authors of so good credit, that we need not to deny them an historical Faith.

As namely of a River in *Epirus*, that puts out any lighted Torch, and kindles any Torch that was not lighted. Some Waters being drank cause madness, some drunkenness, and some laughter to death. The River *Selarus* in a few hours turns a rod or wand to stone: and our *Cambden* mentions the like in *England*, and the like in *Lochmere* in *Ireland*. There is also a River in *Arabia*, of which all the sheep that drink

thereof have their wool turned into a Vermilion colour. And one of no leſs credit than *Ariſtotle*, tells us of a merry River, (the River *Elufina*) that dances at the noiſe of muſick, for with muſick it bubbles, dances and grows ſandy, and ſo continues till the muſick ceaſes, but then it preſently returns to its wonted calmneſs and clearneſs. And *Cambden* tells us of a Well near to *Kerby* in *Weſtmoreland*, that ebbs and flows ſeveral times every day: and he tells us of a River in *Surry* (it is called *Mole*) that after it has run ſeveral miles, being oppoſed by hills, finds or makes it ſelf a way under ground, and breaks out again ſo far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boaſt, (as the *Spaniards* do of their River *Anus*) that they feed divers flocks of ſheep upon a Bridge. And laſtly, for I would not tire your patience, one of no leſs authority than *Joſephus* that learned Jew, tells us of a River in *Judea*, that runs ſwiftly all the ſix days of the week, and ſtands ſtill and reſts all their *Sabbath*.

But I will lay aſide my Diſcourſe of Rivers and tell you ſome things of the Monſters, or Fiſh, call them what you will, that they breed and feed in them. *Pliny* the Philoſopher ſays, (in the third Chapter of his ninth Book) that in the *Indian Sea*, the fiſh call'd the *Balæna* or *Whirle-Pool* is ſo long and broad, as to take up more in length and bredth than two Acres of ground,

ground, and of other fiſh of two hundred cubits long; and that in the River *Ganges*, there be Eeles of thirty foot long. He ſays there, that theſe Monſters appear in that Sea only, when the tempeſtuous winds oppoſe the Torrents of Waters falling from the Rocks into it, and ſo turning what lay at the bottom to be ſeen on the waters top. And he ſays, that the people of *Cadara* (an Iſland near this place) make the Timber for their houſes of thoſe Fiſh-bones. He there tells us, that there are ſometimes a thouſand of theſe great Eeles found wrapt, or interwoven together. He tells us there, that it appears that Dolphins love muſick, and will come, when call'd for, by ſome men or boys, that know and uſe to feed them, and that they can ſwim as ſwift as an Arrow can be ſhot out a Bow, and much of this is ſpoken concerning the *Dolphin*, and other Fiſh, as may be found alſo in learned Dr. *Caſaubons* Diſcourſe of Credulity, and Incredulity, printed by him about the year 1670.

I know, we Iſlanders are averſe to the belief of theſe wonders: but, there be ſo many ſtrange Creatures to be now ſeen (many collected by *John Tradeſcant*, and others added by my friend *Elias Aſhmole* Eſq; who now keeps them carefully and methodically at his houſe near to *Lambeth* near *London*) as may get ſome belief of ſome of the other wonders I mentioned. I

will tell you ſome of the wonders that you may now ſee, and not till then believe, unleſs you think fit.

You may there ſee the *Hog-fiſh*, the *Dog-fiſh*, the *Dolphin*, the *Cony-Fiſh*, the *Parrot-fiſh*, the *Shark*, the *Poyſon-fiſh*, *ſword-fiſh*, and not only other incredible fiſh! but you may there ſee the *Salamander*, ſeveral ſorts of *Barnacles*, of *Solan Geeſe*, the *bird* of *Paradiſe*, ſuch ſorts of Snakes, and ſuch *birds-neſts*, and of ſo various forms, and ſo wonderfully made, as may beget wonder and amuſement in any beholder: and ſo many hundred of other rarities in that Collection, as will make the other wonders I ſpake of, the leſs incredible; for, you may note, that the waters are natures ſtore-houſe, in which ſhe locks up her wonders.

But, Sir, leſt this Diſcourſe may ſeem tedious, I ſhall give it a ſweet concluſion out of that holy Poet Mr. *George Herbert* his Divine Contemplation on Gods Providence.

Lord, who hath praiſe enough, nay, who hath any?
(them;
None can expreſs thy works, but he that knows
And none can know thy works, they are ſo many,
And ſo compleat, but only he that owes them.

We

We all acknowledg both thy power and love
To be exact, transcendent and divine;
Who dost so strangely and so sweetly move,
Whilst all things have their end, yet none but thine.

Wherefore, most sacred Spirit, I here present
For me, and all my fellows, praise to thee;
And just it is that I should pay the rent,
Because the benefit accrues to me.

And as concerning Fish in that Psalm, (*Psal* 104.) wherein for height of Poetry and Wonders the Prophet *David* seems even to exceed himself, how doth he there express himself in choice Metaphors, even to the amazement of a contemplative Reader, concerning the *Sea*, the *Rivers*, and the *Fish* therein contained? And the great Naturalist *Pliny* says, *That Natures great and wonderful power is more demonstrated in the Sea than on the Land.* And this may appear by the numerous and various Creatures inhabiting both in and about that Element; as to the Readers of *Gesner*, *Rondeletius*, *Pliny*, *Ausonius*, *Aristotle*, and others, may be demonstrated. But I will sweeten this Discourse also out of a Contemplation in Divine *Dubartas*, who says,

Dubartas in the fifth day.

God

God quickned in the ſea and in the rivers,
So many Fiſhes of ſo many features,
That in the waters we may ſee all creatures,
Even all that on the earth are to be found,
As if the world were in deep waters drown'd.
For ſeas (as well as skies) have Sun, Moon, Stars;
(As well as air) Swallows, Rooks, and Stares;
(As well as earth) Vines, Roſes, Nettles, Melons,
Muſhroms, Pinks, Gilliflowers, and many millions
Of other plants, more rare, more ſtrange than theſe,
As very fiſhes living in the ſeas:
As alſo Rams, Calves, Horſes, Hares and Hogs;
Wolves, Urchins, Lions, Elephants and Dogs;
Yea men and Maids, and which I moſt admire,
The mitred Biſhop, and the cowled Fryer.
Of which, Examples but a few years ſince,
Were ſhewn the Norway *and* Polonian *Prince.*

Theſe ſeem to be wonders, but have had ſo many confirmations from men of learning and credit, that you need not doubt them; nor are the number, nor the various ſhapes of fiſhes, more ſtrange or more fit for *contemplation*, than their different natures, inclinations and actions; concerning which I ſhall beg your patient ear a little longer.

The *Cuttle-fiſh* will caſt a long gut out of her throat, which (like as an Angler doth his line) ſhe ſendeth forth and pulleth in again at

at her pleasure, according as she sees some little fish come near to her; and the *Cuttle-fish* (being then hid in the gravel) lets the smaller fish nibble and bite the end of it, at which time she by little and little draws the smaller fish so near to her, that she may leap upon her, and then catches and devours her: and for this reason some have called this fish the *Sea-Angler*.

Mount. Essays, and others affirm this.

And there is a fish called a *Hermit*, that at a certain age gets into a dead fishes shell, and like a Hermite dwells there alone, studying the wind and weather, and so turns her shell, that she makes it defend her from the injuries that they would bring upon her.

There is also a fish called by *Ælian* (in his 9. book of Living Creatures, Chap. 16.) the *Adonis*, or Darling of the Sea; so called, because it is a loving and innocent fish, a fish that hurts nothing that hath life, and is at peace with all the numerous Inhabitants of that vast watry Element: and truly I think most Anglers are so disposed to most of mankind.

And there are also lustful and chast fishes, of which I shall give you examples.

And first, what *Dubartas* sayes of a fish called the *Sargus*; which (because none can expresse it better than he does) I shall give you in his own words, supposing it shall not have the less credit

credit for being Verſe, for he hath gathered this, and other obſervations out of Authors that have been great and induſtrious ſearchers into the ſecrets of Nature.

The Adult'rous Sargus *doth not only change*
Wives every day in the deep ſtreams, but (ſtrange)
As if the hony of Sea-love delight
Could not ſuffice his ranging appetite,
Goes courting ſhe-Goats on the graſſie ſhore,
Horning their husbands that had horns before.

And the ſame Author writes concerning the *Cantharus*, that which you ſhall alſo hear in his own words.

But contrary, the conſtant Cantharus
Is ever conſtant to his faithful Spouſe,
In nuptial duties ſpending his chaſte life,
Never loves any but his own dear Wife.

Sir, but a little longer, and I have done.

Venat. Sir, take what liberty you think fit, for your diſcourſe ſeems to be Muſick, and charms me to an attention.

Piſc. Why then Sir, I will take a little liberty to tell, or rather to remember you what is ſaid of *Turtle-Doves*; Firſt, That they ſilently plight their troth and marry; and that then, the Surviver ſcorns (as the *Thracian women* are ſaid to do)

do) to out-live his or her mate, and this is taken for a truth, and if the ſurviver ſhall ever couple with another, then not only the living, but the dead, (be it either the He or the ſhe) is denyed the *name* and *honour* of a true *Turtle-dove.*

And to parallel this Land-Rarity, and teach mankind moral faithfulneſs, and to condemn thoſe that talk of Religion, and yet come ſhort of the moral faith of fiſh and fowl; Men that violate the Law affirmed by Saint *Paul* (*Rom.* 2. 14, 15.) to be writ in their hearts, (and which he ſays, ſhall at the laſt day condemn and leave them without excuſe.) I pray *Dubartas* hearken to what *Dubartas* ſings, (for *fifth day.* the hearing of ſuch conjugal faithfulneſs, will be Muſick to all chaſt ears) and therefore I pray harken to what *Dubartas* ſings of the *Mullet.*

But for chaſt love the Mullet *hath no peer;*
For, if the Fiſher hath ſurpriz'd her pheer,
As mad with wo, to ſhore ſhe followeth,
Preſt to conſort him both in life and death.

On the contrary, What ſhall I ſay of the *Houſe-Cock*, which treads any Hen, and then (contrary to the *Swan*, the *Partridge* and *Pigeon*) takes no care to hatch, to feed or to cheriſh his own brood, but is ſenſeleſs though they periſh.

And

And 'tis conſiderable, that the Hen (which becauſe ſhe alſo takes any *Cock*, expects it not) who is ſure the Chickens be her own, hath by a moral impreſſion her care and affection to her own Brood more than doubled, even to ſuch a height, that our Saviour in expreſſing his love to *Jeruſalem* (*Mat.* 23. 37.) quotes her for an example of tender affection; as his Father had done *Job* for a pattern of patience.

And to parallel this *Cock*, there be divers fiſhes that caſt their Spawn on flags or ſtones, and then leave it uncovered, and expoſed to become a prey, and be devoured by Vermine or other fiſhes: but other fiſhes (as namely the *Barbel*) take ſuch care for the preſervation of their ſeed, that (unlike to the *Cock* or the *Cuckoe*) they mutually labour (both the Spawner and the Melter) to cover their Spawn with ſand, or watch it, or hide it in ſome ſecret place unfrequented by Vermine or by any Fiſh but themſelves.

Sir, theſe Examples may, to you and others, ſeem ſtrange; but they are teſtified ſome by *Ariſtotle*, ſome by *Pliny*, ſome by *Geſner*, and by many others of credit, and are believed and known by divers, both of wiſdom and experience, to be a Truth; and indeed are (as I ſaid at the beginning) fit for the contemplation of a moſt ſerious and a moſt pious man. And doubtleſs this made the Prophet *David* ſay, *They that occupy*

occupy themselves in deep waters see the wonderful works of God : indeed such wonders and pleasures too as the land affords not.

And that they be fit for the contemplation of the most prudent, and pious, and peaceable men, seems to be testifyed by the practise of so many devout and contemplative men, as the *Patriarchs* and *Prophets* of old; and of the *Apostles* of our Saviour in our latter times: of which twelve, we are sure he chose four that were simple Fisher-men, whom he inspired and sent to publish his blessed Will to the *Gentiles, and inspir'd them also with a power to speak all languages, and by their powerful Eloquence to beget faith in the unbelieving Jews : and themselves to suffer for that Saviour whom their fore fathers and they had Crucified, and, in their sufferings, to preach freedom from the incumbrances of the Law, and a new way to everlasting life* this was the imployment of these happy Fishermen. Concerning which choice, some have made these Observations.

First that he never reproved these for their Imployment or Calling, as he did the *Scribes* and the *Mony-changers*. And secondly, he found that the hearts of such men by nature were fitted for contemplation and quietnesse; men of mild, and sweet, and peaceable spirits, as indeed most Anglers are : these men our blessed Saviour, (who is observed to love to plant grace

in

in good natures) though indeed nothing be too hard for him, yet these men he chose to call from their irreprovable imployment of Fishing, and gave them grace to be his Disciples, and to follow him and doe wonders, I say four of twelve.

And it is observable, that it was our Saviours will, that these our four Fishermen should have a priority of nomination in the Catalogue of his twelve Apostles, (*Mat.* 10.) as namely first St. *Peter*, St. *Andrew*, St. *James* and St. *John*, and then the rest in their order.

And it is yet more observable, that when our blessed Saviour went up into the Mount, when he left the rest of his Disciples, and chose only three to bear him company at his *Transfiguration*, that those three were all Fishermen. And it is to be believed, that all the other Apostles, after they betook themselves to follow Christ, betook themselves to be Fishermen too; for it is certain that the greater number of them were found together Fishing by Jesus after his Resurrection, as it is recorded in the 21. Chapter of St. *Johns* Gospel.

And since I have your promise to hear me with patience, I will take a liberty to look back upon an observation that hath been made by an ingenuous and learned man, who observes that God hath been pleased to allow those, whom he himself hath appointed to write his holy Will in holy writ, yet, to express his Will in such Metaphors

phors as their former affections or practice had inclined them to; and he brings *Solomon* for an example, who before his conversion was remarkably carnally-amorous; and after by Gods appointment wrote that spiritual Dialogue or holy amorous Love-song (the *Canticles*) betwixt God and his Church; (in which he sayes his beloved had *Eyes like the fish-pools of Heshbon.*)

And if this hold in reason (as I see none to the contrary,) then it may be probably concluded, that *Moses* (who, I told you before, writ the Book of *Job*) and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers; for you shall in all the Old Testament find Fish-hooks, I think but twice mentioned, namely, by meek *Moses* the friend of God, and by the humble Prophet *Amos*.

Concerning which last, namely the Prophet *Amos* I shall make but this Observation, That he that shall read the *humble, lowly, plain style* of that *Prophet*, and compare it with the *high, glorious, eloquent style* of the Prophet *Isaiah* (though they be both equally true) may easily believe *Amos* to be, not only a Shepherd, but a good-natur'd, plain *Fisher-man*.

Which I do the rather believe by comparing the affectionate, loving, lowly, humble Epistles of S. *Peter*, S. *James* and S. *John*, whom we know were all Fishers, with the glorious language and high Metaphors of S. *Paul*. who we may believe was not.

And for the lawfulneſs of Fiſhing it may very well be maintained by our Saviours bidding St. *Peter* caſt his hook into the water and catch a Fiſh, for mony to pay Tribute to *Cæſar*. And let me tell you, that Angling is of high eſteem, and of much uſe in other Nations. He that reads the Voyages of *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto*, ſhall find, that there he declares to have found a King and ſeveral Prieſts a Fiſhing.

And he that reads *Plutarch*; ſhall find, that Angling was not contemptible in the days of *Mark Antony* and *Cleopatra*, and that they in the midſt of their wonderful glory uſed Angling as a principal recreation. And let me tell you, that in the Scripture, Angling is always taken in the beſt ſenſe, and that though hunting may be ſometimes ſo taken, yet it is but ſeldom to be ſo underſtood. And let me add this more, he that views the ancient Eccleſiaſtical Canons, ſhall find *Hunting* to be forbidden to *Church-men*, as being a turbulent, toilſom, perplexing Recreation; and ſhall find *Angling* allowed to *Clergy-men*, as being a harmleſs Recreation, a recreation that invites them to *contemplation* and *quietneſs*.

I might here enlarge my ſelf by telling you, what commendations our learned *Perkins* beſtowes on Angling: and how dear a lover, and great a practiſer of it our learned Doctor *Whitaker* was, as indeed many others of great learn-

learning have been. But I will content my self with two memorable men, that lived near to our own time, whom I also take to have been ornaments to the Art of Angling.

The first is Doctor *Nowel* sometimes * 1550. Dean of the Cathedral Church of St. * *Pauls* in *London*, where his Monument stands yet undefaced, a man that in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth* (not that of *Henry the VIII.*) was so noted for his meek spirit, deep learning, prudence and piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation both, chose, enjoyned and trusted him to be the man to make a Catechism for publick use, such a one as should stand as a rule for faith and manners to their posterity. And the good old man (though he was very learned, yet knowing that God leads us not to Heaven by many nor by hard questions) like an honest Angler, made that *good, plain, unperplext* Catechism which is printed with our good old Service Book. I say, this good man was a dear lover, and constant practicer of Angling, as any Age can produce; and his custom was to spend besides his six hours of prayer, (those hours which by command of the Church were enjoyned the Clergy, and voluntarily dedicated to devotion by many Primitive Christians:) I say, besides those hours, this good man was observed to spend a tenth part of his time in Angling; and also (for I have conversed with those which have

converſed with him) to beſtow a tenth part of his Revenue, and uſually all his fiſh, amongſt the poor that inhabited near to thoſe Rivers in which it was caught: ſaying often, *That charity gave life to Religion*: and at his return to his Houſe would praiſe God he had ſpent that day free from worldly trouble; both harmleſly, and in a recreation that became a Church-man. And this good man was well content, if not deſirous, that poſterity ſhould know he was an Angler, as may appear by his Picture, now to be ſeen, and carefully kept in *Braſennoſe Colledge* (to which he was a liberal Benefactor) in which Picture he is drawn leaning on a Desk with his Bible before him, and, on one hand of him his *lines*, *hooks*, and other *tackling* lying in a round; and on his other hand are his Angle-rods of ſeveral ſorts: and by them this is written, *That he died. 13. Feb. 1601. being aged 95. years, 44 of which he had been Dean of St.* Pauls *Church; and that his age had neither impair'd his hearing, nor dimm'd his eyes, nor weaken'd his memory, nor made any of the faculties of his mind weak or uſeleſs.* 'Tis ſaid that *angling* and *temperance* were great cauſes of theſe bleſſings, and I wiſh the like to all that imitate him, and love the memory of ſo good a man.

My next and laſt example ſhall be that undervaluer of mony, the late Provoſt of *Eton* Colledge, Sir *Henry Wotton*, (a man with whom

I have often fish'd and convers'd) a man whose forreign Imployments in the service of this *Nation*, and whose *experience*, *learning*, *wit* and *chearfulness* made his company to be esteemed one of the delights of mankind; this man, whose very approbation of Angling were sufficient to convince any modest censurer of it, this man was also a most dear lover, and a frequent practiser of the art of angling; of which he would say, *'Twas an imployment for his idle time, which was then not idly spent*: for angling was after tedious Study, *a rest to his mind, a chearer of his spirits, a diverter of sadness, a calmer of unquiet thoughts, a moderator of passions, a procurer of contentedness*: and *that it begat habits of* peace *and* patience *in those that profess'd and practis'd it*. Indeed, my friend, you will find angling to be like the vertue of Humility, which has a calmness of spirit, and a world of other blessings attending upon it.

Sir, This was the saying of that learned man, and I do easily believe that *peace*, and *patience*, and a calm *content* did cohabit in the chearful heart of Sir *Henry Wotton*, because I know that when he was beyond seventy years of age, he made this description of a part of the present pleasure that possess'd him, as he sate quietly in a Summers evening on a bank a Fishing; it is a description of the Spring, which, because it glided as soft and sweetly from his pen, as

that river does at this time by which it was then made, I shall repeat it unto you.

This day dame Nature seem'd in love:
The lusty sap began to move;
Fresh juice did stir th' embracing Vines,
And birds had drawn their Valentines,
The jealous Trout, *that low did lye,*
Rose at a well dissembled flie;
There stood my friend with patient skill,
Attending of his trembling quill.
Already were the eaves possest
With the swift Pilgrims dawbed nest:
The Groves already did rejoyce,
In Philomels *triumphing voice:*
The showers were short, the weather mild,
The morning fresh, the evening smil'd.
Jone *takes her neat rub'd pail, and now*
She trips to milk the sand-red Cow;
Where, for some sturdy foot-ball Swain,
Jone *strokes a* syllibub *or twain,*
The fields and gardens were beset
With Tulips, Crocus, Violet,
And now, though late, the modest Rose
Did more then half a blush disclose.
Thus all looks gay, and full of chear.
To welcome the new livery'd year.

These were the thoughts that then possest the undisturbed mind of Sir *Henry Wotton*. Will you

you hear the wish of another Angler, and the commendation of his happy life which he also sings in Verse? *viz. Jo. Davors* Esq.

Let me live harmlesly, and near the brink,
Of Trent *or* Avon *have a dwelling place;*
Where I may see my quill *or* cork *down sink*
With eager bite of Perch, *or* Bleak, *or* Dace:
And on the world and my Creator think,
Whilst some men strive ill gotten goods t'embrace;
And others spend their time in base excess
Of wine, or worse, in war and wantonness.

Let them that list, these pastimes still pursue,
And on such pleasing fancies feed their fill,
So I the fields *and* Meadows *green may view,*
And daily by fresh Rivers *walk at will,*
Among the Daisies *and the* Violets *blew.*
Red Hiacynth, *and yellow* Daffadil,
Purple Narcissus *like the morning rayes*
Pale Gandergrasse, *and azure* Culverkeyes.

I count it higher pleasure to behold
The stately compasse of the lostie skie,
And in the midst thereof (like burning gold)
The flaming Chariot of the Worlds great eye,
The watry clouds that in the air up rol'd,
With sundry kinds of painted colours flie;
And fair Aurora *lifting up her head,*
Still blushing, rise from old Tithonus *bed.*

The hills *and* mountains *raised from the* plains,
The plains *extended level with the* ground,
The grounds divided into sundry veins,
The veins inclos'd with rivers *running round;*
These rivers making way through natures chains
With headlong course into the sea profound;
The raging sea, beneath the vallies low,
where lakes *and* rills *and* rivulets *do flow.*

The lofty woods the forrests wide and long
Adorn'd with leaves and branches fresh and green,
In whose cool bowers the birds with many a song
Do welcome with their Quire the Summers Queen:
The Meadowes fair where Flora's *gifts among*
Are intermixt, with verdant grasse between.
The silver-scaled fish that softly swim
Within the sweet brooks chrystal, watry stream.
All these, and many more of his Creation
That made the Heavens, the Angler *oft doth see;*
Taking therein no little delectation,
To think how strange, how wonderful they be;
Framing thereof an inward contemplation,
To set his heart from other fancies free;
And whilst he looks on these with joyful eye,
His mind is rapt above the starry Skie.

Sir I am glad my memory has not lost these last Verses, because they are somewhat more pleasant and more sutable to *May-Day*, than my harsh Discourse, and I am glad your patience

ence hath held out so long, as to hear them and me: for both together have brought us within the sight of the *Thatcht-house*: and I must be your Debtor (if you think it worth your attention) for the rest of my promised discourse, till some other opportunity, and a like time of leisure.

Venat. Sir, you have Angled me on with much pleasure to the *Thatcht-house*: and I now find your words true *That good company makes the way seem short*, for trust me, Sir, I thought we had wanted three miles of this *House* till you shewed it to me: but now we are at it, we'l turn into it, and refresh our selves with a cup of drink and a little rest.

Pisc. Most gladly (Sir) and we'l drink a civil cup to all the *Otter Hunters* that are to meet you to morrow.

Ven, That we will Sir, and to all the lovers of Angling too, of which number, I am now willing to be one my self, for by the help of your good discourse and company, I have put on new thoughts both of the Art of Angling, and of all that professe it: and if you will but meet me to morrow at the time and place appointed, and bestow own day with me and my friends in hunting the *Otter*, I will dedicate the next two dayes to wait upon you, and we two will for that time do nothing but angle, and talk of fish and fishing.

Pisc.

Piſc. 'Tis a match, Sir, I'l not fail you, God willing, to be at *Amwel-hill* to morrow morning before Sun-riſing.

CHAP. II.

Obſervations of the Otter and Chub.

Venat. My friend *Piſcator*, you have kept time with my thoughts, for the Sun is juſt riſing, and I my ſelf juſt now come to this place, and the dogs have juſt now put down an *Otter*; look down at the bottom of the hill there in that Meadow, chequered with *water-Lillies*, and *Lady-ſmocks*, there you may ſee what work they make; look, look, you may ſee all buſie, men and dogs, dogs and men, all buſie.

Piſc. Sir, I am right glad to meet you, and glad to have ſo fair an entrance into this dayes ſport, and glad to ſee ſo many dogs, and more men all in purſuit of the *Otter*; lets complement no longer, but joyn unto them; come honeſt *Venator*, lets be gone, lets us make haſt; I long to be doing: no reaſonable hedg or ditch ſhall hold me.

Ven. Gentleman Huntſ-man, where found you this *Otter*.

Hunt, Marry (Sir) we found her a mile from this place a fiſhing; ſhe has this morning eaten the

he greateſt part of this *Trout*; ſhe has only left thus much of it as you ſee, and was fiſhing for more; when we came we found her juſt at it: but we were here very early, we were here an hour before Sun-riſe, and have given her no reſt ſince we came; ſure ſhe will hardly eſcape all theſe dogs and men. I am to have the skin if we kill her.

Ven. Why, Sir, what's the skin worth?

Hunt. 'Tis worth ten ſhillings to make gloves; the gloves of an *Otter* are the beſt fortification for your hands that can be thought on againſt wet weather.

Piſc. I pray, honeſt Huntſman, let me ask you a pleaſant queſtion, do you hunt a beaſt or a fiſh?

Hunt. Sir, It is not in my power to reſolve you, I leave it to be reſolved by the Colledge of *Carthuſians*, who have made vows never to eat fleſh. But I have heard, the queſtion hath been debated among many great Clerks, and they ſeem to differ about it; yet moſt agree that her tail is Fiſh: and if her body be Fiſh too, then I may ſay, that a Fiſh will walk upon land, (for an *Otter* does ſo) ſometimes five or ſix, or ten miles in a night to catch for her young ones, or to glut herſelf with Fiſh, and I can tell you that *Pigeons* will fly forty miles for a breakfaſt, but *Sir*, I am ſure the *Otter* devours much Fiſh, and kills and ſpoils much more than he eats: And I can tell you, that this Dog-fiſher (for ſo

the

the Latins call him) can ſmell a Fiſh in the water an hundred yards from him (*Geſner* ſays much farther) and that his ſtones are good againſt the Falling-ſickneſs: and that there is an herb *Benione*, which being hung in a linnen cloth near a Fiſh-pond, or any haunt that he uſes, makes him to avoid the place; which proves he ſmells both by water and land; and I can tell you there is brave hunting this Water-dog in *Corn-wall*, where there have been ſo many, that our learned *Cambden* ſays, there is a River called *Otterſey*, which was ſo named, by reaſon of the abundance of *Otters* that bred and fed in it.

And thus much for my knowledg of the *Otter*, which you may now ſee above water at vent, and the dogs cloſe with him; I now ſee he will not laſt long, follow therefore my Maſters, follow, for *Sweetlips* was like to have him at this laſt vent.

Ven. Oh me, all the Horſe are got over the River, what ſhall we do now? ſhall we follow them over the water.

Hunt. No, *Sir*, no, be not ſo eager, ſtay a little and follow me, for both they, and the dogs will be ſuddenly on this ſide again, I warrant you: and the *Otter* too, it may be: now have at him with *Kilbuck*, for he vents again.

Ven. Marry ſo he do's, for look he vents in that corner. Now, now *Ringwood* has him: now he's

he's gone again, and has bit the poor dog. Now *Sweetlips* has her; hold her *Sweetlips*! now all the dogs have her, some above and some under water; but now, now she's tir'd, and past losing: come bring her to me, *Sweetlips*. Look, 'tis a Bitch-*Otter*, and she has lately whelp'd, let's go to the place where she was *put down*, and not far from it you will find all her young ones, I dare warrant you, and kill them all too.

Hunt. Come, Gentlemen, come all, let's go to the place where we *put down* the *Otter*. Look you, hereabout it was that she kennel'd; look you, here it was indeed, for here's her young ones, no less than five; come let's kill them all.

Pisc. No, I pray Sir, save me one, and I'll try if I can make her tame, as I know an ingenuous Gentleman in *Leicester-shire* (Mr. *Nich. Seagrave*) has done; who hath not only made her tame, but to catch Fish, and do many other things of much pleasure.

Hunt. Take one with all my heart, but let us kill the rest. And now let's go to an honest Ale-house, where we may have a cup of good *Barley-wine*, and sing *Old Rose*, and all of us rejoyce together.

Venat. Come my friend, *Piscator*, let me invite you along with us; I'll bear your charges this night, and you shall bear mine to morrow; for my intention is to accompany you a day or two in Fishing.

Pisc.

Pisc. Sir, your request is granted, and I shall be right glad, both to exchange such a courtesie, and also to enjoy your company.

Venat. Well, now let's go to your sport of Angling.

Pisc. Let's be going with all my heart. God keep you all, Gentlemen, and send you meet this day with another Bitch-Otter, and kill her merrily, and all her young ones too.

Ven. Now, *Piscator*, where will you begin to fish?

Pisc. We are not yet come to a likely place, I must walk a mile further yet, before I begin.

Venat. Well then, I pray, as we walk tell me freely, how do you like your lodging and mine Hoste and the company? is not mine Hoste a witty man?

Pisc. Sir, I will tell you presently what I think of your Hoste; but first I will tell you, I am glad these *Otters* were killed, and I am sorry there are no more *Otter-killers*: for I know that the want of *Otter-killers*, & the not keeping the *Fence months* for the preservation of *fish*, will in time prove the destruction of all *Rivers*; and those very few that are left, that make conscience of the Laws of the Nation, and of keeping days of abstinence, will be forced to eat fleth, or suffer more inconveniencies than are yet foreseen.

Venat. Why, Sir, what be those that you call the Fence months? *Pisc.*

Piſc. Sir, they be principally three, namely, *March*, *April*, and *May*, for theſe be the uſual months that *Salmon* come out of the Sea to ſpawn in moſt freſh Rivers, and their Fry would about a certain time return back to the ſalt water, if they were not hindred by *wires* and *unlawful gins*, which the greedy Fiſher-men ſet, and ſo deſtroy them by thouſands, as they would (being ſo taught by nature) change the *freſh* for *ſalt water*. He that ſhall view the wiſe Statutes made in the 13 of *Edw. the I.* and the like in *Rich. the III.* may ſee ſeveral proviſions made againſt the deſtruction of Fiſh: and though I profeſs no knowledg of the Law, yet I am ſure the regulation of theſe defects might be eaſily mended. But I remember that a wiſe friend of mine did uſually ſay, *That which is every bodies buſineſs, is no bodies buſineſs.* If it were otherwiſe, there could not be ſo many Nets and Fiſh that are under the Statute ſize, ſold daily amongſt us, and of which the *conſervators* of the waters ſhould be aſhamed.

But above all, the taking Fiſh in Spawning time, may be ſaid to be againſt nature; it is like the taking the dam on the neſt when ſhe hatches her young: a ſin ſo againſt nature, that Almighty God hath in the Levitical Law made a Law againſt it.

But the poor Fiſh have enemies enough beſide ſuch unnatural *Fiſher-men*, as namely, the

Otters

Otters that I ſpake of, the *Cormorant*, the *Bittern*, the *Oſprey*, the *Sea-gull*, the *Hern*, the *Kingfiſher*, the *Gorrara*, the *Puet*, the *Swan*, *Gooſe*, *Ducks*, and the *Craber*, which ſome call the Water-rat: againſt all which any honeſt man may make a juſt quarrel, but I will not, I will leave them to be quarrelled with, and kill'd by others; for I am not of a cruel nature, I love to kill nothing but Fiſh.

And now to your queſtion concerning your Hoſte, to ſpeak truly, he is not to me a good companion: for moſt of his conceits were either Scripture jeſts, or laſcivious jeſts; for which I count no man witty, for the Devil will help a man that way inclined, to the firſt; and his own corrupt nature (which he always carries with him) to the latter. But a companion that feaſts the company with *wit* and *mirth*, and leaves out the ſin (which is uſually mixt with them) he is the man; and indeed ſuch a companion ſhould have his charges born: and to ſuch company I hope to bring you this night; for at *Trout-hall*, not far from this place, where I purpoſe to lodge to night, there is uſually an Angler that proves good company: and let me tell you, good company and good diſcourſe are the very ſinews of vertue: but for ſuch diſcourſe as we heard laſt night, it infects others, the very boys will learn to talk and ſwear as they heard mine Hoſt, and another of the company

pany that ſhall be nameleſs; I am ſorry the other is a Gentleman, for leſs Religion will not ſave their Souls than a beggars; I think more will be required at the laſt great day. Well, you know what Example is able to do, and I know what the Poet ſays in the like caſe, which is worthy to be noted by all parents and people of civility:

——— ——— *Many a one*
Owes to his Country his Religion:
And in another would as ſtrongly grow,
Had but his nurſe or mother taught him ſo.

This is reaſon put into Verſe, and worthy the conſideration of a wiſe man. But of this no more, for though I love civility, yet I hate ſevere cenſures: I'le to my own art, and I doubt not but at yonder tree I ſhall catch a *Chub*, and then we'l turn to an honeſt cleanly Hoſteſs, that I know right well; reſt our ſelves there, and dreſs it for our dinner.

Venat. Oh Sir, a *Chub* is the worſt Fiſh that ſwims, I hoped for a *Trout* to my dinner.

Piſc. Truſt me, *Sir*, there is not a likely place for a *Trout*, hereabout, and we ſtaid ſo long to take our leave of your Huntſmen this morning, that the Sun is got ſo high, and ſhines ſo clear, that I will not undertake the catching of a *Trout* till evening; and though a *Chub* be by you and

many others reckoned the worſt of *fiſh*, yet you ſhall ſee I'll make it a good Fiſh, by dreſſing it.

Ven. Why, how will you dreſs him?

Piſc. I'll tell you by and by, when I have caught him. Look you here, Sir, do you ſee? (but you muſt ſtand very cloſe) there lye upon the top of the water in this very hole twenty *Chubs*, I'll catch only one, and that ſhall be the biggeſt of them all: and that I will do ſo, I'll hold you twenty to one, and you ſhall ſee it done.

Venat. I marry Sir, now you talk like an Artiſt, and I'll ſay you are one, when I ſhall ſee you perform what you ſay you can do; but I yet doubt it.

Piſc. You ſhall not doubt it long, for you ſhall ſee me do it preſently: look, the biggeſt of theſe *Chubs* has had ſome bruiſe upon his tail, by a Pike or ſome other accident, and that looks like a white ſpot; that very *Chub* I mean to put into your hands preſently; ſit you but down in the ſhade, and ſtay but a little while, and I'le warrant you I'le bring him to you.

Venat. I'le ſit down and hope well, becauſe you ſeem to be ſo confident.

Piſc. Look you Sir, there is a tryal of my skill, there he is, that very *Chub* that I ſhewed you with the white ſpot on his tail: and I'le be as certain to make him a good diſh of meat, as

I

I was to catch him. I'le now lead you to an honeſt Ale-houſe where we ſhall find a cleanly room, *Lavender* in the Windows, and twenty *Ballads* ſtuck about the wall; there my Hoſteſs (which I may tell you, is both cleanly and handſome and civil) hath dreſt many a one for me, and ſhall now dreſs it after my faſhion, and I warrant it good meat.

Ven. Come Sir, with all my heart, for I begin to be hungry, and long to be at it, and indeed to reſt my ſelf too; for though I have walk'd but four miles this morning, yet I begin to be weary; yeſterdays hunting hangs ſtill upon me.

Piſc. Well Sir, and you ſhall quickly be at reſt, for yonder is the houſe I mean to bring you to.

Come Hoſteſs, how do you? Will you firſt give us a cup of your beſt drink, and then dreſs this *Chub*, as you dreſt my laſt, when I and my friend were here about eight or ten days ago? but you muſt do me one courteſie, it muſt be done inſtantly.

Hoſt. I will do it, Mr. *Piſcator*, and with all the ſpeed I can.

Piſc. Now Sir, has not my Hoſteſs made haſt? and does not the fiſh look lovely?

Ven. Both, upon my word, Sir, and therefore let's ſay grace and fall to eating of it.

Piſc. Well Sir, how do you like it?

Ven. Truſt me, 'tis as good meat as I ever taſted: now let me thank you for it, drink to you, and beg a courteſie of you; but it muſt not be deny'd me.

Piſc. What is it I pray Sir: you are ſo modeſt, that methinks I may promiſe to grant it before it is asked.

Ven. Why Sir, it is, that from henceforth you would allow me to call you *Maſter*, and that really I may be your Scholar, for you are ſuch a companion, and have ſo quickly caught, and ſo excellently cook'd this fiſh, as makes me ambitious to be your Scholar.

Piſc. Give me your hand; from this time forward I will be your Maſter, and teach you as much of this Art as I am able; and will, as you deſire me, tell you ſomewhat of the nature of moſt of the Fiſh that we are to angle for, and I am ſure I both can and will tell you more than any common *Angler* yet knows.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How to fiſh for, and to dreſs the Chavender *or* Chub.

PIſc. The *Chub*, though he eat well thus dreſt, yet as he is uſually dreſt, he does not: he is objected againſt, not only for being full of ſmall forked bones, diſperſt through all his body, but that he eats watriſh, and that the fleſh of him is not firm, but ſhort and taſtleſs. The *French* eſteem him ſo mean, as to call him *Un Villain*; nevertheleſs he may be ſo dreſt as to make him very good meat; as namely, if he be a large Chub, then dreſs him thus:

Firſt ſcale him, and then waſh him clean, and then take out his guts; and to that end make the hole as little and near to his gills as you may conveniently, and eſpecially make clean his throat from the graſs and weeds that are uſually in it (for if that be not very clean, it will make him to taſte very ſour) having ſo done, put ſome ſweet herbs into his belly, and then tye him with two or three ſplinters to a ſpit, and roſt him, baſted often with Vinegar, or rather verjuice and butter, with good ſtore of ſalt mixt with it.

Being thus dreſt, you will find him a much better diſh of meat than you, or moſt folk, even than Anglers themſelves do imagine; for this dries up the fluid watry humor with which all *Chubs* do abound.

But take this rule with you, That a *Chub* newly taken and newly dreſt, is ſo much better than a *Chub* of a days keeping after he is dead, that I can compare him to nothing ſo fitly as to Cherries newly gathered from a tree, and others that have been bruiſed and lain a day or two in water. But the *Chub* being thus uſed and dreſt preſently, and not waſhed after he is gutted (for note that lying long in water, and waſhing the blood out of any fiſh after they be gutted, abates much of their ſweetneſs) you will find the Chub being dreſt in the blood and quickly, to be ſuch meat as will recompence your labour, and diſabuſe your opinion.

Or you may dreſs the *Chavender* or *Chub* thus:

When you have ſcaled him, and cut off his tail and fins, and waſhed him very clean, then chine or ſlit him through the middle, as a ſalt fiſh is uſually cut, then give him three or four cuts or ſcotches on the back with your knife, and broil him on Char-coal, or Wood-coal that are free from ſmoke, and all the time he is a broyling baſte him with the beſt ſweet Butter, and good ſtore of ſalt mixt with it; and to this add a little Time cut

exceeding

exceeding ſmall, or bruiſed into the butter. The Cheven thus dreſt hath the watry taſt taken away, for which ſo many except againſt him. Thus was the Cheven dreſt that you now liked ſo well, and commended ſo much. But note again, that if this Chub that you eat of, had been kept till to morrow, he had not been worth a ruſh. And remember that his throat be waſht very clean, I ſay very clean, and his body not waſht after he is gutted, as indeed no fiſh ſhould be.

Well Scholar, you ſee what pains I have taken to recover the loſt credit of the poor deſpiſed *Chub.* And now I will give you ſome rules how to catch him; and I am glad to enter you into the Art of fiſhing by catching a *Chub*, for there is no Fiſh better to enter a young Angler, he is ſo eaſily caught, but then it muſt be this particular way.

Go to the ſame hole in which I caught my *Chub*, where in moſt hot daies you will find a dozen or twenty *Chevens* floating near the top of the water, get two or three Graſhoppers as you go over the meadow, and get ſecretly behind the tree, and ſtand as free from motion as is poſſible, then put a Graſhopper on your hook, and let your hook hang a quarter of a yard ſhort of the water, to which end you muſt reſt your rod on ſome bough of the tree, but it is likely the Chubs will ſink down to-

wards the bottom of the water at the first shadow of your Rod (for a Chub is the fearfullest of fishes.) and will do so if but a bird flies over him, and makes the least shadow on the water: but they will presently rise up to the top again, and there lie soaring till some shadow affrights them again: I say when they lie upon the top of the water, look out the best Chub, (which you setting your self in a fit place, may very easily see) and move your Rod as softly as a Snail moves, to that Chub you intend to catch; let your bait fall gently upon the water three or four inches before him, and he will infallibly take the bait, and you will be as sure to catch him; for he is one of the leather-mouth'd fishes, of which a hook does scarce ever lose its hold; and therefore give him play enough before you offer to take him out of the water. Go your way presently, take my Rod, and do as I bid you, and I will sit down and mend my tackling till you return back.

Ven. Truly, my loving Master, you have offered me as fair as I could wish. I'le go and observe your directions.

Look you, Master, what I have done, that which joys my heart, caught just such another *Chub* as yours was.

Pisc. Marry, and I am glad of it: I am like to have a towardly Scholar of you. I now see, that with advice and practice you will make an

Angler

Angler in a ſhort time. Have but a love to it and I'le warrant you.

Venat. But Maſter, what if I could not have found a *Graſhopper*?

Piſc. Then I may tell you, that a *black Snail*, with his belly ſlit, to ſhew his white: or a piece of ſoft *cheeſe*, will uſually do as well: nay, ſometimes a *worm*, or any kind of *flie*, as the *Ant-flie*, the *Fleſh-flie*, or *Wall-flie*, or the *Dor* or *Beetle*, (which you may find under a Cow-tird) or a *Bob*, which you will find in the ſame place, and in time will be a Beetle; it is a ſhort white worm, like to and bigger than a Gentle, or a *Cod-worm*, or a *Caſe-worm*, any of theſe will do very well to fiſh in ſuch a manner. And after this manner you may catch a *Trout* in a hot evening: when as you walk by a Brook, and ſhall ſee or hear him leap at flies, then if you get a *Graſhopper*, put it on your hook, with your line about two yards long, ſtanding behind a buſh or tree where his hole is, and make your bait ſtir up and down on the top of the water: you may if you ſtand cloſe, be ſure of a bite, but not ſure to catch him, for he is not a leather mouthed Fiſh: and after this manner you may fiſh for him with almoſt any kind of live flie, but eſpecially with a *Graſhopper*.

Venat. But before you go further, I pray good Maſter, what mean you by a leather-mouthed Fiſh?

Piſc.

Piſc. By a leather-mouthed Fiſh, I mean ſuch as have their teeth in their throat, as the *Chub* or *Cheven*, and ſo the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon* and *Carp*, and divers others have; and the hook being ſtuck into the leather or skin of the mouth of ſuch fiſh does very ſeldom or never loſe its hold: But on the contrary, a *Pike* a *Pearch*, or *Trout*, and ſo ſome other Fiſh, which have not their teeth in their throats, but in their mouths, (which you ſhall obſerve to be very full of bones, and the skin very thin, and little of it:) I ſay, of theſe fiſh the hook never takes ſo ſure hold, but you often loſe your fiſh, unleſs he have gorg'd it.

Ven. I thank you, good Maſter, for this obſervation; but now what ſhall be done with my *Chub* or *Cheven*, that I have caught?

Piſc. Marry Sir, it ſhall be given away to ſome poor body, for I'le warrant you I'le give you a *Trout* for your ſupper: and it is a good beginning of your Art to offer your firſt fruits to the poor, who will both thank God and you for it, which I ſee by your ſilence you ſeem to conſent to. And for your willingneſs to part with it ſo charitably, I will alſo teach more concerning Chub-Fiſhing: you are to note that in *March* and *April* he is uſually taken with wormes; in *May*, *June*, and *July* he will bite at any *fly*, or at *Cherries*, or at *Beetles* with their legs and wings cut off, or at any kind of *Snail*, or at the black *Bee* that breeds in clay walls;

and

and he never refuſes a Graſhopper on the top of a ſwift ſtream, nor at the bottom the young *humble-bee* that breeds in long graſſe, and is ordinarily found by the Mower of it. In *Auguſt*, and in the cooler months a yellow *paſte*, made of the ſtrongeſt cheeſe, and pounded in a Mortar with a little butter and ſaffron, (ſo much of it as being beaten ſmall will turn it to a lemon colour.) And ſome make a paſte for the Winter months, at which time the Chub is accounted beſt, (for then it is obſerved, that the forked bones are loſt, or turned into a kind of griſtle, (eſpecially if he be baked) of Cheeſe and Turpentine; he will bite alſo at a Minnow or Penk, as a Trout will: of which I ſhall tell you more hereafter, and of divers other baits. But take this for a rule, that in hot weather he is to be fiſht for towards the mid-water, or near the top; and in colder weather nearer the bottom. And if you fiſh for him on the top, with a Beetle or any *fly*, then be ſure to let your line be very long, and to keep out of ſight. And having told you that his Spawn is excellent meat and that the head of a large Cheven, the Throat being well waſht, is the beſt part of him, I will ſay no more of this Fiſh at the preſent, but wiſh you may catch the next you fiſh for.

But leſt you may judg me too nice in urging to have the Chub dreſt ſo preſently after he is taken

taken, I will commend to your consideration how curious former times have been in the like kind.

You shall read in *Seneca* his natural Questions (*Lib. 3. cap.* 17.) that the Ancients were so curious in the newness of their Fish, that that seemed not new enough that was not put alive into the guests hand; and he says that to that end they did usually keep them living in glass-bottles in their dining-rooms; and they did glory much in their entertaining of friends to have that Fish taken from under their table alive, that was instantly to be fed upon. And he says, they took great pleasure to see their Mullets change to several colours, when they were dying. But enough of this, for I doubt I have stayed too long from giving you some observations of the *Trout*, and how to fish for him, which shall take up the next of my spare time.

CHAP. IV.

Observations of the nature and breeding of the Trout; and how to fish for him. And the Milk maids Song.

Pisc. The *Trout* is a fish highly valued both in this and forraign *Nations*: he may be justly said, (as the old Poet said of wine, and we English

Engliſh ſay of Veniſon) to be a generous Fiſh: a Fiſh that is ſo like the *Buck* that he alſo has his ſeaſons, for it is obſerved, that he comes in and goes out of ſeaſon with the *Stag* and *Buck*, *Geſner* ſays, his name is of a Germane off-ſpring, and ſays he is a fiſh that feeds clean and purely, in the ſwifteſt ſtreams, and on the hardeſt gravel! and that he may juſtly contend with all freſh-water-Fiſh, as the Mullet may with all Sea-Fiſh for precedency and daintineſs of taſte, and that being in right ſeaſon, the moſt dainty palats have allowed precedency to him.

And before I go farther in my Diſcourſe, let me tell you, that you are to obſerve, that as there be ſome *barren Does*, that are good in Summer, ſo there be ſome *barren Trouts* that are good in Winter, but there are not many that are ſo, for uſually they be in their perfection in the month of *May*, and decline with the *Buck*. Now you are to take notice, that in ſeveral Countries, as in *Germany* and in other parts, compar'd to ours, Fiſh do differ much in their bigneſs, and ſhape, and other ways, and ſo do *Trouts*; it is well known that in the Lake *Leman* (the Lake of *Geneva*) there are *Trouts* taken of three Cubits long, as is affirmed by *Geſner*, a Writer of good credit; and *Mercator* ſays, the *Trouts* that are taken in the Lake of *Geneva*, are a great part of the Merchandize of that famous City. And you

are

are further to know, that there be certain waters that breed *Trouts* remarkable, both for their number and ſmallneſs. I know a little Brook in *Kent*, that breeds them to a number incredible, and you may take them twenty or forty in an hour, but none greater than about the ſize of a *Gudgion*; There are alſo in divers Rivers, eſpecially that relate to, or be near to the Sea (as *Winchester*, or the *Thames* about *Windſor*) a little *Trout* called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout* (in both which places I have caught twenty or forty at a ſtanding) that will bite as faſt and as freely as *Minnows*; theſe be by ſome taken to be young *Salmons*, but in thoſe waters they never grow to be bigger than a *Herring*.

There is alſo in *Kent* near to *Canterbury*, a *Trout* (call'd there a *Fordidge Trout*) a *Trout* (that bears the name of the Town, where it is uſually caught) that is accounted the rareſt of Fiſh; many of them near the bigneſs of a *Salmon*, but known by their different colour, and in their beſt ſeaſon they cut very white; and none of theſe have been known to be caught with an Angle, unleſs it were one that was caught by Sir *George Haſtings* (an excellent Angler, and now with God) and he hath told me, he thought that *Trout* bit not for hunger but wantonneſs; and it is the rather to be believed, becauſe both he then, and many others before him, have been curious to

ſearch

ſearch into their bellies, what the food was by which they lived; and have found out nothing by which they might ſatisfie their curioſity.

Concerning which you are to take notice, that it is reported by good Authors, that *graſſhoppers* and ſome Fiſh have no mouths, but are nouriſht and take breath by the porouſneſs of their Guills, Man knows not how; And this may be believed, if we conſider that when the *Raven* hath hatcht her eggs, ſhe takes no further care, but, leaves her young ones, to the care of the God of Nature, who is ſaid in the *Pſalms*, *To feed the young Ravens that call upon him.* And they be kept alive, and fed by a *dew*, or *worms* that breed in their neſts, or ſome other ways that we Mortals know not, and this may be believed of the *Fordidge Trout*, which (as it is ſaid of the *Stork*, that he knows his ſeaſon, ſo he) knows his times (I think almoſt his day) of coming into that River out of the Sea, where he lives (and it is like, feeds) nine months of the Year, and faſts three in the River of *Fordidge*. And you are to note, that thoſe Townſmen are very punctual in obſerving the time of beginning to fiſh for them; and boaſt much that their River affords a Trout, that exceeds all others. And juſt ſo does *Suſſex* boaſt of ſeveral Fiſh; as namely, a *Shelſey Cockle*, a *Chicheſter Lobſter*,

ſter, an *Arundel Mullet*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

And now for ſome confirmation of the *Fordidge* Trout, you are to know that this Trout is thought to eat nothing in the freſh water; and it may be the better believed, becauſe it is well known, that *Swallows* and *Bats* and *Wagtails*, which are call'd half year birds, and not ſeen to flie in *England* for ſix months in the Year (but about *Michaelmas* leave us for a hotter Climate;) yet ſome of them that have been left behind their fellows, have been found (many thouſands at a time) in hollow trees, or clay-Caves, where they have been obſerved, to live and ſleep out the whole Winter without meat; and ſo *Albertus* obſerves that there is one kind of *Frog* that hath her mouth naturally ſhut up about the end of *Auguſt*, and that ſhe lives ſo all the Winter: and though it be ſtrange to ſome, yet it is known to too many among us to be doubted.

View Sir Fra. Bacon, exper. 899.

See Topſel of Frogs.

And ſo much for theſe *Fordidge trouts*, which never afford an *Angler* ſport, but either live their time of being in the freſh water, by their meat formerly gotten in the Sea (not unlike the *Swallow* or *Frog*) or by the vertue of the freſh water only; or as the birds of *Paradiſe*, and the *Camelion* are ſaid to live by the *Sun* and the *Air*.

There

There is also in *Northumberland* a *Trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater length and bigness, than any in these Southern parts: and there are in many Rivers that relate to the Sea, *Salmon-trouts*, as much different from others, both in shape and in their spots, as we see sheep in some Countries differ one from another in their shape and bigness, and in the fineness of their wool: and certainly, as some pastures breed larger sheep, so do some Rivers, by reason of the ground over which they run, breed larger *Trouts*.

Now the next thing that I will commend to your consideration is, that the *Trout* is of a more sudden growth than other Fish: concerning which you are also to take notice, that he lives not so long as the *Pearch* and divers other Fishes do, as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his History of Life and Death.

And next you are to take notice, that he is not like the *Crocodile*, which if he lives never so long, yet always thrives till his death: but 'tis not so with the Trout, for after he is come to his full growth, he declines in his body, and keeps his bigness or thrives only in his head till his death. And you are to know, that he will about (especially before) the time of his Spawning, get almost miraculously through *Weires*, and *Floud-gates* against the stream; even, through such high and swift places as is almost

incredible. Next, that the *Trout* uſually Spawns about *October* or *November*, but in ſome Rivers a little ſooner or later: which is the more obſervable, becauſe moſt other fiſh Spawn in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and made it fit for generation. And you are to note, that he continues many months out of ſeaſon: for it may be obſerved of the Trout, that he is like the Buck or the Ox, that will not be fat in many months, though he go in the very ſame paſtures that horſes do, which will be fat in one month; and ſo you may obſerve, that moſt other Fiſhes recover ſtrength, and grow ſooner fat, and in ſeaſon than the Trout doth.

And next, you are to note, that till the Sun gets to ſuch a height as to warm the earth and the water, the Trout is ſick and lean, and low-ſie, and unwholſom: for you ſhall in winter find him to have a big head, and then to be lank, and thin, and lean; at which time many of them have ſticking on them Sugs, or *Trout lice*, which is a kind of a worm, in ſhape like a clove or pin with a big head, and ſticks cloſe to him and ſucks his moiſture; thoſe, I think, the *Trout* breeds himſelf, and never thrives till he free himſelf from them, which is when warm weather comes; and then, as he grows ſtronger, he gets from the dead, ſtill water, into the ſharp ſtreams, and the gravel, and there rubs off theſe

worms

worms or lice; and then, as he grows ſtronger, ſo he gets him into ſwifter and ſwifter ſtreams, and there lies at the watch for any flie or Minnow, that comes near to him; and he eſpecially loves the *May-flie*, which is bred of the *Cod-worm*, or *Caddis*; and theſe make the Trout bold and luſty, and he is uſually fatter and better meat at the end of that month, than at any time of the year.

Now you are to know, that it is obſerved, that uſually the beſt *trouts* are either red or yellow, though ſome (as the *Fordidge trout*) be white and yet good; but that is not uſual: and it is a note obſervable, that the female *Trout* hath uſually a leſs head, and a deeper body than the male *Trout*; and is uſually the better meat: and note that a hogback, and a little head to either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other fiſh, is a ſign that that fiſh is in ſeaſon.

But yet you are to note, that as you ſee ſome Willows or palm-trees bud and bloſſom ſooner than others do, ſo ſome Trouts be in Rivers ſooner in ſeaſon; and as ſome Hollies or Oaks are longer before they caſt their leaves, ſo are ſome Trouts in Rivers longer before they go out of ſeaſon.

And you are to note, that there are ſeveral kinds of *Trouts*, but theſe ſeveral kinds are not conſidered but by very few men, for they go under the general name of *Trouts*: juſt as Pigeons do in moſt places; though it is certain there are tame, and wild Pigeons: and of the

tame, their be *Helmits* and *Runts* and *Carriers*, and *Cropers*, and indeed too many to name. Nay, the *Royal Society* have found and publish lately, that there be thirty and three kinds of Spiders: and yet, all (for ought I know) go under that one general name of *Spider*. And 'tis so with many kinds of Fish, and of *Trouts* especially: which differ in their bigness and shape, and spots, and colour. The great *Kentish Hens* may be an instance, compared to other Hens; And doubtless there is a kind of small Trout, which will never thrive to be big, that breeds very many more than others do, that be of a larger size; which you may rather believe, if you consider, that the little *Wren* and *Titmouse* will have twenty young ones at a time, when usually the noble *Hawk* or the Musical *Thrassal* or *Black-bird* exceed not four or five.

And now you shall see me try my skill to catch a Trout, and at my next walking either this evening, or to morrow morning I will give you direction, how you your self shall fish for him.

Venat. Trust me, Master, I see now it is a harder matter to catch a *Trout* than a *Chub*: for I have put on patience, and followed you these two hours, and not seen a Fish stir, neither at your Minnow nor your Worm.

Pisc. Well Scholar, you must endure worse luck

luck sometime, or you will never make a good Angler. But what say you now? there is a *Trout* now, and a good one too, if I can but hold him, and two or three turns more will tire him: Now you see he lies still, and the sleight is to land him: Reach me that Landing Net: So (Sir) now he is mine own, what say you now? is not this worth all my labour and your patience?

Venat. On my word Master, this is a gallant *Trout*, what shall we do with him?

Pisc. Marry e'en eat him to supper: We'l go to my Hostess, from whence we came; she told me, as I was going out of door, that my brother *Peter*, a good Angler and a chearful companion, had sent word he would lodge there to night, and bring a friend with him. My Hostess has two beds, and, I know, you and I may have the best: we'l rejoice with my brother *Peter* and his friend, tell tales, or sing Ballads, or make a Catch, or find some harmless sport to content us, and pass away a little time without offence to God or man.

Venat. a match, good Master, lets go to that house for the linnen looks white, and smells of Lavender, and I long to lie in a pair of sheets that smell so: lets be going, good Master, for I am hungry again with fishing.

Pisc. Nay, stay a little good Scholar, I caught my last *Trout* with a Worm, now I will

put on a Minnow and try a quarter of an hour about yonder trees for another, and so walk towards our Lodging. Look you Scholar, thereabout we shall have a bite presently, or not at all: Have with you (Sir!) o' my word I have hold of him. Oh it is a great loggerheaded *Chub*; Come, hang him upon that Willow twig, and lets be going, But turn out of the way a little, good Scholar, towards yonder high *honysuckle* hedg: there we'll sit and sing whilst this showr falls so gently upon the teeming earth, and gives yet a sweeter smell to the lovely flowers that adorn these verdant Meadows.

Look; under that broad *Beech-tree*, I sate down, when I was last this way a fishing, and the birds in the adjoyning Grove seemed to have a friendly contention with an Eccho, whose dead voice seemed to live in a hollow tree, near to the brow of that Primrose-hill; there I sate viewing the silver-streams glide silently towards their center, the tempestuous Sea; yet, sometimes opposed by rugged roots, and pebble stones, which broke their waves, and turned them into foam: and sometimes I beguil'd time by viewing the harmless Lambs, some leaping securely in the cool shade, whilst others sported themselves in the chearful Sun: and saw others craving comfort from the swoln Udders of their bleating Dams. As I thus sate, these

these and other sights had so fully possest my soul with content, that I thought as the Poet has happily expreſt it:

I was for that time lifted above earth;
And possest joys not promis'd in my birth,

As I left this place, and entred into the next field, a second pleasure entertained me, 'twas a handsom milk-maid that had not yet attain'd so much age and wisdom as to load her mind with any fears of many things that will never be (as too many men too often do) but she cast away all care, and sung like a *Nightingale*: her voice was good, and the Ditty fitted for it; 'twas that smooth song, which was made by *Kit. Marlow*, now at least fifty years ago: and the Milk-maids Mother sung an answer to it, which was made by Sir *Walter Rawleigh* in his younger days.

They were old fashioned Poetry, but choicely good, I think much better than the strong lines that are now in fashion in this critical age. Look yonder! on my word, yonder they both be a milking again, I will give her the *Chub*, and perswade them to sing those two songs to us.

God speed you good woman, I have been a Fishing, and am going to *Bleak-Hall* to my bed, and having caught more Fish than will sup my self and my friend, I will bestow this upon you and your Daughter, for I use to sell none.

Milkw. Marry God requite you Sir, and we'll eat it chearfully: and if you come this way a Fiſhing two months hence, a grace of God I'le give you a Sillybub of new Verjuice in a new made Hay-cock, for it, and my *Maudlin* ſhall ſing you one of her beſt *Ballads*; for ſhe and I both love all *Anglers*, they be ſuch honeſt, civil, quiet men; in the mean time will you drink a draught of *Red-Cows milk*, you ſhall have it freely.

Piſc. No, I thank you, but I pray do us a courteſie that ſhall ſtand you and your daughter in nothing, and yet we will think our ſelves ſtill ſomething in your debt; it is but to ſing us a Song, that was ſung by your daughter, when I laſt paſt over this Meadow, about eight or nine days ſince.

Milk. What Song was it, I pray? was it, *Come Shepherds deck your herds*, or, *As at noon* Dulcina *reſted*, or, Phillida *flouts me*: or, *Chevy Chaſe*? or, *Jonny Armſtrong?* or *Troy Town?*

Piſc. No, it is none of thoſe: it is a Song that your daughter ſung the firſt part, and you ſung the anſwer to it.

Milk. O, I know it now, I learn'd the firſt part in my golden age, when I was about the age of my poor daughter; and the latter part, which indeed fits me beſt now, but two or three years ago, when the cares of the World began

began to take hold of me: but you ſhall, God willing, hear them both, and ſung as well as we can, for we both love Anglers. Come *Maudlin*, ſing the firſt part to the Gentlemen with a merry heart, and I'le ſing the ſecond, when you have done.

The Milk-maids Song.

Come live with me, and be my Love.
And we will all the pleaſures prove
That valleys, groves, or hills, or fields,
Or woods, and ſteepy mountains yeilds.

Where we will ſit upon the Rocks,
And ſee the Shepherds feed our flocks,
By ſhallow Rivers, *to whoſe falls,*
Melodious birds ſing Madrigals.

And I will make thee beds of Roſes,
And then a thouſand fragrant Poſies,
A Cap of flowers, and a Kirtle
Embroidered all with leaves of mirtle.

A Gown made of the fineſt Wool
Which from our pretty Lambs we pull;
Slippers lin'd choicely for the cold,
With buckles of the pureſt gold.

A Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
With Coral Claſps and Amber ſtuds:
And if theſe pleaſures may thee move,
Come live with me and be my Love.

Thy ſilver diſhes for thy meat,
As precious as the Gods do eat,
Shall on an Ivory Table be
Prepar'd each day for thee and me.

The Shepherds Swains ſhall dance and ſing
For thy delight each May-morning:
If theſe delights thy mind may move,
Then live with me, and be my Love.

Venat. Truſt me, Maſter, it is a choice Song, and ſweetly ſung by honeſt *Maudlin*. I now ſee it was not without cauſe, that our good Queen *Elizabeth* did ſo often wiſh her ſelf a Milkmaid all the month of *May*, becauſe they are not troubled with fears and cares, but ſing ſweetly all the day, and ſleep ſecurely all the night: and without doubt, honeſt, innocent, pretty *Maudlin* does ſo. I'le beſtow Sir *Thomas Overbury*'s Milk-maids wiſh upon her, *That ſhe may dye in the Spring, and being dead may have good ſtore of flowers ſtuck round about her winding ſheet.*

The

The Milk-maids Mothers Anſwer.

If all the world and Love were young,
And truth in every Shepherds tongue,
Theſe pretty pleaſures might me move
To live with thee, and be thy Love.

But time drives flocks from field to fold,
When Rivers rage, and rocks grow cold,
Then Philomel *becometh dumb,*
And age complains of care to come.

The flowers do fade, and wanton fields
To wayward Winter reckoning yields,
A hony tongue, a heart of gall,
Is fancies ſpring, but ſorrows fall;

Thy gowns, thy ſhooes, thy beds of roſes,
Thy cap, thy kirtle, and thy poſies,
Soon break, ſoon wither, ſoon forgotten,
In folly ripe, in reaſon rotten.

Thy Belt of Straw, and Ivy-buds,
Thy Coral claſps, and Amber-ſtuds,
All theſe in me no means can move
To come to thee, and be thy Love.

What ſhould we talk of dainties then,
Of better meat than's fit for men?

Theſe

Theſe are but vain: that's only good
Which God hath bleſt, and ſent for food.

But could Youth laſt, and love ſtill breed,
Had joys no date, nor age no need;
Then thoſe delights my mind might move,
To live with thee, and be thy Love.

Mother, Well I have done my Song; but ſtay honeſt *Anglers*, for I will make *Maudlin* to ſing you one ſhort Song more. *Maudlin*; ſing that Song that you ſung laſt night, when young *Corydon* the Shepherd plaid ſo purely on his *oaten pipe* to you and your Cozen Betty.

Maud. I will Mother.

I married a Wife of late,
The more's my unhappy fate:
I married her for love,
As my fancy did me move,
And not for a worldly eſtate:

But Oh! the green-ſickneſs
Soon changed her likeneſs;
And, all her beauty did fail.
But 'tis not ſo,
With thoſe that go,
Through froſt and ſnow,
As all men know,
And, carry the Milking-pail.

Piſc.

Piſc. Well ſung good Woman I thank you, I'le give you another diſh of fiſh one of theſe days; and then, beg another Song of you. Come Scholar, let *Maudlin* alone: do not you offer to ſpoil her voice. Look, yonder comes mine *Hoſteſs*, to call us to ſupper. How now? is my Brother *Peter* come?

Hoſteſs: Yes, and a friend with him, they are both glad to hear that you are in theſe parts, and long to ſee you, and long to be at ſupper, for they be very hungry.

CHAP. V.

More Directions how to Fiſh for, and how to make for the Trout *an* Artificial Minnow, *and* Flies, *with ſome* Merriment.

PISC. Well met Brother *Peter*, I heard you and a friend would lodge here to night, and that hath made me to bring my Friend to lodge here too. My Friend is one that would fain be *a Brother of the Angle*, he hath been an *Angler* but this day, and I have taught him how to catch a *Chub* by daping with a *Graſs-hopper*, and the *Chub* he caught was a luſty

lusty one of nineteen inches long. But pray Brother *Peter* who is your companion?

Peter. Brother *Piscator*, my friend is an honest *Country-man*, and his name is *Coridon*, and he is a downright witty companion that met me here purposely to be pleasant and eat a *Trout*, And I have not yet wetted my Line since we met together? but I hope to fit him with a *Trout* for his breakfast, for I'le be early up.

Pisc. Nay Brother you shall not stay so long: for look you here is a Trout

will fill six reasonable bellies: Come Hostess, dress it presently, and get us what other meat the house will afford, and give us some of your best *Barly-wine*, the good liquor that our honest Fore-fathers did use to drink of; the drink which preserved their health, and made them

live

live ſo long, and to do ſo many good deeds.

Peter. O' my word this *Trout* is perfect in ſeaſon. Come, I thank you, and here is a hearty draught to you, and to all the brothers of the Angle whereſoever they be, and to my young brothers good fortune to morrow: I will furniſh him with a Rod, if you will furniſh him with the reſt of the Tackling; we will ſet him up and make him a Fiſher.

And I will tell him one thing for his encouragement, that his fortune hath made him happy to be Scholar to ſuch a Maſter; a Maſter that knows as much both of the nature and breeding of fiſh as any man: and can alſo tell him as well how to catch and cook them, from the *Minnow* to the *Salmon*, as any that I ever met withall.

Piſc. Truſt me, brother *Peter*, I find my Scholar to be ſo ſutable to my own humour, which is to be free and pleaſant, and civilly merry, that my reſolution is to hide nothing that I know from him. Believe me, Scholar, this is my reſolution; and ſo here's to you a hearty draught, and to all that love us, and the honeſt Art of Angling.

Ven. Truſt me, good Maſter, you ſhall not ſow your ſeed in barren ground, for I hope to return you an increaſe anſwerable to your hopes; but however you ſhall find me obedi-

ent,

ent, and thankful, and ſerviceable to my beſt abilitie.

Piſc. 'Tis enough, honeſt Scholar, come lets to ſupper. Come my friend *Coridon* this *Trout* looks lovely, it was twentie two inches when it was taken, and the belly of it looked ſome part of it as yellow as a Marigold, and part of it as white as a lilly, and yet methinks it looks better in this good ſawce.

Cor. Indeed honeſt friend, it looks well, and taſtes well, I thank you for it, and ſo doth my friend *Peter*, or elſe he is to blame.

Pet. Yes, and ſo I do, we all thank you, and when we have ſupt, I will get my friend *Coridon* to ſing you a Song for requital.

Cor. I will ſing a ſong, if any body will ſing another; elſe, to be plain with you, *I will ſing none*: I am none of thoſe that ſing for meat, but for company: I ſay, *'Tis merry in Hall, when men ſing all.*

Piſc. I'l promiſe you I'l ſing a ſong that was lately made at my requeſt, by Mr. *William Baſſe*, one that hath made the choice ſongs of the *Hunter in his cariere*, and of *Tom of Bedlam*, and many others of note; and this that I will ſing is in praiſe of Angling.

Cor. And then mine ſhall be the praiſe of a Country mans life: What will the reſt ſing of?

Pet. I will promiſe you, I will ſing another ſong in praiſe of Angling to morrow night, for

for we will not part till then, but Fish to morrow, and sup together, and the next day every man leave Fishing, and fall to his business.

Venat. 'Tis a match, and I will provide you a Song or a Catch against then too, which shall give some addition of mirth to the company; for we will be civil and as merry as begers.

Pisc. 'Tis a match my Masters, lets ev'n say Grace, and turn to the fire, drink the other cup to wet our whistles, and so sing away all sad thoughts.

Come on my Masters, who begins? I think it is best to draw cuts, and avoid contention.

Pet. It is a match. Look, the shortest cut falls to *Coridon.*

Cor. Well then, I will begin, for I hate contention.

CORIDONS Song.

Oh the sweet contentment
The country-man doth find!
high trololie loe
high trololie lee,
That quiet contemplation
possesseth all my mind:
Then care away,
and wend along with me.

For Courts are full of flattery,
As hath too oft been tri'd;
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
The City full of wantonness,
And both are full of pride:
Then care away, &c.

But oh the honest Country-man
Speaks truely from his heart,
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
His pride is in his tillage,
His horses, and his cart:
Then care away, &c.

Our cloathing is good sheep skins,
Gray russet for our wives,
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
'Tis warmth and not gay cloathing
That doth prolong our lives:
Then care away, &c.

The plough man, though he labour hard,
Yet on the Holy-Day,
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
No Emperour *so merrily*
Does passe his time away:
Then care away, &c

To recompence our tillage,
The Heavens *afford us ſhowers;*
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
And for our ſweet refreſhments
The earth affords us bowers:
Then care away, &c.

The Cuckow *and the* Nightingale
Full merrily do ſing,
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
And with their pleaſant roundelaies
Bid welcome to the Spring.
Then care away, &c.

This is not half the happineſs
The country-man enjoyes;
high trololie lollie lee, &c.
Though others think they have as much,
Yet he that ſays ſo lies:
Then come away, turn
Country man with me.

Jo. Chalkhill.

Piſc. Well ſung *Coridon*, this ſong was ſung with mettle; and it was choicely fitted to the occaſion; I ſhall love you for it as long as I know you; I would you were a brother of the Angle, for a companion that is chearful, and free from ſwearing and ſcurrilous diſcourſe, is worth gold. I love ſuch mirth as does not make

friends aſhamed to look upon one another next morning; nor men (that cannot well bear it) to repent the money they ſpend when they be warmed with drink: and take this for a rule, You may pick out ſuch times and ſuch companies, that you may make your ſelves merrier for a little than a great deal of money; for *'Tis the company and not the charge that makes the feaſt:* and ſuch a companion you prove, I thank you for it.

But I will not complement you out of the debt that I owe you, and therefore I will begin my Song and wiſh it may be ſo well liked.

The Anglers Song.

As inward love breeds outward talk,
The Hound *ſome praiſe, and ſome the* Hawk:
Some better pleas'd with private ſport,
Uſe Tennis, *ſome a* Miſtreſs *court:*
But theſe delights I neither wiſh,
Nor envy, while I freely fiſh.

Who Hunts, *doth oft in danger ride;*
Who Hawks, *lures oft both far and wide;*
Who uſes Games *ſhall often prove*
A loſer; but who falls in love,
Is fettered in fond Cupids *ſnare:*
My Angle breeds me no ſuch care.

Of

Of Recreation there is none
So free as Fiſhing is alone;
All other paſtimes do no leſſe
Than mind and body both poſſeſſe:
My hand alone my work can doe,
So I can fiſh and ſtudy too.

I care not, I, to fiſh in ſeas
Freſh rivers beſt my mind do pleaſe,
Whoſe ſweet calm courſe I contemplate,
And ſeek in life to imitate:
In civil bounds I fain would keep,
And for my paſt offences weep.

And when the timorous Trout *I wait*
To take, and he devours my bait,
How poor a thing ſometimes I find
Will captivate a greedy mind:
And when none bite, I praiſe the wiſe,
Whom vain allurements ne're ſurpriſe.

But yet though while I fiſh I faſt;
I make good fortune my repaſt,
And thereunto my friend invite,
In whom I more than that delight:
Who is more welcom to my diſh,
Than to my angle was my fiſh.

As well content no prize to take,
As uſe of taken prize to make:

For ſo our Lord was pleaſed when
He fiſhers made fiſhers of men:
Where (which is in no other game)
A man may fiſh and praiſe his name.

The firſt men that our Saviour dear
Did chuſe to wait upon him here,
Bleſt Fiſhers were, and fiſh the laſt
Food was, that he on earth did taſte.
I therefore ſtrive to follow thoſe,
Whom he to follow him hath choſe,

Cor. Well ſung brother, you have paid your debt in good coin, we Anglers are all beholding to the good man that made this Song. Come Hoſteſs, give us more Ale, and lets drink to him.

And now lets every one go to bed that we may riſe early; but firſt lets pay our reckoning, for I will have nothing to hinder me in the morning for my purpoſe is to prevent the Sun-riſing.

Pet. A match; Come *Coridon*, you are to be my Bed-fellow: I know, brother, you and your Scholar will lie together; but where ſhall we meet to morrow night? for my friend *Coridon* and I will go up the water towards *Ware*.

Piſc. And my Scholar and I will go down towards *Waltham*.

Cor.

Cer. Then lets meet here, for here are fresh sheets that smell of *Lavender*, and I am sure we cannot expect better meat, or better usage in any place.

Pet. 'Tis a match. Good night to every body.

Pisc. And so say I.

Venat. And so say I.

Pisc. Good morrow good Hostess, I see my brother *Peter* is still in bed: Come give my Scholar and me a Morning-drink, and a bit of meat to breakfast, and be sure to get a good dish of meat or two against supper, for we shall come home as hungry as Hawks. Come Scholar, lets be going.

Venat. Well now, good Master, as we walk towards the River give me direction, according to your promise, how I shall fish for a *Trout.*

Pisc. My honest Scholar, I will take this very convenient opportunity to do it.

The Trout is usually caught with a worm or a *Minnow*, (which some call a *Penk*) or with a *flie*, *viz.* either a *natural* or an *artificial flie*: concerning which three I will give you some observations and directions.

And first for Worms: Of these there be very many sorts, some breed only in the earth, as the *Earth-worm*; others of or amongst Plants, as the *Dug-worm*; and others breed either out of

excrements, or in the bodies of living creatures, as in the horns of Sheep or Deer; or some of dead flesh, as the *Maggot* or *gentle*, and others.

Now these be most of them particularly good for particular Fishes: but for the *Trout* the *dew-worm*, (which some also call the *Lob-worm*) and the *Brandling* are the chief; and especially the first for a great Trout, and the latter for a less. There be also of *Lob-worms* some called *squirrel-tailes*, (a worm that has a red head, a streak down the back and a broad tail) which are noted to be the best, because they are the toughest and most lively, and live longest in the water: for you are to know, that a dead worm is but a dead bait and like to catch nothing, compared to a lively, quick, stirring worm: and for a *Brandling*, he is usually found in an old dunghil, or some very rotten place near to it: but most usually in Cow-dung, or hogs-dung, rather than horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for that worm. But the best of them are to be found in the bark of the Tanners which they cast up in heaps after they have used it about their leather.

There are also divers other kinds of worms which for colour and shape alter even as the ground out of which they are got, as the *marsh-worm*, the *tag-tail*, the *stag-worm*, the *dock-worm*, the *oak-worm*, the *gilt-tayle*, the *twachel* or *lob-worm* (which of all others is the most excellent bait

bait for a *Salmon*) and too many to name, even as many ſorts, as ſome think there be of ſeveral hearbs or ſhrubs, or of ſeveral kinds of birds in the air; of which I ſhall ſay no more, but tell you, that what worms ſoever you fiſh with, are the better for being well ſcowred, that is long kept, before they be uſed; and in caſe you have not been ſo provident, then the way to cleanſe and ſcowr them quickly, is to put them all night in water, if they be *Lob-worms*, and then put them into your bag with fennel: but you muſt not put your Brandlings above an hour in water, and then put them into fennel for ſuddain uſe: but if you have time and purpoſe to keep them long, then they be beſt preſerved in an earthen pot with good ſtore of *Moſſe*, which is to be freſh every three or four dayes in Summer, and every week or eight dayes in Winter: or at leaſt the moſſe taken from them, and clean waſhed, and wrung betwixt your hands till it be dry, and then put it to them again. And when your worms, eſpecially the Brandling, begins to be ſick, and loſe of his bigneſs, then you may recover him, by putting a little milk or cream (about a ſpoonful in a day) into them by drops on the moſſe; and if there be added to the cream an egge beaten and boiled in it, then it will both fatten and preſerve them long. And note, that when the *knot*, which is near to the middle of the *brandling* begins to ſwell, then he is ſick,

and,

and, if he be not well look'd to, is near dying. And for moſſe, you are to note, that there be divers kinds of it, which I could name to you, but will onely tell you, that that which is likeſt a *Buck's-Horn* is the beſt, except it be ſoft white moſs, which grows on ſome heaths, and is hard to be found. And note, that in a very dry time, when you are put to an extremity for worms, Walnut-tree leaves ſqueez'd into water, or ſalt in water, to make it bitter or ſalt, and then that water poured on the ground, where you ſhall ſee worms are uſed to riſe in the night, will make them to appear above ground preſently. And you may take notice ſome ſay that *Camphire* put into your bag with your moſſe and worms, gives them a ſtrong and ſo tempting a ſmell, that the fiſh fare the worſe and you the better for it.

And now, I ſhall ſhew you how to bait your hook with a worm, ſo as ſhall prevent you from much trouble, and the loſs of many a hook too; when you Fiſh for a *Trout* with a running line: that is to ſay, when you fiſh for him by hand at the ground, I will direct you in this as plainly as I can, that you may not miſtake.

Suppoſe it be a big Lob-worm, put your hook into him ſomewhat above the middle, and out again a little below the middle: having ſo done, draw your worm above the arming of your hook, but note that at the entring of your hook it muſt not be

at

at the head-end of the worm, but at the tail-end of him, (that the point of your hook may come out toward the head-end) and having drawn him above the arming of your hook, then put the point of your hook again into the very head of the worm, till it come near to the place where the point of the hook first came out: and then draw back that part of the worm that was above the shank or arming of your hook, and so fish with it. And if you mean to fish with two worms, then put the second on before you turn back the hooks-head of the first worm; you cannot lose above two or three worms before you attain to what I direct you; and having attain'd it, you will find it very useful, and thank me for it: For you will run on the ground without tangling.

Now for the *Minnow* or *Penk* he is not easily found and caught till *March*, or in *April*, for then he appears first in the River, Nature having taught him to shelter and hide himself in the Winter in ditches that be near to the River, and there both to hide and keep himself warm in the mud or in the weeds, which rot not so soon as in a running River, in which place if he were in Winter, the distempered Floods that are usually in that season, would suffer him to take no rest, but carry him head-long to Mills and Weires to his confusion. And of these *Minnows*, first you are to know, that the biggest size is not the best; and next, that the middle size and

the

the whiteſt are the beſt: and then you are to know, that your *Minnow* muſt be ſo put on your hook that it muſt turn round when 'tis drawn againſt the ſtream, and that it may turn nimbly, you muſt put it on a big-ſized hook as I ſhall now direct you, which is thus. Put your hook in at his mouth and out at his gill, then having drawn your hook 2 or 3 inches beyond or through his gill, put it again into his mouth, and the point and beard out at his taile, and then tie the hook and his taile about very neatly with a white thred, which will make it the apter to turn quick in the water: that done, pull back that part of your line which was ſlack when you did put your hook into the *Minnow* the ſecond time: I ſay pull that part of your line back ſo that it ſhall faſten the head, ſo that the body of the *Minnow* ſhall be almoſt ſtreight on your hook; this done, try how it will turn by drawing it croſs the water or againſt a ſtream, and if it do not turn nimbly, then turn the tail a little to the right or left hand, and try again, till it turn quick; for if not? you are in danger to catch nothing; for know, that it is impoſſible that it ſhould turn too quick: And you are yet to know, that in caſe you want a *Minnow*, then a ſmall *Loch* or a *Stickle-bag*, or any other ſmall fiſh that will turn quick will ſerve as well: And you are yet to know, that you may ſalt them, and by that means keep them ready and fit for

uſe

uſe three or four days, or longer, and that of ſalt, bay-ſalt is the beſt.

And here let me tell you, what many old Anglers know right well, that at ſome times, and in ſome waters a *Minnow* is not to be got, and therefore let me tell you, I have (which I will ſhew to you) an *artificial Minnow*, that will catch a Trout as well as an *artificial Flie*, and it was made by a handſom Woman that had a fine hand, and a live *Minnow* lying by her: *the mould or body of the Minnow was cloth, and wrought upon or over it thus with a needle: the back of it with very ſad French green ſilk, and paler green ſilk towards the belly, ſhadowed as perfectly as you can imagine, juſt as you ſee a Minnow; the belly was wrought alſo with a needle, and it was a part of it white ſilk, and another part of it with ſilver thred, the tail and fins were of a quill, which was ſhaven thin, the eyes were of two little black beads, and the head was ſo ſhadowed, and all of it ſo curiouſly wrought, and ſo exactly diſſembled, that it would beguile any ſharpe ſighted Trout in a ſwift ſtream. And this Minnow I will now ſhew you, (look here it is) and if you like it, lend it you, to have two or three made by it, for they be eaſily carryed about an Angler, and be of excellent uſe; for note, that a large Trout will come as fiercely at a Minnow, as the higheſt mettled Hawk doth ſeize on a Partridg, or a Grey-hound on a Hare.* I have been told, that 160 *Minnows* have been found

found in a *Trouts* belly; either the *Trout* had devoured so many; or the Miller that gave it a friend of mine had forced them down his throat after he had taken him.

Now for *Flies*, which is the third bait wherewith *Trouts* are usually taken. You are to know, that there are so many sorts of Flies as there be of Fruits: I will name you but some of them, as the *dun-flie*, the *stone-flie*, the *red-flie*, the *moor-flie*, the *tawny-flie*, the *shell-flie*, the *cloudy*, or *blackish-flie*, the *flag-flie*, the *vine-flie*: there be of *flies*, *Caterpillars*, and *Canker-flies*, and *Bear-flies*, and indeed too many either for me to name or for you to remember: and their breeding is so various and wonderful, that I might easily amaze my self, and tire you in a relation of them.

And yet I will exercise your promised patience by saying a little of the *Caterpillar* or the *Palmer-flie* or *worm*, that by them you may guess what a work it were in a Discourse but to run over those very many *flies*, *worms* and little living creatures with which the Sun and Summer adorn and beautifie the River banks and Meadows; both for the recreation and contemplation of us Anglers, pleasures which (I think) my self enjoy more than any other man that is not of my profession.

Pliny holds an opinion, that many have their birth or being from a dew that in the Spring falls

falls upon the leaves of trees; and that ſome kinds of them are from a dew left upon herbs or flowers; and others from a dew left upon Coleworts or Cabbages: All which kinds of dews being thickned and condenſed, are by the Suns generative heat moſt of them hatch'd, and in three days made living creatures; and theſe of ſeveral ſhapes and colours; ſome being hard and tough, ſome ſmooth and ſoft; ſome are horned in their head, ſome in their tail, ſome have none: ſome have hair, ſome none: ſome have ſixteen feet, ſome leſs, and ſome have none, but (as our *Topſel* hath with great diligence obſerved) thoſe which have none, move upon the earth or upon broad leaves, their motion being not unlike to the waves of the Sea. Some of them he alſo obſerves to be bred of the Eggs of other Caterpillars, and that thoſe in their time turn to be *Butter-flies*: and again, that their Eggs turn the following year to be *Caterpillars*. And ſome affirm, that every plant has his particular flie or Caterpillar, which it breeds and feeds. I have ſeen, and may therefore affirm it, a green Caterpillar, or worm, as big as a ſmall Peaſcod, which had fourteen legs, eight on the belly, four under the neck, and two near the tail. It was found on a hedge of Privet, and was taken thence, and put into a large Box, and a little branch or two of Privet put

In his hiſtory of Serpents.

put to it; on which I ſaw it feed as ſharply as a dog gnaws a bone: it lived thus five or ſix daies, and thrived, and changed the colour two or three times, but by ſome neglect in the keeper of it, it then dyed and did not turn to a flie: but if it had lived, it had doubtleſs turned to one of thoſe flies that ſome call flies of prey, which thoſe that walk by the Rivers may in Summer, ſee faſten on ſmaller flies, and I think make them their food. And 'tis obſervable, that as there be theſe *flies of prey* which be very large, ſo there be others very little, created, I think, only to feed them, and breed out of I know not what; whoſe life, they ſay, Nature intended not to exceed an hour, and yet that life is thus made ſhorter by other flies, or accident.

'Tis endleſs to tell you what the curious ſearchers into Natures productions have obſerved of theſe Worms and Flies: But yet I ſhall tell you what *Aldrovandus*, our *Topſel*, and others ſay of the *Palmer-worm* or *Caterpillar*, That whereas others content themſelves to feed on particular herbs or leaves, (for moſt think thoſe very leaves that gave them life and ſhape, give them a particular feeding and nouriſhment, and that upon them they uſually abide) yet he obſerves, that this is called a *pilgrim* or *palmer-worm*, for his very wandring life and various food; not contenting himſelf (as others do) with any one certain place for his abode, nor any

ny certain kind of herb or flower for his feeding; but will boldly and disorderly wander up and down, and not endure to be kept to a diet, or fixt to a particular place:

Nay, the very colours of *Caterpillars* are, as one has observed, very elegant and beautiful: I shall (for a taste of the rest) describe one of them, which I will sometime the next month shew you feeding on a Willow-tree, and you shall find him punctually to answer this very description; *His lips and mouth somewhat yellow, his eyes black as Jet, his forehead purple, his feet and hinder parts green, his tail two forked and black, the whole body stained with a kind of red spots which run along the neck and shoulderblade, not unlike the form of Saint* Andrew's *Cross, or the letter* X, *made thus cross-wise, and a white line drawn down his back to his tail; all which add much beauty to his whole body.* And it is to me observable, that at a fixed age this *Caterpillar* gives over to eat, and towards Winter comes to be covered over with a strange shell or crust called an *Aurelia*, and so lives a kind of dead life, without eating all the Winter; and (as others of several kinds turn to be several kinds of flies and vermin the Spring following (so this *Caterpillar* then turns to be a *painted Butter-fly.*

View Sir Fra. Bacon exper. 728 & 90. in his Natural History.

Come, come my Scholar, you see the River

ſtops our morning walk, and I will alſo here ſtop my diſcourſe, only as we ſit down under this *Honey-ſuckle* hedg, whilſt I look a Line to fit the Rod that our brother *Peter* hath lent you, I ſhall for a little confirmation of what I have ſaid, repeat the obſervation of *Du Bartas*:

God not contented to each kind to give, 6. Day of
And to infuſe the vertue generative, Du Bartas.
By his wiſe power made many creatures breed
Of liveleſs bodies without Venus *deed.*

So the cold humor breeds the Salamander,
who(in effect)like to her births commander,
With child with hundred winters, with her touch
Quencheth the fire though glowing ne'r ſo much.

So in the fire in burning furnace ſprings
The Fly Perauſta *with the flaming wings;*
Without the fire it dyes, in it it joyes,
Living in that which all things elſe deſtroyes.

So ſlow Boôtes *underneath him ſees* View Gerh. Herbal and
In th'IcyIſlands goſlings *hatcht of trees,* Cambden.
Whoſe fruitful leaves falling into the water,
Are turn'd ('tis known)to living fowls ſoon after.

So rotten planks of broken ſhips do change
To Barnacles. *O tranſformation ſtrange!*
'Twas firſt a green tree, then a broken hull,

Lately

Lately a muſhrome, now a flying Gull.

Venat. O my good Maſter, this morning-walk has been ſpent to my great pleaſure and wonder: but I pray, when ſhall I have your direction how to make artificial flies, like to thoſe that the *Trout* loves beſt? and alſo how to uſe them?

Piſc. My honeſt Scholar, it is now paſt five of the Clock, we will fiſh till nine, and then go to breakfaſt: Go you to yonder *Sycamore-tree*, and hide your Bottle of drink under the hollow root of it; for about that time, and in that place, we will make a brave breakfaſt with a piece of powderd Beef, and a Radiſh or two that I have in my Fiſh-bag; we ſhall, I warrant you, make a good, honeſt, wholſome, hungry breakfaſt, and I will then give you direction for the making and uſing of your flies: and in the mean time there is your Rod and Line, and my advice is, that you fiſh as you ſee me do, And let's try which can catch the firſt Fiſh.

Venat. I thank you Maſter, I will obſerve and practice your direction as far as I am able.

Piſc. Look you Scholar, you ſee I have hold of a good Fiſh: I now ſee it is a Trout, I pray, put that Net under him, and touch not my line for if you do, then we break all. Well done Scholar, I thank you.

Now for another. Truſt me I have another bite: come Scholar, come lay down your Rod, and help me to land this as you did the other. So, now we ſhall be ſure to have a good diſh of Fiſh for ſupper.

Venat. I am glad of that; but I have no fortune: ſure, Maſter, yours is a better Rod, and better tackling.

Piſc. Nay, then take mine, and I will fiſh with yours. Look you, Scholar, I have another; come, do as you did before. And now I have a bite at another: Oh me! he has broke all; there's half a line and a good hook loſt.

Venat. I and a good *Trout* too.

Piſc. Nay, the *Trout* is not loſt, for pray take notice no man can loſe what he never had.

Venat. Maſter, I can neither catch with the firſt nor ſecond Angle: I have no fortune.

Piſc. Look you, Scholar, I have yet another: and now having caught three brace of Trouts, I will tell you a ſhort Tale as we walk towards our breakfaſt: *A Scholar (a Preacher I ſhould ſay) that was to preach to procure the approbation of a Pariſh, that he might be their Lecturer, had got from his Fellow-pupil the copy of a Sermon that was firſt preached with great commendation by him that compoſed it; and though the borrower of it preach'd it word for word, as it was at firſt, yet it was utterly diſliked as it was preached*

preached by the ſecond to his Congregation: which the ſermon-borrower complained of to the lender of it, and was thus anſwered; I lent you indeed my Fiddle, *but not my* Fiddleſtick; *for you are to know, that every one cannot make muſick with my words, which are fitted for my own mouth.* And ſo, my Scholar, you are to know, that as the ill pronunciation or ill accenting of words in a Sermon ſpoils it, ſo the ill carriage of your line, or not fiſhing even to a foot in a right place, makes you loſe your labour: and you are to know, that though you have my *Fiddle*, that is, my very Rod and Tacklings with which you ſee I catch Fiſh; yet you have not my *Fiddleſtick*, that is, you yet have not skill to know how to carry your hand and line, nor how to guide it to a right place: and this muſt be taught you (for you are to remember I told you, Angling is an Art) either by practice, or a long obſervation or both. But take this for a rule, when you fiſh for a Trout with a Worm, let your line have ſo much, and not more Lead than will fit the ſtream in which you fiſh; that is to ſay; more in a great troubleſom ſtream than in a ſmaller that is quieter; as near as may be, ſo much as will ſink the bait to the bottom, and keep it ſtill in motion, and not more.

But now lets ſay Grace and fall to breakfaſt: what ſay you, Scholar, to the providence of an old Angler? does not this meat taſte well? and

was not this place well chosen to eat it? for this Sycamore-tree will shade us from the Suns heat.

Venat. All excellent good, and my stomach excellent good too. And I now remember and find that true which devout *Lessius* says, *That poor men, and those that fast often, have much more pleasure in eating than rich men and gluttons, that always feed before their stomachs are empty of their last meat, and call for more: for by that means they rob themselves of that pleasure that hunger brings to poor men.* And I do seriously approve of that saying of yours, *That you had rather be a civil, well govern'd, well grounded, temperate, poor Angler, than a drunken Lord.* But I hope there is none such; however I am certain of this, that I have been at many very costly dinners that have not afforded me half the content that this has done, for which I thank God and you.

And now good Master, proceed to your promised direction for making and ordering my Artificial flie.

Pisc. My honest Scholar, I will do it, for it is a debt due unto you by my promise: and because you shall not think your self more engaged to me than indeed you really are, I will freely give you such directions as were lately given to me by an ingenuous brother of the Angle, an honest man, and a most excellent *Flie-fisher.* You

You are to note, that there are twelve kinds of Artificial made Flies to Angle with upon the top of the water (note by the way, that the fitteſt ſeaſon of uſing theſe is in a bluſtering windy day, when the waters are ſo troubled that the natural flie cannot be ſeen, or reſt upon them.) The firſt is the *dun-flie* in *March*, the body is made of *dun wool*, the wings of the Partridges feathers. The ſecond is another *dun-Flie*, the body of *Black wool*, and the wings made of the black Drakes feathers, and of the feathers under his tail. The third is the *ſtone-flie* in *April*, the body is made of *black wool* made yellow under the wings, and under the tail, and ſo made with wings of the Drake. The fourth is the *ruddy Flie* in the beginning of *May*, the body made of *red wool* wrapt about with black ſilk, and the feathers are the wings of the Drake, with the feathers of a red Capon alſo, which hang dangling on his ſides next to the tail. The fifth is the *yellow* or *greeniſh-flie* (in *May* likewiſe) the body made of *yellow wool*, and the wings made of the red cocks hackle or tail. The ſixth is, the *black Flie* in *May* alſo, the body made of *black wool* and lapt about with the herl of a Peacocks tail; the wings are made of the wings of a brown Capon with his blew feathers in his head. The ſeventh is the ſad *yellow-flie* in *June*, the body is made of *black wool*, with a yellow liſt on either ſide, and

the wings taken off the wings of a Buzzard, bound with black braked hemp. The eighth is the *moorish flie* made with the body of duskish Wool, and the wings made of the blackish mail of the Drake. The ninth is the *tawny-flie*, good until the middle of *June*; the body made of *tawny-wool*, the wings made contrary one against the other, made of the whitish mail of the wild Drake. The tenth is the *Wasp-flie* in *July*, the body made of *black wool*, lapt about with yellow silk, the wings made of the feathers of the Drake, or of the Buzzard. The Eleventh is the *shell-flie*, good in mid *July*, the body made of greenish wool, lapt about with the herle of a Peacocks tail; and the wings made of the wings of the Buzzard. The twelfth is the dark *Drake-flie*, good in *August*, the body made with *black Wool*, lapt about with black silk: his wings are made with the mail of the black Drake, with a black head. Thus have you a Jury of flies likely to betray and condemn all the Trouts in the River.

I shall next give you some other Directions for Flie-fishing, such as are given by Mr. *Thomas Barker*, a Gentleman that hath spent much time in Fishing: but I shall do it with a little variation.

First, let your Rod be light, and very gentle, I take the best to be of two pieces, and let not your Line exceed (especially for three or four links

links next to the hook) I ſay, not exceed three or four hairs at the moſt, though you may Fiſh a little ſtronger above in the upper part of your Line: but if you can attain to Angle with one hair, you ſhall have more riſes and catch more Fiſh. Now you muſt be ſure not to cumber your ſelf with too long a Line, as moſt do: and before you begin to Angle, caſt to have the wind on your back, and the Sun (if it ſhines) to be before you, and to fiſh down the ſtream; and carry the point or top of your Rod downward, by which means the ſhadow of your ſelf, and Rod too will be the leaſt offenſive to the Fiſh, for the ſight of any ſhade amazes the fiſh, and ſpoils your ſport, of which you muſt take a great care.

In the middle of *March* (till which time a man ſhould not in honeſty catch a Trout) or in *April*, if the weather be dark, or a little windy or cloudy, the beſt fiſhing is with the *Palmer-worm*, of which I laſt ſpoke to you, but of theſe there be divers kinds, or at leaſt of divers colours; theſe and the *May-flie* are the ground of all Flie-angling, which are to be thus made.

Firſt, you muſt arm your hook with the line in the inſide of it, then take your Sciſſars, and cut ſo much of a brown Mallards feather as in your own reaſon will make the wings of it, you having withal regard to the bigneſs or littleneſs

tleneſs of your hook, then lay the outmoſt part of your feather next to your hook, then the point of your feather next the ſhank of your hook; and having ſo done, whip it three or four times about the hook with the ſame Silk, with which your hook was armed, and having made the Silk faſt, take the hackle of a *Cock* or *Capons* neck, or a *Plovers* top, which is uſually better: take off the one ſide of the feather, and then take the hackle, Silk, or Crewel, Gold or Silver thred, make theſe faſt at the bent of the hook, that is to ſay, below your arming; then you muſt take the hackle, the Silver or Gold thred, and work it up to the wings, ſhifting or ſtill removing your finger, as you turn the Silk about the hook: and ſtill looking at every ſtop or turn, that your Gold, or what materials ſoever you make your *Flie* of, do lie right and neatly; and if you find they do ſo, then when you have made the head, make all faſt, and then work your hackle up to the head, and make that faſt: and then with a needle or pin divide the wing into two, and then with the arming Silk whip it about croſs-waies betwixt the wings; and then with your thumb you muſt turn the point of the feather towards the bent of the hook, and then work three or four times about the ſhank of the hook, and then view the proportion, and if all be neat and to your liking faſten.

I confeſs, no direction can be given to make a man of a dull capacity able to make a Flie well: and yet I know, this with a little practice will help an ingenuous Angler in a good degree: but to ſee a Flie made by an Artiſt in that kind, is the beſt teaching to make it, and then an ingenuous Angler may walk by the River and mark what flies fall on the water that day, and catch one of them, if he ſee the *Trouts* leap at a flie of that kind: and then having alwaies hooks ready hung with him, and having a bag alſo always with him, with Bears hair, or the hair of a brown or ſad-coloured Heifer, hackles of a Cock or Capon, ſeveral coloured Silk and Crewel to make the body of the flie, the feathers of a Drakes head, black or brown Sheeps wool, or Hogs wool, or hair, thred of Gold and of Silver: Silk of ſeveral colours (eſpecially ſad coloured to make the flies head:) and there be alſo other coloured feathers both of little birds and of peckled ſoul. I ſay, having thoſe with him in a bag, and trying to make a flie, though he miſs at firſt, yet ſhall he at laſt hit it better, even to ſuch a perfection, as none can well teach him; and if he hit to make his Flie right, and have the luck to hit alſo where there is ſtore of *Trouts*, a dark day, and a right wind, he will catch ſuch ſtore of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in love with the Art of *Fly-making*.

Venat.

Venat. But my loving master, if any wind will not serve, then I wish I were in *Lapland*, to buy a good wind of one of the honest Witches, that sell so many winds there, and so cheap.

Pisc. Marry Scholar, but I would not be there, nor indeed from under this tree: for look how it begins to rain, and by the clouds, if I mistake not we shall presently have a smoaking showre, and therefore sit close, this *Sycamore-tree* will shelter us: and I will tell you, as they shall come into my mind, more observations of flie-fishing for a Trout.

But first for the wind, you are to take notice, that of the winds the *Southwind* is said to be best. One observes, That

——*When the wind is South,*
It blows your bait into a fishes mouth.

Next to that, the *West* wind is believed to be the best: and having told you that the *East* wind is the worst, I need not tell you which wind is the best in the third degree: And yet (as *Solomon* observes) that *He that considers the wind shall never sow*: so he that busies his head too much about them, (if the weather be not made extream cold by an East wind) shall be a little superstitious: For as it is observed by some, That there is no good Horse of a bad colour; so I have observed that if it be a cloudy day,

day, and not extream cold, let the Wind ſit in what corner it will, and do its worſt I heed it not. And yet take this for a rule, that I would willingly fiſh ſtanding on the Lee-ſhore: and you are to take notice, that the fiſh lies or ſwims nearer the bottom, and in deeper water in Winter than in Summer; and alſo nearer the bottom in any cold day, and then gets neareſt the Lee-ſide of the water.

But I promiſed to tell you more of the Flie-fiſhing for a *Trout*, which I may have time enough to do, for you ſee it rains *May-butter*: Firſt for a *May-Flie*, you may make his body with greeniſh coloured Crewel, or Willowiſh colour; darkning it in moſt places with waxed Silk, or rib'd with black hair, or ſome of them rib'd with ſilver thred; and ſuch Wings for the colour as you ſee the flie to have at that ſeaſon; nay, at that very day on the water. Or you may make the Oak-flie with an Orange-tawny and black ground, and the brown of a Mallards feather for the Wings; and you are to know, that theſe two are moſt excellent flies, that is, the *May-flie* and the *Oak-Flie*. And let me again tell you, that you keep as farſrom the water as you can poſſibly, whether you fiſh with a flie or worm, and fiſh down the ſtream; and when you fiſh with a flie, if it be poſſible, let no part of your line touch the water, but your flie only; and be ſtill moving your flie upon the water,

water, or casting it into the water, you your self being also always moving down the stream. Mr. *Barker* commends several sorts of the *Palmer* flies, not only those rib'd with silver and gold, but others that have their bodies all made of black, or some with red, and a red hackle; you may also make the *Hawthorn-flie*, which is all black, and not big, but very small, the smaller the better; or the *Oak-Flie*, the body of which is Orange-colour and black Crewel, with a brown Wing; or a flie made with a *Peacocks* feather, is excellent in a bright day: You must be sure you want not in your *Magazine-bag* the *Peacocks* feather, and grounds of such wool and Crewel as will make the Grashopper; and note that usually the smallest flies are the best; and note also, that the light flie does usually make most sport in a dark day, and the darkest and least flie in a bright or clear day; and lastly note, that you are to repair upon any occasion to your *Magazine-bag*, and upon any occasion vary and make them lighter or sadder according to your fancy or the day.

And now I shall tell you, that the fishing with a natural flie is excellent, and affords much pleasure; they may be found thus, the *May-flie* usually in and about that month near to the River side, especially against rain; the *Oak-Flie* on the butt or body of an *Oak* or *Ash* from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*,

August; it is a browniſh flie, and eaſie to be ſo found, and ſtands uſually with his head downward, that is to ſay, towards the root of the tree; the ſmall black flie, or Hawthorn flie, is to be had on any Hawthorn buſh after the leaves be come forth: with theſe and a ſhort Line (as I ſhewed to Angle for a *Chub*) you may dape or dop, and alſo with a *Graſhopper* behind a tree, or in any deep hole, ſtill making it to move on the top of the water, as if it were alive, and ſtill keeping your ſelf out of ſight, you ſhall certainly have ſport if there be *Trouts*; yea, in a hot day, but eſpecially in the evening of a hot day you will have ſport.

And now, Scholar, my direction for flie-fiſhing is ended with this ſhowre, for it has done raining; and now look about you, and ſee how pleaſantly that Meadow looks; nay, and the Earth ſwells as ſweetly too. Come, let me tell you what holy Mr. *Herbert* ſays of ſuch days and flowers as theſe, and then we will thank God that we enjoy them, and walk to the River and ſit down quietly, and try to catch the other brace of *Trouts*.

Sweet day, ſo cool, ſo calm, ſo bright,
The bridal of the earth and skie,
Sweet dews ſhall weep thy fall to night,
for thou muſt die.

Sweet

Sweet Roſe, whoſe hew angry and brave
Bids the raſh gazer wipe his eye,
Thy root is ever in its grave,
and thou muſt die.

Sweet Spring, full of ſweet days and roſes,
A box where ſweets compacted lye;
My Muſick ſhews you have your cloſes,
and all muſt dye.

Only a ſweet and vertuous ſoul,
Like ſeaſoned Timber never gives,
But when the whole world turns to coal,
then chiefly lives.

Venat. I thank you, good Maſter, for your good direction for Flie-fiſhing, and for the ſweet enjoyment of the pleaſant day, which is ſo far ſpent without offence to God or man: and I thank you for the ſweet cloſe of your diſcourſe with Mr. *Herberts* Verſes, who I have heard loved Angling: and I do the rather believe it, becauſe he had a ſpirit ſuitable to Anglers, and to thoſe primitive Chriſtians, that you love, and have ſo much commended.

Piſc. Well my loving Scholar, and I am pleaſed, to know that you are ſo well pleaſed with my direction and diſcourſe.

And ſince you like theſe Verſes of Mr. *Herberts* ſo well, let me tell you what a reverend and

and learned Divine that professes to imitate him (and has indeed done so most excellently) hath writ of our *Book* of *Common Prayer*, which I know you will like the better, because he is a friend of mine, and I am sure no enemy to Angling.

What? pray'r by th'book? and common? Yes, why (not?
The Spirit of grace,
And supplication,
Is not left free alone
For time and place,
But manner too: to read or speak by rote,
Is all alike to him, that prayes
In's heart, what with his mouth he says.

They that in private by themselves alone
Do pray, may take
What liberty they please,
In chusing of the ways
Wherein to make
Their souls most intimate affections known
To him that sees in secret, when
Th' are most conceal'd from other men.

But he, that unto others leads the way
In publick prayer,
Should do it so
As all that hear may know

They need not fear
To tune their hearts unto his tongue, and ſay,
Amen; *not doubt they were betray'd*
To blaſpheme, *when they meant to have* pray'd.

Devotion will add Life unto the Letter,
And why ſhould not
That which Authority
Preſcribes, eſteemed be
Advantage got?
If th' prayer be good, the commoner the better,
Prayer in the Churches words, *as well*
As ſenſe, *of all prayers bears the bell.*
Ch. Harvie.

And now, Scholar, I think it will be time to repair to our Angle-rods, which we left in the water, to fiſh for themſelves, and you ſhall chuſe which ſhall be yours; and it is an even lay, one of them catches.

And let me tell you, this kind of fiſhing with a dead rod, and laying night-hooks, are like putting money to uſe, for they both work for the Owners, when they do nothing but ſleep, or eat, or rejoyce; as you know we have done this laſt hour, and ſate as quietly and as free from cares under this *Sycamore*, as *Virgils Tityrus* and his *Melibæus* did under their broad *Beech-tree*: No life, my honeſt Scholar, no life ſo happy and ſo pleaſant, as the life of a well

well governed *Angler*; for when the *Lawyer* is ſwallowed up with buſineſs, and the *Stateſman* is preventing or contriving plots, then we ſit on *Cowſlip-banks*, hear the birds ſing, and poſſeſs our ſelves in as much quietneſs as theſe ſilent ſilver ſtreams, which we now ſee glide ſo quietly by us. Indeed my good Scholar, we may ſay of *Angling*, as Dr. *Boteler* ſaid of *Strawberries*, *Doubtleſs God could have made a better berry, but doubtleſs God never did:* And ſo (if I might be Judge) *God never did make a more calm, quiet, innocent recreation than Angling.*

I'le tell you Scholar, when I ſate laſt on this *Primroſe-bank*, and look'd down theſe Meadows; I thought of them as *Charles* the Emperour did of the City of *Florence*: *That they were too pleaſant to be look'd on, but only on Holy-days*: as I then ſate on this very graſs, I turn'd my preſent thoughts into verſe: 'Twas a wiſh which I'le repeat to you.

The Anglers wiſh.

I in theſe flowry Meads wou'd be:
Theſe Chryſtal ſtreams ſhould ſolace me;
To whoſe harmonious bubling noiſe,
I with my Angle wo'd rejoice
Sit here and ſee the Turtle-dove,
Court his chaſt Mate to acts of love,

Or on that bank, feel the west wind
Breath health and plenty, please my mind
To see sweet dew-drops kiss these flowers,
And then, washt off by April-*showers:*
Here hear my Kenna *sing* * *a song,*
There see a Black-bird feed her young,
Or a Leverock *build her nest;*
Here, give my weary spirits rest,
And raise my low pitcht thoughts above
Earth, or what poor mortals love:
Thus free from Law-*suits, and the noise*
Of Princes Courts I wou'd rejoyce.

* Like Hermit poor.

Or, with my Bryan, *and a book,*
Loyter long days near Shawford-*brook;*
There sit by him, and eat my meat,
There see the Sun both rise and set:
There bid good morning to next day,
There meditate my time away:
And angle on, and beg to have
A quiet passage to a welcome grave.

When I had ended this composure, I left this place, and saw a Brother of the Angle sit under that *bony-suckle-hedg* (one that will prove worth your acquaintance) I sate down by him, and presently we met with an accidental piece of merriment, which I will relate to you; for it rains still.

On the other side of this very hedge sate a gang

gang of *Gypſies*, and near to them ſate a gang of *Beggars*: the *Gypſies* were then to divide all the money that had been got that week, either by ſtealing linnen or poultrie, or by Fortune-telling, or Legerdemain, or indeed by any other ſleights and ſecrets belonging to their myſterious Government. And the ſum that was got that week proved to be but twenty and ſome odd ſhillings. The odd money was agreed to be diſtributed amongſt the poor of their own Corporation; and for the remaining twenty ſhillings, that was to be divided unto four Gentlemen *Gypſies*, according to their ſeveral degrees in their Commonwealth.

And the firſt or chiefeſt *Gypſie*, was by conſent to have a third part of the twenty ſhillings; which all men know is 6 s. 8 d.

The ſecond was to have a fourth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 5 s.

The third was to have a fifth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 4 s.

The fourth and laſt *Gypſie*, was to have a ſixth part of the 20 s. which all men know to be 3 s. 4 d.

As for example,

3 times 6 s. 8 d. is —— 20 s.
And ſo is 4 times 5 s. —— 20 s.
And ſo is 5 times 4 s. —— 20 s.
And ſo is 6 times 3 s. 4 d. --- 20 s.

And yet he that divided the money was so very a *Gypsie*, that though he gave to every one these said sums, yet he kept one shilling of it for himself.

As for Example,	s.	d.
	6	8
	5	0
	4	0
	3	4
make but	19	0

But now you shall know, that when the four *Gypsies* saw that he had got one shilling by dividing the money, though not one of them knew any reason to demand more, yet like Lords and Courtiers every *Gypsie* envied him that was the gainer, and wrangled with him, and every one said the *remaining shilling belonged to him*: and so they fell to so high a contest about it, as none that knows the faithfulness of one *Gypsie* to another, will easily believe; only we that have lived these last twenty years, are certain that money has been able to do much mischief. However the *Gypsies* were too wise to go to Law, and did therefore chuse their choice friends *Rook* and *Shark*, and our late English *Guzman* to be their Arbitrators and Umpires;

Umpires; and so they left this *Hony-suckle-bedg*, and went to *tell fortunes*, and *cheat*, and get more money and lodging in the next Village.

When these were gone we heard as high a contention amongst the *beggars*, *Whether it was easiest to rip a Cloak, or to unrip a Cloak?* One *beggar* affirmed it was all one. But that was denied by asking her, *If doing and undoing were all one?* then another said, *'Twas easiest to unrip a Cloak*, for that was to let it alone. But she was answered, by asking her, how she unript it, if she let it alone? And she confest her self mistaken. These and twenty such like questions were proposed, and answered with as much beggarly Logick and earnestness, as was ever heard to proceed from the mouth of the most pertinacious Schismatick; and sometimes all the Beggars (whose number was neither more nor less than the Poets nine Muses) talk'd all together about this ripping and unripping, and so loud that not one heard what the other said; but at last one beggar crav'd audience, and told them, that old Father *Clause*, whom *Ben Johnson* in his Beggars-bush created King of their Corporation, was that night to lodg at an Ale-house (called *Catch-her-by-the-way*) not far from *Waltham-Cross*, and in the high-road towards *London*; and he therefore desired them to spend no more time about that and such like questions, but refer all to Father

Clauſe at night, for he was an upright Judge, and in the mean time draw cuts what Song ſhould be next ſung, and who ſhould ſing it; They all agreed to the motion, and the lot fell to her that was the youngeſt, and verieſt Virgin of the Company, and ſhe ſung *Frank Daviſons* Song, which he made forty years ago, and all the others of the company joyned to ſing the burthen with her: the Ditty was this, but firſt the burthen.

Bright ſhines the Sun, play beggars, play,
Here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

What noiſe of viols is ſo ſweet
As when our merry clappers ring?
What mirth doth want when beggars meet?
A beggars life is for a King:
Eat, drink and play, ſleep when we liſt,
Go where we will ſo ſtocks be miſt.
Bright ſhines the Sun, play beggars play,
Here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

The world is ours and ours alone,
For we alone have world at will;
We purchaſe not, all is our own,
Both fields and ſtreets we beggars fill:
Play beggars play, play beggers play,
Here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

A hundred herds of black and white
Upon our Gowns ſecurely feed
And yet if any dare us bite,
He dies therefore as ſure as Creed:
Thus beggars Lord it as they pleaſe,
And only beggars live at eaſe:
Bright ſhines the ſun, play beggars play,
Here's ſcraps enough to ſerve to day.

Venat. I thank you good Maſter, for this piece of merriment, and this Song, which was well humoured by the Maker, and well remembred by you.

Piſc. But I pray forget not the Catch which you promiſed to make againſt night, for our Country-man, honeſt *Coridon*, will expect your Catch and my Song, which I muſt be forced to patch up, for it is ſo long ſince I learnt it, that I have forgot a part of it. But come, now it hath done raining, let's ſtretch our legs a little in a gentle walk to the River, and try what intereſt our Angles will pay us for lending them ſo long to be uſed by the *Trouts*, lent them indeed, like Uſurers, for our profit and their deſtruction.

Venat. Oh me, look you Maſter, a fiſh a fiſh, oh las Maſter, I have loſt her!

Piſc. I marry Sir, that was a good fiſh indeed: if I had had the luck to have taken up that Rod, then 'tis twenty to one, he ſhould not

not have broke my line by running to the rods end as you ſuffered him: I vvould have held him vvithin the bent of my Rod (unleſs he had been ſellow to the great *Trout* that is near an ell long, which was of ſuch a length and depth, that he had his picture drawn, and now is to be ſeen at mine Hoſt *Rickabies* at the *George* in *Ware*,) and it may be, by giving that very great *Trout* the Rod, that is, by caſting it to him into the water, I might have caught him at the long run, for ſo I uſe alwayes to do when I meet with an overgrown fiſh, and you will learn to do ſo too hereafter: for I tell you, Scholar, fiſhing is an Art, or at leaſt, it is an Art to catch fiſh.

Venat. But Maſter, I have heard that the great *Trout* you ſpeak of is a *Salmon*.

Piſc. Truſt me Scholar, I know not what to ſay to it. There are many Country people that believe *Hares* change Sexes every year: And there be very many learned men think ſo too, for in their diſſecting them they find many reaſons to incline them to that belief. And to make the wonder ſeem yet leſs that Hares change Sexes, note that Doctor *Mer. Caſaubon* affirms in his book of credible and incredible things, that *Gaſper Peuſeus* a learned Phyſician, tells us of a people that once a year turn wolves, partly in ſhape, and partly in conditions. And ſo whether this were a *Salmon* when he came into the freſh water, and his not returning into the Sea

Sea hath altered him to another colour or kind, I am not able to say; but I am certain he hath all the signs of being a *Trout* both for his *shape*, *colour*, and *spots*, and yet many think he is not.

Venat. But Master, will this *Trout* which I had hold of die? for it is like he hath the hook in his belly.

Pisc. I will tell you, Scholar, that unless the hook be fast in his very Gorge, tis more than probable he will live, and a little time with the help of the water, will rust the hook, and it will in time wear away: as the gravel doth in the horse hoof, which only leaves a false quarter.

And now Scholar, lets go to my Rod. Look you Scholar, I have a fish too, but it proves a logger-headed *Chub*, and this is not much amiss, for this will pleasure some poor body, as we go to our lodging to meet our Brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon*. Come, now bait your hook again, and lay it into the water, for it rains again; and we will ev'n retire to the *Sycamore tree*, and there I will give you more directions concerning Fishing: For I would fain make you an Artist.

Venat. Yes, good Master, I pray let it be so.

Pisc. Well Scholar, now we are sate down and are at ease, I shall tell you a little more of *Trout* fishing, before I speak of the *Salmon* (which I purpose shall be next,) and then of the *Pike* or *Luce*. You are to know, there is night as well as

as day-fiſhing for a *Trout*, and that in the night the beſt *Trouts* come out of their holes: and the manner of taking them, is on the top of the water with a great *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, or rather two, which you are to fiſh with in a place where the waters run ſomewhat quietly (for in a ſtream the bait will not be ſo well diſcerned.) I ſay in a *quiet* or dead place near to ſome ſwift, there draw your bait over the top of the water to and fro, and if there be a good *Trout* in the hole, he will take it, eſpecially if the night be dark: for then he is bold and lies near the top of the water, watching the motion of any *Frog* or *Water-Rat* or *Mouſe* that ſwims betwixt him and the skie; theſe he hunts after, if he ſees the water but wrinkle, or move in one of theſe dead holes, where theſe great old *Trouts* uſually lie near to their holds; for you are to note, that the great old *Trout* is both ſubtil and fearful, and lies cloſe all day, and does not uſually ſtir out of his hold, but lies in it as cloſe in the day, as the *timorous Hare* does in her form: for the chief feeding of either is ſeldom in the day, but uſually in the night, and then the great *Trout* feeds very boldly.

And you muſt fiſh for him with a ſtrong Line, and not a little hook, and let him have time to gorge your hook, for he does not uſually forſake it, as he oft will in the day-fiſhing: and if the night be not dark, then Fiſh ſo with an *Artificial*

cial flie of a light-colour, and at the ſnap: nay, he will ſometimes riſe at a dead Mouſe, or a piece of cloth, or any thing, that ſeems to ſwim croſs the water, or to be in motion: this is a choice way, but I have not oft uſed it, becauſe it is void of the pleaſures, that ſuch dayes as theſe, that we two now enjoy, afford an Angler.

And you are to know, that in *Hampſhire*, which I think exceeds all *England* for ſwift ſhallow, clear, pleaſant Brooks, and ſtore of *Trouts*, they uſe to catch *Trouts* in the night, by the light of a Torch or ſtraw, which when they have diſcovered, they ſtrike with a *Trout-ſpear* or other wayes. This kind of way they catch very many, but I would not believe it till I was an eye-witneſs of it, nor do I like it now I have ſeen it.

Venat. But Maſter, do not *Trouts* ſee us in the night?

Piſc. Yes, and hear, and ſmell too, both then and in the day time, for *Geſner* obſerves, the *Otter* ſmells a Fiſh forty furlongs off him in the water: and that it may be true, ſeems to be affirmed by Sir *Francis Bacon* (in the eighth Century of his Natural Hiſtory) who there proves, that waters may be the *Medium* of ſounds, by demonſtrating it thus, *That if you knock two ſtones together very deep under the water, thoſe that ſtand on a bank near to that place may hear the noiſe without any diminution of it by the water.*

He

He alſo offers the like experiment concerning the letting an *Anchor* fall by a very long cable or rope on a rock, or the ſand within the Sea: and this being ſo well obſerved and demonſtrated, as it is by that learned man, has made me to believe that *Eeles* unbed themſelves, and ſtir at the noiſe of Thunder, and not only, as ſome think, by the motion or ſtirring of the earth which is occaſioned by that Thunder.

And this reaſon of Sir *Francis Bacon* (*Exper.* 792.) has made me crave pardon of one that I laught at for affirming, that he knew *Carps* come to a certain place in a Pond, to be fed at the ringing of a Bell, or the beating of a Drum: and however, it ſhall be a rule for me to make as little noiſe as I can when I am fiſhing, untill Sir *Francis Bacon* be confuted, which I ſhall give any man leave to do.

And, leſt you may think him ſingular in this opinion, I will tell you, this ſeems to be believed by our learned Doctor *Hackwell*, who (in his *Apology of Gods Power and Providence*, f. 360) quotes *Pliny* to report, that one of the Emperors had particular Fiſh-ponds, and in them ſeveral Fiſh, that appeared and came when they were called by their particular names: and St. *James* tells us (*chap.* 1. *and* 7.) that all things in the Sea have been tamed by Mankind. And *Pliny* tells us (*lib.* 9. 35.) that *Antonia* the Wife of *Druſus* had a *Lamprey*, at whoſe gils ſhe hung Jewels or Ear-

Ear-rings; and that others have been ſo tender-hearted, as to ſhed tears at the death of Fiſhes, which they have kept and loved. And theſe Obſervations, which will to moſt hearers ſeem wonderful, ſeem to have a further confirmation from *Martial* (*lib.* 4. *epigr.* 30.) who writes thus;

Piſcator fuge ne nocens, &c.

Angler, *would'ſt thou be guiltleſs? then forbear,*
For theſe are ſacred fiſhes *that ſwim here;*
Who know their Sovereign, and will lick his hand;
Than which none's greater in the worlds command:
Nay more, th' have names, & when they called are,
Do to their ſeveral Owners Call repair.

All the further uſe that I ſhall make of this, ſhall be, to adviſe Anglers to be patient, and *forbear ſwearing, leſt they be heard and catch no Fiſh.*

And ſo I ſhall proceed next to tell you, it is certain, that certain fields near *Lemſter*, a Town in *Hereford-ſhire*, are obſerved to make the ſheep that graze upon them more fat than the next, and alſo to bear finer wool; that is to ſay, that, that year in which they feed in ſuch a particular paſture, they ſhall yield finer wool than they did that year before they came to feed in it, and courſer again if they ſhall return to

to their former paſture; and again return to a finer wool being fed in the fine-wool-ground. Which I tell you, that you may the better believe that I am certain, if I catch a *Trout* in one Meadow, he ſhall be *white* and *faint*, and very like to be *lowſie*; and as certainly, if I catch a *Trout* in the next Meadow, he ſhall be *ſtrong*, and *red*, and *luſty*, and much better meat: Truſt me, Scholar, I have caught many a *Trout* in a particular Meadow, that the very ſhape and the enamell'd colour of him hath been ſuch, as hath joyed me to look on him; and I have then with much pleaſure concluded with *Solomon*, *Every thing is beautiful in his ſeaſon.*

I ſhould by promiſe ſpeak next of the *Salmon*, but I will by your favour ſay a little of the *Umber* or *Grayling*; which is ſo like a *Trout* for his ſhape and feeding, that I deſire I may exerciſe your patience with a ſhort diſcourſe of him, and then the next ſhall be of the *Salmon.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Observations of the Umber *or* Grayling; *and directions how to fish for them.*

PISC. The *Umber* and *Grayling* are thought by some to differ as the *Herring* and *Pilcher* do. But though they may do so in other Nations, I think those in *England* differ nothing but in their names. *Aldrovandus* says, they be of a Trout kind: and *Gesner* says, that in his Country (which is *Swisserland*) he is accounted the choicest of all Fish. And in *Italy*, he is in the month of *May* so highly valued, that he is sold then at a much higher rate than any other Fish. The *French* (which call the *Chub Un Villain*) call the *Umber* of the Lake *Leman*, *Un Umble Chevalier*; and they value the *Umber* or Grayling so highly, that they say he feeds on Gold, and say that many have been caught out of their famous River of *Loyre*, out of whose bellies grains of Gold have been often taken. And some think that he feeds on *Water-time*, and smells of it at his first taking out of the water; and they may think so with as good reason as we do, that our Smelts smell like Violets at their being first caught; which I think is a

truth. *Aldrovandus* says, the *Salmon*, the *Grayling*, and *Trout*, and all Fish that live in clear and sharp streams, are made by their mother *Nature* of such exact shape and pleasant colours, purposely to invite us to a joy and contentedness in feasting with her. Whether this is a truth or not, is not my purpose to dispute; but 'tis certain, all that write of the *Umber* declare him to be very medicinable. And *Gesner* says, that the fat of an *Umber* or *Grayling* being set with a little Hony a day or two in the Sun in a little glass, is very excellent against redness, or swarthiness, or any thing that breeds in the eyes. *Salvian* takes him to be called *Umber* from his swift swimming or gliding out of sight, more like a shadow or a Ghost than a fish. Much more might be said both of his smell and taste, but I shall only tell you, that St. *Ambrose* the glorious Bishop of *Millan* (who liv'd when the Church kept Fasting-days) calls him the *flower-fish*, or flower of Fishes, and that he was so far in love with him, that he would not let him pass without the honour of a long Discourse; but I must; and pass on to tell you how to take this dainty fish.

First, Note, That he grows not to the bigness of a Trout; for the biggest of them do not usually exceed eighteen inches, he lives in such Rivers as the Trout does, and is usually taken with the same baits as the Trout is, and after the

the ſame manner, for he will bite both at the *Minnow*, or *Worm*, or *Fly*, (though he bites not often at the Minnow) and is very gameſom at the *Fly*, and much ſimpler, and therefore bolder than a *Trout*, for he will riſe twenty times at a fly, if you miſs him, and yet riſe again. He has been taken with a fly made of the red feathers of a *Parakita*, a ſtrange outlandiſh bird, and he will riſe at a fly not unlike a gnat or a ſmall moth, or indeed, at moſt flies that are not too big. He is a Fiſh that lurks cloſe all winter, but is very pleaſant and jolly after mid-*April*, and in *May*, and in the hot months: he is of a very fine ſhape, his fleſh is white, his teeth, thoſe little ones that he has, are in his throat, yet he has ſo tender a mouth, that he is oftner loſt after an Angler has hooked him, than any other Fiſh. Though there be many of theſe Fiſhes in the delicate River *Dove*, and in *Trent*, and ſome other ſmaller Rivers, as that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not ſo general a Fiſh as the *Trout*, nor to me ſo good to eat or to angle for. And ſo I ſhall take my leave of him, and now come to ſome Obſervations of the *Salmon*, and how to catch him.

CHAP. VII.

Observations of the Salmon, *with direction how to fish for him.*

PISC. The *Salmon* is accounted the King of fresh-water-fish, and is ever bred in Rivers relating to the Sea, yet so high or far from it as admits of no tincture of salt, or brackishness; He is said to breed or cast his spawn in most Rivers in the month of *August*: some say, that then they dig a hole or grave in a safe place in the gravel, and there place their eggs or spawn (after the Melter has done his natural Office) and then hide it most cunningly, and cover it over with gravel and stones; and then leave it to their Creators protection; who by a gentle heat which he infuses into that cold element makes it brood and beget life in the spawn, and to become *Samlets* early in the spring next following.

The *Salmons* having spent their appointed time, and done this Natural Duty in the fresh waters; they then haste to the Sea before Winter; both the Melter and Spawner: but, if they be stopt by *Flood-gates* or *Weires*, or lost in the fresh waters; then, those so left behind, by degrees grow *sick*, and *lean*, and *unseasonable*, and *kipper*; that

that is to say, have bony gristles grow out of their lower chaps (not unlike a Hawks beak) which hinders their feeding, and in time such Fish so left behind, pine away and dye. 'Tis observed, that he may live thus one year from the Sea; but he then grows insipid, and tasteless, and loses both his blood and strength, and pines and dies the second year. And 'tis noted, that those little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers relating to the *Sea*, are bred by such sick *Salmons*, that might not go to the Sea, and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any considerable bigness.

But if the old *Salmon* gets to the Sea, then that gristle which shews him to be *kipper* wears away, or is cast off (as the *Eagle* is said to cast his bill) and he recovers his strength, and comes next Summer to the same River (if it be possible) to enjoy the former pleasures that there possest him; for (as one has wittily observed) he has (like some persons of Honour and Riches, which have both their Winter and Summer houses) the fresh Rivers for Summer, and the salt water for Winter to spend his life in; which is not (as Sir *Francis Bacon* hath observed in his *History of Life and Death*) above ten years: And it is to be observed, that though the *Salmon* does grow big in the Sea, yet he grows not fat but in fresh Rivers; and it is observed, that the farther

they get from the Sea, they be both the fatter and better.

Next, I ſhall tell you, that though they make very hard ſhift to get out of the freſh Rivers into the Sea: yet they will make harder ſhift to get out of the ſalt into the freſh Rivers, to ſpawn, or poſſeſs the pleaſures that they have formerly found in them: to which end, they will force themſelves through *Floodgates*, or over *Weires*, or *hedges*, or *ſtops* in the water, even to a height beyond common belief. *Geſner* ſpeaks of ſuch places, as are known to be above eight foot high above water. And our *Cambden* mentions (in his *Britannia*) the like wonder to be in *Pembroke-ſhire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the Sea, and that the fall is ſo down-right, and ſo high, that the people ſtand and wonder at the ſtrength and flight by which they ſee the *Salmon* uſe to get out of the Sea into the ſaid River; and the manner and height of the place is ſo notable, that it is known far by the name of the *Salmon-leap*; concerning which, take this alſo out of *Michael Draiton*, my honeſt old friend. As he tells it you in his *Polyalbion*.

And when the Salmon *ſeeks a freſher ſtream to find,*
(which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his kind)
As he towards ſeaſon grows, & ſtems the watry traſt
Where Tivy *falling down, makes an high cataract,*
Forc'd

Forc'd by the rising rocks that there her course oppose
As tho within her bounds they meant her to inclose;
Here, when the labouring fish does at the foot arive,
(strive,
And finds that by his strength he does but vainly
His tail takes in his mouth, & bending like a bow
(throw,
That's to full compass drawn, aloft himself doth
Then springing at his height, as doth a little wand,
That bended end to end, & started from mans hand,
Far off it self doth cast; so, does the Salmon *vault,*
And if at first he fail, his second Summer-salt,
He instantly essaies, and from his nimble ring,
Still yerking, never leaves untill himself he fling
Above the opposing stream.——

This *Michael Drayton* tells you of this leap or *Summer-salt* of the *Salmon*.

And next I shall tell you, that it is observed by *Gesner* and others, that there is no better *Salmon* than in *England*: and that though some of our Northern Countries have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of so excellent a taste.

And as I have told you that Sir *Francis Bacon* observes, the age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten years, so let me next tell you, that his growth is very sudden: it is said, that after he is got into the Sea, he becomes from a *Samlet*, not so big as a Gudgion, to be a *Salmon*, in as short a

time as a Gosling becomes to be a Goose. Much of this has been observed by tying a *Ribband* or some known *tape* or *thred*, in the tail of some young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weirs as they have swimm'd toward the salt water, and then by taking a part of them again with the known mark at the same place at their return from the Sea, which is usually about six months after; and the like experiment hath been tryed upon young *Swallows*, who have after six months absence, been observed to return to the same chimney, there to make their nests and habitations for the Summer following: which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* usually returns to the same River in which it was bred, as young *Pigeons* taken out of the same *Dove-cote*, have also been observed to do.

And you are yet to observe further, that the Hee *Salmon* is usually bigger than the Spawner, and that he is more kipper, and less able to endure a winter in the fresh water, than the She is, yet she is at that time of looking less kipper and better, as watry, and as bad meat.

And yet you are to observe, that as there is no general rule without an exception, so there are some few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmons* in season in winter, as 'tis certain there be in the River *Wy* in *Monmouth-shire*, where they be in season (as *Cambden* observes)

ſerves) from *September* till *April*. But, my Scholar, the obſervation of this and many other things, I muſt in manners omit, becauſe they will prove to large for our narrow compaſs of time, and therefore I ſhall next fall upon my direction *how to fiſh for this Salmon.*

And for that firſt, you ſhall obſerve, that uſually he ſtaies not long in a place (as *Trouts* will) but (as I ſaid) covets ſtill to go nearer the Spring head; and that he does not (as the *Trout* and many other fiſh) lie near the water ſide or bank or roots of trees, but ſwims in the deep and broad parts of the water, and uſually in the middle, and near the ground; and that there you are to fiſh for him, and that it is to be caught as the *Trout* is, with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, (which ſome call a *Penk*) or with a *Flie*.

And you are to obſerve, that he is very ſeldom obſerved to bite at a *Minnow*, (yet ſometimes he will) and not uſually at a *flie*, but more uſually at a *Worm*, and then moſt uſually at a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, which ſhould be well ſcoured that is to ſay, kept ſeven or eight daies in Moſs before you fiſh with them: and if you double your time of eight into ſixteen twenty or more daies, it is ſtill the better, for the worms will ſtill be clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue ſo longer upon your hook, and they may be kept longer by keeping them cool and in freſh Moſs, and ſome adviſe to put Camphire into it.

Note

Note also, that many use to fish for a *Salmon* with a ring of wire on the top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a length as is needful when he is hook'd. And to that end, some use a wheel about the middle of their Rod, or near their hand, which is to be observed better by seeing one of them, than by a large demonstration of words.

And now I shall tell you, that which may be called a secret: I have been a fishing with old *Oliver Henly*, (now with God) a noted Fisher, both for *Trout* and *Salmon*, and have observed, that he would usually take three or four worms out of his bag, and put them into a little box in his pocket, where he would usually let them continue half an hour or more, before he would bait his hook with them; I have asked him his reason, and he has replyed, *He did but pick the best out to be in readiness against he baited his hook the next time*: But he has been observed both by others, and my self, to catch more fish than I or any other body, that has ever gone a fishing with him could do; and especially *Salmons*; and I have been told lately by one of his most intimate and secret friends, that the box in which he put those worms, was anointed with a drop, or two or three, of the Oyl of *Ivy berries*, made by expression or infusion; and told that by the worms remaining in that box an hour, or a like time, they had incorporated a kind of smell that

that was irresistibly attractive, enough to force any Fish within the smell of them, to bite. This I heard not long since from a friend, but have not tryed it; yet I grant it probable, and refer my Reader to Sir *Francis Bacons* Natural History, where he proves fishes may hear and doubtless can more probably smell: and I am certain *Gesner* says, the *Otter* can smell in the water, and I know not but that Fish may do so too: 'tis left for a lover of Angling, or any that desires to improve that Art, to try this conclusion.

I shall also impart two other Experiments (but not tryed by myself) which I will deliver in the same words that they were given me by an excellent Angler and a very friend, in writing; he told me the latter was too good to be told, but in a learned language, lest it should be made common.

Take the stinking oil, drawn out of Polypody *of the Oak by a retort, mixt with* Turpentine, *and* Hive-honey, *and anoint your bait therewith, and it will doubtless draw the fish to it.*

The other is this: *Vulnera hederæ grandissimæ inflicta sudant Balsamum oleo gelato, albicanti que persimile, odoris vero longe suavissimi.*

'Tis supremely sweet to any fish, and yet *Asa fœtida* may do the like.

But in these things I have no great faith, yet grant it probable, and have had from some chymical men (namely, from Sir *George Hastings* and

and others) an affirmation of them to be very advantageous: but no more of these, especially not in this place.

I might here, before I take my leave of the *Salmon*, tell you, that there is more than one sort of them, as namely, a *Tecon*, and another called in some places a *Samlet*, or by some, a *Skegger*: but these (and others which I forbear to name) may be Fish of another kind, (and differ, as we know a *Herring* and a *Pilcher* do,) which I think are as different, as the Rivers in which they breed, and must by me be left to the disquisitions of men of more leisure, and of greater abilities, than I profess my self to have.

And lastly, I am to borrow so much of your promised patience, as to tell you that the *Trout* or *Salmon* being in season, have at their first taking out of the water (which continues during life) their bodies adorned, the one with such red spots, and the other with such black or blackish spots, as give them such an addition of natural beauty, as I think, was never given to any woman by the Artificial Paint or Patches in which they so much pride themselves in this Age. And so I shall leave them both and proceed to some Observations of the *Pike*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Observations of the Luce *or* Pike, *with directions how to fish for him.*

Pisc. The mighty *Luce* or *Pike* is taken to be the Tyrant (as the *Salmon* is the King) of the fresh waters, 'Tis not to be doubted, but that they are bred, some by generation, and some not: as namely, of a Weed called *Pickerel-weed*, unless learned *Gesner* be much mistaken, for he says, this weed and other glutinous matter, with the help of the Suns heat in some particular Months, and some Ponds apted for it by nature, do become *Pikes*. But doubtless divers *Pikes* are bred after this manner, or are brought into some Ponds some such other wayes as is past mans finding out, of which we have daily testimonies.

Sir *Francis Bacon* in his History of Life and Death, observes the *Pike* to be the longest lived of any fresh-water-fish, and yet he computes it to be not usually above forty years; and others think it to be not above ten years; and yet *Gesner* mentions a *Pike* taken in *Swedeland* in the Year 1449. with a Ring about his neck, declaring he was put into that Pond by *Frederick* the second, more than two hundred years before

fore he was laſt taken, as by the Inſcription in that Ring (being Greek) was interpreted by the then Biſhop of *Worms*. But of this no more, but that it is obſerved, that the old or very great Pikes have in them more of ſtate than goodneſs; the ſmaller or middle ſized Pikes being by the moſt and choiceſt Palates obſerved to be the beſt meat; and contrary, the Eel is obſerved to be the better for age and bigneſs.

All Pikes that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, becauſe their life is maintained by the death of ſo many other Fiſh, even thoſe of their own kind, which has made him by ſome Writers to be called the *Tyrant* of the Rivers, or the *Freſh-water-wolf*, by reaſon of his bold, greedy devouring diſpoſition; which is ſo keen, as *Geſner* relates, a man going to a Pond (where it ſeems a *Pike* had devoured all the fiſh) to water his Mule, had a *Pike* bit his Mule by the lips; to which the *Pike* hung ſo faſt, that the Mule drew him out of the water, and by that accident the owner of the Mule angled out the *Pike*. And the ſame *Geſner* obſerves, that a Maid in *Poland* had a *Pike* bit her by the foot as ſhe was waſhing clothes in a Pond. And I have heard the like of a woman in *Killingworth* Pond not far from *Coventry*. But I have been aſſured by my friend Mr. *Seagrave*, (of whome I ſpake to you formerly,) that keeps tame *Otters*, that he hath known a *Pike* in extream hunger fight with

with one of his Otters for a Carp that the Otter had caught and was then bringing out of the water. I have told you who relates these things, and tell you they are persons of credit, and shall conclude this observation, by telling you what a wise man has observed, *It is a hard thing to perswade the belly, because it has no ears.*

But if these relations be disbelieved, it is too evident to be doubted, that a *Pike* will devour a Fish of his own kind, that shall be bigger than his belly or throat will receive, and swallow a part of him, and let the other part remain in his mouth till the swallowed part be digested, and then swallow that other part that was in his mouth, and so put it over by degrees; which is not unlike the Ox and some other beasts, taking their meat not out of their mouth immediately into their belly, but first into some place betwixt, and then chaw it, or digest it by degrees after, which is called *Chewing the Cud.* And doubtless *Pikes* will bite when they are not hungry, but as some think even for very anger, when a tempting bait comes near to them.

And it is observed, that the *Pike* will eat venemous things (as some kind of *Frogs* are) and yet live without being harmed by them: for, as some say, he has in him a natural Balsom or Antidote against all poison: and he has a strange

ſtrange heat, that though it appear to us to be cold, can yet digeſt or put over, any Fiſh-fleſh by degrees without being ſick. And others obſerve, that he never eats the venemous *Frog*, till he have firſt killed her, and then (as *Ducks* are obſerved to do to *Frogs* in ſpawning time (at which time ſome *Frogs* are obſerved to be venemous) ſo throughly waſht her, by tumbling her up and down in the water, that he may devour her without danger. And *Geſner* affirms, that a *Polonian* Gentleman, did faithfully aſſure him, he had ſeen two young Geeſe at one time in the belly of a *Pike*. And doubtleſs a *Pike* in his height of hunger will bite at and devour a dog that ſwims in a Pond, and there have been examples of it, or the like; for as I told you, *The belly has no ears when hunger comes upon it.*

The *Pike* is alſo obſerved to be a ſolitary, melancholy and a bold Fiſh: Melancholy, becauſe he always ſwims or reſts himſelf alone, and never ſwims in ſholes or with company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and moſt other Fiſh do: And bold, becauſe he fears not a ſhadow, or to ſee or be ſeen of any body, as the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Fiſh do.

And it is obſerved by *Geſner*, that the Jaw-bones, and Hearts, and Galls of *Pikes* are very medicinable for ſeveral diſeaſes, or to ſtop blood,

blood, to abate Fevers, to cure Agues, to oppose or expel the infection of the Plague, and to be many ways medicinable and useful for the good of Mankind; but he observes, that the biting of a *Pike* is venemous and hard to be cured.

And it is observed, that the *Pike* is a fish that breeds but once a year, and that other fish (as namely *Loaches*) do breed oftner: as we are certain tame Pigeons do almost every month, and yet the *Hawk* (a Bird of Prey, as the *Pike* is of Fish) breeds but once in twelve months: and you are to note, that his time of breeding or spawning is usually about the end of *February*, or somewhat later, in *March*, as the weather proves colder or warmer) and to note, th t his manner of breeding is thus, a He and a She *Pike* will usually go together out of a River into some ditch or creek, and that there the Spawner casts her eggs, and the Melter hovers over her all that time that she is casting her spawn, but touches her not.

I might say more of this, but it might be thought curiosity or worse, and shall therefore forbear it, and take up so much of your attention, as to tell you, that the best of *Pikes* are noted to be in *Rivers*, next those in great *Ponds*, or *Meres*, and the worst in small Ponds.

But before I proceed further, I am to tell you that there is a great antipathy betwixt the *Pike* and some *Frogs*; and this may appear to the Reader of *Dubravius* (a Bishop in *Bohemia*) who in his Book of Fish and Fish-ponds, relates what, he says, he saw with his own eyes, and could not forbear to tell the Reader. Which was:

As he and the Bishop Thurzo *were walking by a large Pond in* Bohemia, *they saw a Frog, when the Pike lay very sleepily and quiet by the shore side, leap upon his head, and the Frog having expreſt malice or anger by his swoln cheeks and staring eyes, did stretch out his legs and embraced the* Pikes *head, and presently reached them to his eyes, tearing with them and his teeth those tender parts; the* Pike *moved with anguish, moves up and down the water, and rubs himself against weeds, and whatever he thought might quit him of his enemy; but all in vain, for the frog did continue to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the* Pike, *till his strength failed, and then the frog sunk with the* Pike *to the bottom of the water; then presently the frog appeared again at the top and croaked, and seemed to rejoice like a Conqueror, after which he presently retired to his secret hole. The Bishop, that had beheld the battel, called his fisherman to fetch his nets, and by all means to get the* Pike, *that they might declare what had hapned: and the* Pike *was drawn*

drawn forth, and both his eyes eaten out, at which when they began to wonder, the Fisherman wished them to forbear, and assured them he was certain that Pikes *were often so served.*

I told this which is to be read in the sixth Chapter of the Book of *Dubravius*) unto a friend, who replied, *It was as improbable as to have the mouse scratch out the cats eyes.* But he did not consider, that there be fishing Frogs (which the *Dalmatians* call the Water-Devil) of which I might tell you as wonderful a story, but I shall tell you, that 'tis not to be doubted, but that there be some Frogs so fearful of the Water-snake, that, when they swim in a place in which they fear to meet with him, they then get a reed across into their mouths, which if they two meet by accident, secures the frog from the strength and malice of the *Snake*, and note, that the frog usually swims the fastest of the two.

And let me tell you, that as there be *Water* and *Land-frogs*, so there be *Land* and *Water-Snakes*. Concerning which take this observation, that the Land-snake breeds, and hatches her eggs, which become young Snakes, in some old dunghill, or alike hot place; but the Water-snake, which is not venemous (and as I have been assured by a great observer of such secrets) does not hatch but breed her young alive, which she does not then forsake, but bides with them,

and in case of danger will take them all into her mouth and swim away from any apprehended danger, and then let them out again when she thinks all danger to be past; These be accidents that we Anglers sometimes see and often talk of.

But whither am I going? I had almost lost my self by remembring the Discourse of *Dubravius*. I will therefore stop here, and tell you according to my promise how to catch this *Pike*.

His feeding is usually of *fish* or *frogs*, and sometimes a weed of his own called *Pickrell-weed*. Of which I told you some think some *Pikes* are bred; for they have observed, that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have there found many: and that there has been plenty of that weed in those Ponds, and that that weed both breeds and feeds them; but whe-

whether those *Pikes* so bred will ever breed by generation as the others do, I shall leave to the disquisitions of men of more curiosity and leasure than I profess my self to have; and shall proceed to tell you that you may fish for a *Pike*, either with a *ledger* or a *walking-bait*; and you are to note, that I call that a Ledger bait, which is fixed, or made to rest in one certain place when you shall be absent from it: and I call that a walking bait, which you take with you, and have ever in motion. Concerning which two, I shall give you this direction; That your ledger bait is best to be a living bait, though a dead one may catch, whether it be a fish or a frog; and that you may make them live the longer, you may or indeed you must take this course.

First, for your live bait of fish, a *Roach* or *Dace* is (I think) best and most tempting, and a *Pearch* is the longest lived on a hook, and having cut off his fin on his back, which may be done without hurting him, you must take your knife (which cannot be too sharp) and betwixt the head and the fin on the back, cut or make an incision, or such a scar, as you may put the arming wire of your hook into it, with as little bruising or hurting the fish as art and diligence will enable you to do; and so carrying your arming wire along his back, unto, or near the tail of your Fish, betwixt the skin and the bo-

dy of it, draw out that wire or arming of your hook at another ſcar near to his tail: then ty him about it with thred, but no harder than of neceſſity to prevent hurting the fiſh; and the better to avoid hurting the fiſh, ſome have a kind of probe to open the way, for the more eaſie entrance and paſſage of your wire or arming: but as for theſe, time, and a little experience will teach you better than I can by words; therefore I will for the preſent ſay no more of this, but come next to give you ſome directions, how to bait your hook with a frog.

Ven. But, good Maſter, did you not ſay even now, that ſome *Frogs* were venemous, and is it not dangerous to touch them?

Piſc. Yes, but I will give you ſome Rules or Cautions concerning them: And firſt, you are to note, that there are two kinds of *Frogs*; that is to ſay (if I may ſo expreſs my ſelf) a *fleſh*, and a *fiſh-frog*: by *fleſh-frogs*, I mean *frogs* that breed and live on the land; and of theſe there be ſeveral ſorts alſo and of ſeveral colours, ſome being peckled, ſome greeniſh, ſome blackiſh, or brown: the green *Frog*, which is a ſmall one, is by *Topſel* taken to be venemous; and ſo is the *padock* or *Frog-padock*, which uſually keeps or breeds on the land, and is very large and bony, and big, eſpecially the She frog of that kind; yet theſe will ſometimes come into the water, but it is not often; and the land frogs are

ſome

ſome of them obſerved by him, to breed by laying eggs: and others to breed of the ſlime and duſt of the earth, and that in winter they turn to ſlime again, and that the next Summer that very ſlime returns to be a living creature; this is the opinion of *Pliny*: and *Cardanus* undertakes to give a reaſon for the raining of Frogs: but if it were in my power, it ſhould rain none but water-Frogs, for thoſe, I think are not venemous, eſpecially the right water-Frog, which about *February* or *March* breeds in ditches by ſlime, and blackiſh eggs in that ſlime: about which time of breeding the He and She Frogs are obſerved to uſe divers *Simber-ſaltt* and to croak and make a noiſe, which the land-frog, or Padock frog never does. Now of theſe water-frogs, if you intend to fiſh with a frog for a Pike, you are to chuſe the yelloweſt that you can get, for that the Pike ever likes beſt. And thus uſe your frog, that he may continue long alive.

* In his 19. Book, *De ſubtil. ex.*

Put your hook into his mouth, which you may eaſily do from the middle of *April* till *Auguſt*, and then the frogs mouth grows up, and he continues ſo for at leaſt ſix moneths without eating, but is ſuſtained, none but he whoſe name is Wonderful, knows how; I ſay, put your hook, I mean the arming wire through his mouth,

and out at his gills, and then with a fine needle and silk sow the upper part of his leg with only one stitch to the arming wire of your hook, or tie the frogs leg above the upper joynt to the armed wire, and in so doing, use him as though you loved him, that is, harm him as little as you may possibly, that he may live the longer.

And now, having given you this direction for the baiting your ledger hook with a live Fish or frog, my next must be to tell you, how your hook thus baited must or may be used: and it is thus. Having fastened your hook to a line, which if it be not fourteen yards long, should not be less than twelve; you are to fasten that line to any bough near to a hole where a Pike is, or is likely to lie, or to have a haunt, and then wind your line on any forked stick, all your line except half a yard of it or rather more, and split that forked stick with such a nick or notch at one end of it, as may keep the line from any more of it ravelling from about the stick, than so much of it as you intend; and chuse your forked stick to be of that bigness as may keep the Fish or frog from pulling the forked stick under the water till the Pike bites, and then the Pike having pulled the line forth of the clift or nick of that stick in which it was gently fastened, he will have line enough to go to his hold and pouch the bait; and if you would have

this

this ledger bait to keep at a fixt place, undisturbed by wind or other accidents which may drive it to the shore side, (for you are to note, that it is likelieſt to catch a Pike in the midſt of the water) then hang a ſmall Plummet of lead, a ſtone, or piece of tile, or a turf in a ſtring, and caſt it into the water, with the forked ſtick, to hang upon the ground to be a kind of Anchor to keep the forked ſtick from moving out of your intended place till the Pike come. This I take to be a very good way, to uſe ſo many ledger baits as you intend to make trial of.

Or if you bait your hooks thus with live Fiſh or Frogs, and in a windy day, faſten them thus to a bough or bundle of ſtraw, and by the help of that wind can get them to move croſs a *Pond* or *mere*, you are like to ſtand ſtill on the ſhore and ſee ſport preſently if there be any ſtore of *Pikes*: for theſe live baits may make ſport, being tied about the body or wings of a *Gooſe* or *Duck*, and ſhe chaſed over a *Pond*: and the like may be done with turning three or four live baits thus faſtened to bladders, or boughs, or bottles of hay or flags, to ſwim down a River, whilſt you walk quietly alone on the ſhore, and are ſtill in expectation of ſport. The reſt muſt be taught you by practice, for time will not allow me to ſay more of this kind of fiſhing with live baits.

And for your dead bait for a *Pike*, for that you

you may be taught by one daies going a fiſhing with me, or any other body that fiſhes for him, for the baiting your hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the water, is too eaſie a thing to take up any time to direct you to do it; and yet, becauſe I cut you ſhort in that, I will commute for it, by telling you that that was told me for a ſecret: it is this.

Diſſolve Gum of Ivy *in Oyl of* Spike, *and therewith anoynt your dead bait for a* Pike, *and then caſt it into a likely place, and when it has lain a ſhort time at the bottom, draw it towards the top of the water and ſo up the ſtream, and it is more than likely that you have a* Pike *follow with more than common eagerneſs.*

And ſome affirm, that any bait anointed with the marrow of the Thigh-bone of an *Hern* is a great temptation to any Fiſh.

Theſe have not been tryed by me, but told me by a friend of note, that pretended to do me a courteſie, but if this direction to catch a *Pike* thus, do you no good, yet I am certain this direction how to roaſt him when he is caught, is choicely good, for I have tryed it; and it is ſomewhat the better for not being common, but with my direction you muſt take this Caution, that your *Pike* muſt not be a ſmall one, that is, it muſt be more than half a Yard, and ſhould be bigger.

Firſt open your Pike *at the gills, and if need be,*

but cut also a little slit towards the belly; out of these take his guts, and keep his liver, which you are to shred very small with Time, Sweet-marjoram, *and a little* Winter-savoury; *to these put some pickled* Oysters, *and some* Anchovies, *two or three, both these last whole (for the* Anchovies *will melt, and the* Oysters *should not) to these you must adde also a pound of sweet butter, which you are to mix with the herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted (if the* Pike *be more than a yard long, then you may put into these herbs more than a pound, or if he be less, then less Butter will suffice:) these being thus mixt with a blade or two of* Mace, *must be put into the* Pikes *belly, and then his belly so sowed up, as to keep all the Butter in his belly if it be possible, if not, then as much of it as you possibly can, but take not off the scales; then you are to thrust the spit through his mouth out at his tail, and then take four, or five, or six split sticks, or very thin lathes, and a convenient quantity of Tape or Filleting, these lathes are to be tyed round about the* Pikes *body from his head to his tail, and the Tape tyed somewhat thick to prevent his breaking or falling off from the spit; let him be roasted very leasurely, and often basted with Claret wine, and Anchovyes, and Butter mixt together, and also with what moisture falls from him into the pan: when you have rosted him sufficiently you are to hold under him (when you unwind or cut the Tape that ties him)*

such

ſuch a diſh as you purpoſe to eat him out of; and let him fall into it with the ſawce that is roſted in his belly, and by this means the Pike *will be kept unbroken and compleat: then, to the ſawce which was within, and alſo that ſawce in the pan, you are to add a fit quantity of the beſt Butter, and to ſqueeze the juyce of three or four Oranges: laſtly, you may either put into the* Pike *with the* Oyſters, *two cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out, when the* Pike *is cut off the ſpit, or to give the ſawce a* hogo, *let the diſh (into which you let the* Pike *fall) be rubbed with it: the uſing or not uſing of this Garlick is left to your diſcretion.*

M. B.

This diſh of meat is too good for any but Anglers or very honeſt men; and I truſt, you will prove both, and therefore I have truſted you with this ſecret.

Let me next tell you, that *Geſner* tells us there are no Pikes in *Spain*, and that the largeſt are in the Lake *Thraſimene* in *Italy*; and the next, if not equall to them, are the Pikes of *England*, and that in *England*, *Lincolnſhire* boaſteth to have the biggeſt. Juſt ſo doth *Suſſex* boaſt of four ſorts of fiſh; namely an *Arundel Mullet*, a *Chicheſter Lobſter*, a *Shelſey Cockle*, and an *Amerly Trout*.

But I will take up no more of your time with this relation, but proceed to give you ſome obſervation

ſervations of the *Carp*, and how to angle for him and to dreſs him, but not till he is caught.

CHAP. IX.

Obſervations of the Carp, *with Directions how to fiſh for him.*

Piſc. The *Carp* is the Queen of Riversia ſtately, a good, and a very ſubtil fiſh, that was not at firſt bred. nor hath been long in *England*, but is now naturalized. It is ſaid, they were brought hither by one Mr. *Maſcal* a Gentleman, that then lived at *Plumſted* in *Suſſex*, a County that abounds more with this fiſh than any in this Nation.

You may remember that I told you, *Geſner* ſays, there are no *Pikes* in *Spain*; and doubtleſs, there was a time, about a hundred or a few more years ago, when there were no *Carps* in *England*, as may ſeem to be affirmed by S. *Richard Baker*, in whoſe Chronicle you may find theſe Verſes.

Hops and Turkies, Carps and Beer
Came into England *all in a year.*

And doubtleſs as of Sea-fiſh the *Herring* dies ſooneſt

ſooneſt out of the water, and of freſh-water-fiſh the *Trout*, ſo (except the *Eel*) the *Carp* endures moſt hardneſs, and lives longeſt out of his own proper Element. And therefore the report of the Carps being brought out of a forraigne Country into this Nation is the more probable.

Carps and Loaches are obſerved to Breed ſeveral months in one year, which Pikes and moſt other fiſh do not. And this is partly proved by tame and wild *Rabbets*, as alſo by ſome *Ducks*, which will lay eggs nine of the twelve months, and yet there be other *Ducks* that lay not longer than about one month. And it is the rather to be believed, becauſe you ſhall ſcarce or never take a *Male-Carp* without a *Melt*, or a *Female* without a *Roe* or *ſpawn*, and for the moſt part very much; and eſpecially all the Summer ſeaſon; and it is obſerved, that they breed more naturally in ponds than in running waters, (if they breed there at all;) and that thoſe that live in Rivers are taken by men of the beſt palats to be much the better meat.

And it is obſerved, that in ſome ponds *Carps* will not breed, eſpecially in cold ponds; but where they will breed, they breed innumerably; *Ariſtotle* and *Pliny* ſay, ſix times in a year, if there be no *Pikes* nor *Pearch* to devour their Spawn, when it is caſt upon graſs, or flags or weeds, where it lies ten or twelve dayes before it be enlivened.

The

The *Carp*, if he have water-room and good ſeed, will grow to a very great bigneſs and length: I have heard, to be much above a yard long. 'Tis ſaid, (by *Jovius*, who hath writ of Fiſhes) that in the Lake *Lurian* in *Italy*, *Carps* have thriven to be more than fifty pound weight, which is the more probable, for as the *Bear* is conceiv'd and born ſuddenly; and being born is but ſhort-liv'd: So on the contrary, the *Elephant* is ſaid to be two years in his dams belly (ſome think he is ten years in it) and being born grows in bigneſs twenty years; and 'tis obſerv'd too that he lives to the Age of a hundred years. And 'tis alſo obſerv'd that the *Crocodile* is very long-liv'd, and more than that, that all that long life he thrives in bigneſs, and ſo I think ſome *Carps* do, eſpecially in ſome places; though I never ſaw one above 23. inches, which was a great and a goodly Fiſh: But have been aſſured there are of a far greater ſize, and in *England* too.

Now, as the increaſe of *Carps* is wonderful for their number; ſo there is not a reaſon found out, I think by any, why they ſhould breed in ſome Ponds, and not in others of the ſame nature, for ſoil and all other circumſtances: and as their breeding, ſo are their decays alſo very myſterious: I have both read it, and been told by a Gentleman of tryed honeſty, that he has known ſixty or more large *Carps* put into ſeveral

ral ponds near to a houſe, where by reaſon of the ſtakes in the ponds, and the Owners conſtant being near to them, it was impoſſible they ſhould be ſtole away from him: and that when he has after three or four years emptyed the pond, and expected an increaſe from them by breeding young ones (for that they might do ſo, he had, as the rule is, put in three Melters for one Spawner) he has, I ſay, after three or four years, found neither a young nor old *Carp* remaining. And the like I have known of one that has almoſt watched the pond, and at a like diſtance of time, at the fiſhing of a pond, found of ſeventy or eighty large *Carps* not above five or ſix: and that he had forborn longer to fiſh the ſaid pond, but that he ſaw in a hot day in Summer, a large *Carp* ſwim near the top of the water with a Frog upon his head, and that he upon that occaſion cauſed his pond to be let dry: and I ſay, of ſeventy or eighty *Carps*, only found five or ſix in the ſaid pond, and thoſe very ſick and lean, and with every one a Frog ſticking ſo faſt on the head of the ſaid *Carps*, that the Frog would not be got off without extreme force or killing: and the Gentleman that did affirm this to me, told me he ſaw it, and did declare his belief to be, (and I alſo believe the ſame) that he thought the other *Carps* that were ſo ſtrangely loſt, were ſo killed by frogs, and then devoured.

And

And a perſon of honour now living in *Worceſter ſhire* * aſſur'd me he had ſeen a necklace or collar of Tadpoles hang like a chaine or necklace of beads about a *Pikes* neck, and to kill him; whether it were for meat or malice, muſt be to me a queſtion. * *Mr. Fr. Rh.*

But I am fain into this Diſcourſe by accident, of which I might ſay more, but it has proved longer than I intended, and poſſibly may not to you be conſiderable; I ſhall therefore give you three or four more ſhort obſervations of the *Carp*, and then fall upon ſome directions how you ſhall fiſh for him.

The age of *Carps* is by Sir *Francis Bacon* (in his Hiſtory of Life and Death) obſerved to be but ten years; yet others think they live longer. *Geſner* ſaies a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred years: But moſt conclude, that (contrary to the *Pike* or *Luce*) all *Carps* are the better for age and bigneſs; the tongues of *Carps* are noted to be choice and coſtly meat, eſpecially to them that buy them: but *Geſner* ſaies, *Carps* have no tongue like other Fiſh, but a piece of fleſh-like-Fiſh in their mouth like to a tongue, and ſhould be called a palate: But it is certain it is choicely good, and that the *Carp* is to be reckoned amongſt thoſe leather-mouthed fiſh, which I told you have their teeth in their throat, and for that reaſon he is very ſeldom loſt by breaking

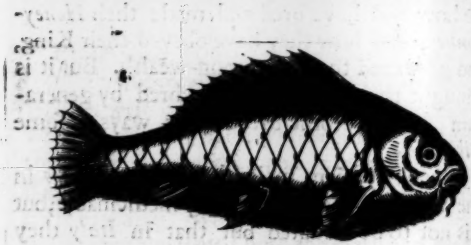
ing his hold, if your hook be once ſtuck into his chaps.

I told you that Sir *Francis Bacon* thinks that the *Carp* lives but ten years, but *Janus Dubravius* has writ a Book of Fiſh and Fiſh-ponds, in which he ſaies, That *Carps* begin to Spawn at the age of three years, and continue to do ſo till thirty: he ſays alſo, That in the time of their breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the earth and water, and ſo apted them alſo for generation; that then three or four Male-*Carps* will follow a Female, and that then ſhe putting on a ſeeming coyneſs, they force her through weeds and flags, where ſhe lets fall her Eggs or Spawn, which ſticks faſt to the weeds, and then they let fall their Melt upon it, and ſo it becomes in a ſhort time to be a living Fiſh; and as I told you, it is thought the *Carp* does this ſeveral months in the year; and moſt believe that moſt fiſh breed after this manner, except the Eel: and it has been obſerved, that when the Spawner has weakned her ſelf by doing that natural office, that two or three Melters have helped her from off the weeds by bearing her up on both ſides, and guarding her into the deep. And you may note, that though this may ſeem a curioſity not worth obſerving, yet others have judged it worth their time and coſts, to make *Glaſs-hives*, and order them in ſuch a manner as to ſee

see how *Bees* have bred and made their *Honey-combs*, and how they have obeyed their King, and governed their Common-wealth. But it is thought that all *Carps* are not bred by generation, but that some breed other ways, as some *Pikes* do.

The Physicians make the *galls* and *stones* in the heads of *Carps* to be very medicinable; but 'tis not to be doubted but that in *Italy* they make great profit of the Spawn of *Carps*, by selling it to the *Jews*, who make it into red *Caviare*, the *Jews* not being by their Law admitted to eat of *Caviare* made of the *Sturgeon*, that being a Fish that wants scales, and (as may appear in *Levit.* 11.) by them reputed to be unclean.

Much more might be said out of him, and out of *Aristotle*, which *Dubravius* often quotes in his Discourse of Fishes; but it might rather perplex than satisfie you, and therefore I shall rather chuse to direct you how to catch, than spend more time in discoursing either of the nature or the breeding of this *CARP*,



or of any more circumſtances concerning him; but yet I ſhall remember you of what I told you before, that he is a very ſubtil Fiſh, and hard to be caught.

And my firſt direction is, that if you will Fiſh for a *Carp*, you muſt put on a very large meaſure of *patience*; eſpecially to fiſh for a *River Carp*: I have known a very good Fiſher angle diligently four or ſix hours in a day, for three or four daies together for a *River Carp*, and not have a bite: and you are to note, that in ſome ponds it is as hard to catch a Carp as in a River; that is to ſay, where they have ſtore of feed, and the water is of a clayiſh colour: But you are to remember, that I have told you there is no rule without an exception, and therefore being poſſeſt with that hope and patience which I wiſh to all Fiſhers, eſpecially to the *Carp-Angler*, I ſhall tell you with what bait

bait to fish for him. But first you are to know, that it must be either early or late; and let me tell you, that in hot weather (for he will seldom bite in cold) you cannot be too early or too late at it. And some have been so curious as to say, the 10. of *April* is a fatal day for Carps.

The Carp bites either at worms or at paste, and of worms I think the blewish Marsh or Meadow worm is best; but possibly another worm not too big may do as well, and so may a green Gentle: And as for pastes, there are almost as many sorts as there are Medicines for the Toothach, but doubtless sweet pastes are best; I mean, pastes made with honey or with sugar: which, that you may the better beguile this crafty Fish, should be thrown into the Pond or place in which you fish for him some hours or longer before you undertake your tryal of skill with the Angle-rod: and doubtless if it be thrown into the water a day or two before, at several times and in small pellets, you are the likelier when you fish for the Carp to obtain your desired sport; or in a large Pond to draw them to any certain place, that they may the better and with more hope be fished for, you are to throw into it in some certain place, either Grains or Blood mixt with Cow dung, or with Bran; or any Garbage, as Chickens guts or the like, and then some of your small sweet pellets with which you purpose to

angle: and these small pellets being a few of them also thrown in as you are Angling will be the better.

And your paste must be thus made: Take the flesh of a Rabbet or Cat cut small, and Bean-flowre, and if that may not be easily got, get other flowre, and then mix these together, and put to them either Sugar, or Honey, which I think better, and then beat these together in a Mortar, or sometimes work them in your hands, (your hands being very clean) and then make it into a Ball, or two, or three, as you like best for your use; but you must work or pound it so long in the Mortar, as to make it so tough as to hang upon your hook without washing from it, yet not too hard; or that you may the better keep it on your hook, you may knead with your paste a little (and not much) white or yellowish wool.

And if you would have this paste keep all the year for any other Fish, then mix with it *Virgin wax* and *clarified honey*, and work them together with your hands before the Fire, then make these into balls, and they will keep all the year.

And if you fish for a Carp with Gentles, then put upon your hook a small piece of Scarlet about this bigness [redacted], it being soked in, or anointed with *Oyl of Peter*, called by some *Oyl of the Rock*, and if your Gentles be put two

or

or three dayes before into a box or horn anointed with honey, and ſo put upon your hook as to preſerve them to be living, you are as like to kill this crafty fiſh this way as any other. But ſtill as you are fiſhing, chaw a little white or brown bread in your mouth, and caſt it into the pond about the place where your Flote ſwims. Other baits there be, but theſe with diligence, and patient watchfulneſs, will do it better than any that I have ever practiſed, or heard of: And yet I ſhall tell you, that the crumbs of white bread and honey made into a paſte is a good bait for a *Carp*, and you know it is more eaſily made. And having ſaid thus much of the *Carp*, my next diſcourſe ſhall be of the *Bream*, which ſhall not prove ſo tedious, and therefore I deſire the continuance of your attention.

But firſt I will tell you how to make this *Carp* that is ſo curious to be caught, ſo curious a diſh of meat, as ſhall make him worth all your labour and patience; and though it is not without ſome trouble and charges, yet it will recompence both.

Take a Carp *(alive if poſſible) ſcour him, and rub him clean with water and ſalt, but ſcale him not, then open him, and put him with his bloud and his liver (which you muſt ſave when you open him) into a ſmall pot or kettle; then take ſweet Marjoram, Time and Parſley, of each half*

a handful, a sprig of Rosemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three small bundles, and put them to your Carp, with four or five whole Onyons, twenty pickled Oysters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your Carp as much Claret wine as will only cover him; and season your Claret well with Salt, Cloves and Mace, and the rinds of Oranges and Lemons, that done, cover your pot and set it on a quick-fire, till it be sufficiently boiled; then take out the Carp and lay it with the broth into the dish, and pour upon it a quarter of a pound of the best fresh butter melted and beaten with half a dozen spoonfuls of the broth, the yolks of two or three eggs, and some of the herbs shred, garnish your dish with Lemons and so serve it up, and much good do you.

Dr. T.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Observations of the Bream, *and directions to catch him.*

Pisc. The *Bream* being at a full growth is a large and ſtately Fiſh: he will breed both in Rivers and Ponds: but loves beſt to live in ponds, and where, if he likes the water and Air, he will grow not only to be very large, but as fat as a Hog: he is by *Geſner* taken to be more pleaſant or ſweet than wholſome; this Fiſh is long in growing, but breeds exceedingly in a water that pleaſes him; yea, in many Ponds ſo faſt, as to over-ſtore them, and ſtarve the other Fiſh.

He is very broad with a forked tail, and his ſcales ſet in excellent order, he hath large eyes and a narrow ſucking mouth; he hath two ſets of teeth, and a lozenge like bone, a bone to help his grinding. The Melter is obſerved to have two large Melts, and the Female two large bags of eggs or ſpawn.

Geſner reports, that in *Poland* a certain, and a great number of large Breams were put into a Pond, which in the next following winter were frozen up into one intire ice, and not one drop

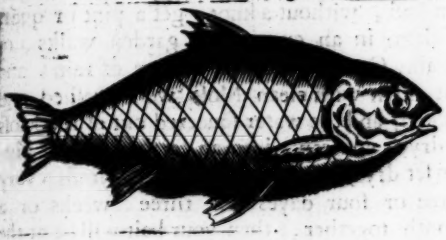
drop of water remaining, nor one of these fish to be found, though they were diligently searcht for; and yet the next Spring when the ice was thawed, and the weather warm, and fresh water got into the pond, he affirms they all appeared again. This *Gesner* affirms, and I quote my Author, because it seems almost as incredible as the *Resurrection* to an *Atheist*. But it may win something in point of believing it, to him that considers the breeding or renovation of the Silk-worm and of many insects. And that is considerable which Sir *Francis Bacon* observes in his History of Life and Death (*fol.*20.) that there be some herbs that die and spring every year, and some endure longer.

But though some do not, yet the *French* esteem this Fish highly, and to that end have this Proverb, *He that hath Breams in his pond is able to bid his friend welcome.* And it is noted, that the best part of a Bream is his belly and head.

Some say, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their eggs, and melt together, and so there is in many places a Bastard breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous.

The Baits good to catch this *BREAM*

are



are many. 1. Paſte made of brown bread and hony, gentles, or the brood of waſps that be young, (and then not unlike Gentles) and ſhould be hardned in an oven, or dried on a tile before the fire to make them tough; or there is at the root of docks, or flags, or ruſhes in watry places, a worm not unlike a Maggot, at which Tench will bite freely. Or he will bite at a Graſhopper with his legs nipt off in *June* and *July*, or at ſeveral flies under water, which may be found on flags that grow near to the water ſide. I doubt not but that there be many other baits that are good, but I will turn them all into this moſt excellent one, either for a *Carp* or *Bream*, in any River or Mere: it was given to me by a moſt honeſt and excellent Angler, and hoping you will prove both, I will impart it to you.

1. Let

1. Let your bait be as big a *red worm* as you can find, without a knot, get a pint or quart of them in an evening in garden walks, or Chalky Commons after a ſhowre of rain; and put them with clean Moſs well waſhed and picked, and the water ſqueezed out of the Moſs as dry as you can, into an earthen pot or pipkin ſet dry, and change the Moſs freſh every three or four dayes for three weeks or a month together, then your bait will be at the beſt, for it will be clear and lively.

2. Having thus prepared your baits, get your tackling ready and fitted for this ſport. Take three long Angling Rods, and as many and more ſilk, or ſilk and hair lines, and as many large Swan or Gooſe-quil floats. Then take a piece of Lead made after this manner, and faſten them to the low-ends of your Lines. Then faſten your link-hook alſo to the lead, and let there be about a foot or ten inches between the lead and the hook; but be ſure the lead be heavy enough to ſink the float or quil a little under the water, and not the quil to bear up the Lead, for the lead muſt lie on the ground. Note, that your link next the hook may be ſmaller than the reſt of your line, if you dare adventure for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Pearch*, who will aſſuredly viſit your hooks, till they be taken out (as I will ſhew you afterwards) before

before either *Carp* or *Bream* will come near to bite. Note alſo, that when the worm is well baited, it will crawl up and down, as far as the Lead will give leave, which much enticeth the Fiſh to bite without ſuſpicion.

3. Having thus prepared your baits, and fitted your tackling, repair to the River, where you have ſeen them to ſwim in skuls or ſhoals in the Summer time in a hot afternoon, about three or four of the clock, and watch their going forth of their deep holes and returning (which you may well diſcern) for they return about four of the clock moſt of them ſeeking food at the bottom, yet one or two will lie on the top of the water, rolling and tumbling themſelves whilſt the reſt are under him at the bottom, and ſo you ſhall perceive him to keep Sentinel; then mark where he plays moſt, and ſtays longeſt, (which commonly is in the broadeſt and deepeſt place of the River) and there, or, near thereabouts, at a clear bottom, and a convenient landing place, take one of your Angles ready fitted as aforeſaid, and ſound the bottom, which ſhould be about eight or ten foot deep (two yards from the bank is the beſt.) Then conſider with your ſelf, whether that water will riſe or fall by the next morning by reaſon of any Water-mills near, and according to your diſcretion take the depth of the place, where you mean after to caſt your ground-bait, and

to

to fish, to half an inch; that the Lead lying on or near the ground-bait, the top of the float may only appear upright half an inch above the water.

Thus you having found and fitted for the place and depth thereof, then go home and prepare your ground-bait, which is next to the fruit of your labours, to be regarded.

The Ground-Bait.

You shall take a peck, or a peck and a half (according to the greatness of the stream, and deepness of the water, where you mean to Angle) of sweet gross-ground barly-malt, and boil it in a kettle (one or two warms is enough) then strain it through a Bag into a tub (the liquor whereof hath often done my Horse much good) and when the bag and malt is near cold, take it down to the water-side about eight or nine of the clock in the evening, and not before; cast in two parts of your ground-bait, squeezed hard between both your hands, it will sink presently to the bottom, and be sure it may rest in the very place where you mean to Angle; if the stream run hard or move a little, cast your malt in handfuls a little the higher, upwards the stream. You may between your hands close the Malt so fast in handfuls, that the water will hardly part it with the fall. Your

Your ground thus baited, and tackling fitted, leave your bag with the reſt of your tackling and ground-bait near the ſporting-place all night, and in the morning about three or four of the clock viſit the water-ſide (but not too near) for they have a cunning Watch-man, and are watchful themſelves too.

Then gently take one of your three rods, and bait your hook, caſting it over your ground-bait, and gently and ſecretly draw it to you till the Lead reſts about the middle of the ground-bait.

Then take a ſecond Rod and caſt in about a yard above, and your third a yard below the firſt Rod, and ſtay the Rods in the ground, but go your ſelf ſo far from the water-ſide, that you perceive nothing but the top of the floats, which you muſt watch moſt diligently; then when you have a bite, you ſhall perceive the top of your float to ſink ſuddenly into the water; yet nevertheleſs be not too haſty to run to your Rods, until you ſee that the Line goes clear away, then creep to the water-ſide, and give as much Line as poſſibly you can: if it be a good *Carp* or *Bream*, they will go to the farther ſide of the River, then ſtrike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while; but if you both pull together you are ſure to loſe your Game, for either your line or hook, or hold will break; and after you have overcome them, they will make noble

noble ſport, and are very ſhie to be landed. The *Carp* is far ſtronger and more mettleſom than the *Bream*.

Much more is to be obſerved in this kind of Fiſh and Fiſhing, but it is far fitter for experience and diſcourſe than paper. Only thus much is neceſſary for you to know, and, to be mindful and careful of; That if the *Pike* or *Pearch* do breed in that River, they will be ſure to bite firſt, and muſt firſt be taken. And for the moſt part they are very large, and will repair to your ground-bait, not that they will eat of it, but will feed and ſport themſelves amongſt the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The way to diſcern the *Pike* and to take him, if you miſtruſt your *Bream*-hook (for I have taken a *Pike* a yard long ſeveral times at my *Bream*-hooks, and ſometimes he hath had the luck to ſhare my line.) May be thus.

Take a ſmall *Bleak*, or *Roach*, or *Gudgion*, and bait it, and ſet it alive among your Rods two foot deep from the Cork, with a little red worm on the point of the hook, then take a few crums of White-bread, or ſome of the ground-bait, and ſprinkle it gently amongſt your Rods. If Mr. *Pike* be there; then the little Fiſh will skip out of the water at his appearance but the live-ſet Bait is ſure to be taken.

Thus

Thus continue your ſport from four in the morning till eight, and if it be a gloomy, windy day, they will bite all day long. But this is too long to ſtand to your rods at one place, and it will ſpoil your evening ſport that day, which is this.

About four of the clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited place, and as ſoon as you come to the water ſide, caſt in one half of the reſt of your ground-bait, and ſtand off: then whilſt the Fiſh are gathering together (for there they will moſt certainly come for their ſupper) you may take a pipe of Tobacco; and then in with your three rods as in the morning: You will find excellent ſport that evening till eight of the clock; then caſt in the reſidue of your ground-bait, and next morning by four of the clock viſit them again for four hours, which is the beſt ſport of all; and after that let them reſt till you and your friends have a mind to more ſport.

From St. *James* Tide until *Bartholomew* Tide is the beſt, when they have had all the Summers food, they are the fatteſt.

Obſerve laſtly, That after three or four days fiſhing together, your Game will be very ſhie and wary; and you ſhall hardly get above a bite or two at a baiting; then your only way is to deſiſt from your ſport about two or three days; and in the mean time (on the place you

late baited, and again intend to bait) you ſhall take a turf of green, but ſhort graſs, as big or bigger than a round Trencher; to the top of this turf, on the green ſide, you ſhall with a Needle and green thred faſten one by one as many little red worms as will near cover all the turf: Then take a round board or Trencher, make a hole in the middle thereof, and through the turf placed on the board or Trencher, with a ſtring or cord as long as is fitting, tied to a pole, let it down to the bottom of the water for the Fiſh to feed upon without diſturbance about two or three days; and after that you have drawn it away, you may fall to, and enjoy your former recreation. *B. A.*

CHAP. XI.

Obſervations of the Tench, *and advice how to Angle for him.*

PISC. The *Tench*, the Phyſician of Fiſhes, is obſerved to love Ponds better than Rivers, and to love pits better than either; yet *Cambden* obſerves there is a River in *Dorſetſhire* that abounds with *Tenches*, but doubtleſs they

they retire to the moſt deep and quiet places in it.

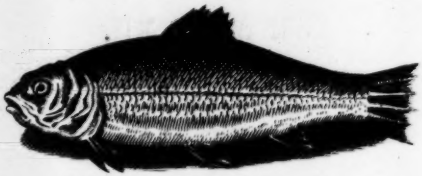
This fiſh hath very large Fins, very ſmall and ſmooth Scales, a red circle about his Eyes, which are big and of a gold colour, and from either Angle of his mouth there hangs down a little Barb; in every *Tenches* head there are two little ſtones, which forraign Phyſicians make great uſe of, but he is not commended for wholſom meat, though there be very much uſe made of them, for outward applications. *Rondelitius* ſays. That at his being at *Rome*, *he ſaw a great cure done by applying a Tench to the feet of a very ſick man.* This he ſays was done after an unuſual manner by certain Jews. And it is obſerved that many of thoſe people have many ſecrets, yet unknown to Chriſtians; ſecrets that have never yet been written, but have been ſince the days of their *Solomon* (who knew the nature of all things, even from the Cedar to the Shrub) delivered by tradition from the Father to the Son, and ſo from generation to generation without writing, or (unleſs it were caſually) without the leaſt communicating them to any other Nation or Tribe: for to do that they account a prophanation. And yet it is thought that they, or ſome Spirit worſe than they, firſt told us, that Lice ſwallowed alive were a certain cure for the Yellow-Jaundice. This, and many other medicines were diſcover'd by them or

by revelation, for, doubtleſs we attain'd them not by ſtudy.

Well, this fiſh, beſides his eating, is very uſeful both dead and alive for the good of mankind. But, I will meddle no more with that, my honeſt humble Art teaches no ſuch boldneſs; there are too many fooliſh medlers in Phyſick and Divinity, that think themſelves fit to meddle with hidden ſecrets, and ſo bring deſtruction to their followers. But I'le not meddle with them any farther than to wiſh them wiſer; and ſhall tell you next (for, I hope, I may be ſo bold) that the *Tench* is the Phyſician of fiſhes, for the *Pike* eſpecially, and that the *Pike*, being either ſick or hurt, is cured by the touch of the *Tench*. And it is obſerved, that the Tyrant *Pike* will not be a Wolf to his Phyſician, but forbears to devour him though he be never ſo hungry.

This fiſh that carries a natural Balſome in him to cure both himſelf and others, loves yet to feed in very foul water, and amongſt weeds. And yet I am ſure he eats pleaſantly, and doubtleſs, you will think ſo too, if you taſt him. And I ſhall therefore proceed to give you ſome few, and but a few directions how to catch this *Tench*.

of



of which I have given you theſe obſervations.

He will bite at a Paſte made of brown bread and honey, or at a marſh worm, or a Lob-worm; he inclines very much to any paſte with which Tar is mixt, and he will bite alſo at a ſmaller worm, with his head nipp'd off, and a Cod-worm put on the hook before that worm; and I doubt not but that he will alſo in the three hot months (for in the nine colder he ſtirs not much) bite at a Flag-worm, or at a green Gentle, but can poſitively ſay no more of the *Tench*, he being a Fiſh that I have not often Angled for; but I wiſh my honeſt Scholar may, and be ever fortunate when he fiſhes.

CHAP. XII.

Observations of the Pearch, *and directions how to fish for him.*

PISC. The *Pearch* is a very good, and a very bold biting fish; He is one of the Fishes of prey, that like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his teeth in his mouth: which is very large, and he dare venture to kill and devour several other kinds of fish: he has a hook't or hog back, which is armed with sharp and stiff bristles, and all his skin armed or covered over with thick, dry, hard scales, and hath (which few other Fish have) two Fins on his back: He is so bold, that he will invade one of his own kind, which the *Pike* will not do so willingly, and, you may therefore easily believe him to be a bold biter.

The *Pearch* is of great esteem in *Italy* saith *Aldrovandus*, and especially the least are there esteemed a dainty dish. And *Gesner* prefers the *Pearch* and *Pike* above the *Trout*, or any fresh-water-Fish: he says the *Germans* have this Proverb, *More wholsom than a Pearch of Rhine*: and he says the River-*Pearch* is so wholsom, that Physicians allow him to be eaten by wound-

wounded men or by men in Feavers, or by Women in Child-bed,

He ſpawns but once a year, and is by Phyſicians held very nutritive: yet by many to be hard of digeſtion: They abound more in the River *Poe* and in *England* (ſays *Rondeletius*) than other parts, and have in their brain a ſtone, which is in forraign parts ſold by Apothecaries, being there noted to be very medicinable againſt the ſtone in the reins: Theſe be a part of the commendations which ſome Philoſophical brains have beſtowed upon the freſh-water *Pearch*: yet they commend the Sea-*Pearch*, which is known by having but one fin on his back (of which they ſay, we *Engliſh* ſee but a few) to be a much better fiſh.

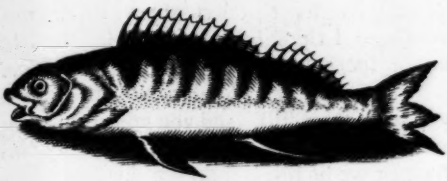
The *Pearch* grows ſlowly, yet will grow, as I have been credibly informed, to be almoſt two foot long; for an honeſt informer told me, ſuch a one was not long ſince taken by Sir *Abraham Williams*, a Gentleman of worth, and a Brother of the Angle (that yet lives, and I wiſh he may:) this was a deep bodied Fiſh: and doubtleſs durſt have devoured a *Pike* of half his own length: for I have told you, he is a bold Fiſh, ſuch a one as but for extreme hunger, the *Pike* will not devour: for to affright the *Pike* and ſave himſelf, the *Pearch* will ſet up his fins, much like as a *Turkie-Cock* will ſometimes ſet up his tail.

But, my Scholar, the *Pearch* is not only valiant to defend himself, but he is (as I said) a bold biting fish, yet he will not bite at all seasons of the year; he is very abstemious in Winter, yet will bite then in the midst of the day if it be warm: and note that all Fish bite best about the midst of a warm day in Winter, and he hath been observed by some, not usually to bite till the *Mulberry-tree* buds; that is to say, till extreme frosts be past the Spring; for when the *Mulberry-tree* blossoms, many Gardners observe their forward fruit to be past the danger of Frosts, and some have made the like observation of the *Pearches* biting.

But bite the *Pearch* will, and that very boldly: and as one has wittily observed, if there be twenty or forty in a hole, they may be at one standing all catch'd one after another; they being, as he says, like the wicked of the world, not afraid though their fellows and companions perish in their sight. And you may observe, that they are not like the solitary *Pike*, but love to accompany one another, and march together in troops.

And the baits for this bold Fish

are



are not many; I mean, he will bite as well at ſome, or at any of theſe three, as at any, or all others whatſoever: a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog* (of which you may find many in hay-time) and of *worms*, the Dunghil-worm called a *Brandling* I take to be beſt, being well ſcowred in Moſs or Fennel; or he will bite at a worm that lies under a cow-turd with a blewiſh head. And if you *rove* for a *Pearch* with a *Minnow*, then it is beſt to be alive, you ſticking your hook through his back-fin; or a *Minnow* with the hook in his upper lip, and letting him ſwim up and down about mid-water, or a little lower, and you ſtill keeping him to about that depth, by a Cork, which ought not to be a very little one: and the like way you are to Fiſh for the *Pearch*, with a ſmall frog, your hook being faſtned through the skin of his leg, towards the upper part of it: And laſtly, I will give you but

but this advice, that you give the *Pearch* time enough when he bites, for there was ſcarce ever any Angler that has given him too much. And now I think beſt to reſt my ſelf, for I have almoſt ſpent my ſpirits with talking ſo long.

Venat. Nay, good Maſter, one fiſh more, for you ſee it rains ſtill, and you know our Angles are like mony put to uſury; they may thrive though we ſit ſtill and do nothing but talk and enjoy one another. Come, come the other fiſh, good Maſter.

Piſc. But Scholar, have you nothing to mix with this diſcourſe, which now grows both tedious and tireſom? ſhall I have nothing from you that ſeem to have both a good memory, and a chearful Spirit?

Ven. Yes, Maſter, I will ſpeak you a Copy of Verſes that were made by Doctor *Donne*, and made to ſhew the world that he could make ſoft and ſmooth Verſes when he thought ſmoothneſs worth his labour; and I love them the better, becauſe they allude to Rivers, and fiſh and fiſhing. They be theſe:

Come live with me, and be my Love,
And we will ſome new pleaſures prove,
Of golden ſands, and Chryſtal brooks,
With ſilken lines, and ſilver hooks.

There

There will the River whiſpering run,
Warm'd by thy eyes more than the Sun;
And there the enamel'd fiſh will ſtay,
Begging themſelves they may betray.

When thou wilt ſwim in that live bath,
Each fiſh, which every channel hath,
Moſt amorouſly to thee will ſwim,
Gladder to catch thee, than thou him.

If thou, to be ſo ſeen, beeſt loath
By Sun or Moon, thou darkneſt both,
And if mine eyes have leave to ſee,
I need not their light, having thee.

Let others freeze with Angling reeds,
And cut their legs with ſhels and weeds,
Or treacherouſly poor fiſh beſet,
With ſtrangling ſnares, or windowy net.

Let courſe bold hands, from ſlimy neſt,
The bedded fiſh in banks outwreſt,
Let curious Traytors ſleave ſilk flies,
To'witch poor wandring fiſhes eyes.

For thee, thou needſt no ſuch deceit,
For thou thy ſelf art thine own bait:
That fiſh that is not catcht thereby,
Is wiſer far, alas, than I.

Piſc. Well remembred, honeſt Scholar, I thank you for theſe choice Verſes, which I have heard formerly, but had quite forgot, till they were recovered by your happy memory. Well, being I have now reſted my ſelf a little, I will make you ſome requital, by telling you ſome obſervations of the *Eel*, for it rains ſtill, and becauſe (as you ſay) our *Angles* are as mony put to Uſe that thrives when we play, therefore we'l ſit ſtill and enjoy our ſelves a little longer under this *boney-ſuckle-hedg.*

CHAP. XIII.

Obſervations of the Eel, *and other fiſh that want ſcales, and how to fiſh for them.*

Piſc. It is agreed by moſt men, that the *Eel* is a moſt daintie fiſh; the Romans have eſteemed her the *Helena* of their feaſts, and ſome *The Queen of palat pleaſure.* But moſt men differ about their breeding: ſome ſay they breed by generation as other fiſh do, and others, that they breed (as ſome worms do) of mud, as Rats and Mice, and many other living creatures are bred in *Egypt*, by the Suns

Suns heat when it ſhines upon the overflowing of the River *Nilus*: or out of the putrefaction of the earth, and divers other wayes. Thoſe that deny them to breed by generation as other fiſh do; ask: if any man ever ſaw an *Eel* to have a Spawn or Melt? and they are anſwered, that they may be as certain of their breeding as if they had ſeen Spawn: for they ſay, that they are certain that *Eels* have all parts fit for generation, like other fiſh, but ſo ſmall as not to be eaſily diſcerned, by reaſon of their fatneſs, but that diſcerned they may be, and that the He and the She *Eel* may be diſtinguiſhed by their fins. And *Rondelitius* ſaies, he has ſeen *Eels* cling together like *Dew-worms*.

And others ſay, that *Eels* growing old breed other *Eels* out of the corruption of their own age, which Sir *Francis Bacon* ſayes, exceeds not ten years. And others ſay, that as *Pearls* are made of glutinous dew-drops, which are condenſed by the Suns heat in thoſe Countries, ſo *Eels* are bred of a particular dew falling in the months of *May* or *June* on the banks of ſome particular Ponds or Rivers (apted by nature for that end) which in a few dayes are by the Suns heat turned into *Eels*, and ſome of the Ancients have called the *Eels* that are thus bred, *The Off-ſpring of Jove*. I have ſeen in the beginning of *July*, in a River

not

not far from *Canterbury*, ſome parts of it covered over with young *Eels*, about the thickneſs of a ſtraw; and theſe *Eels* did lie on the top of that water, as thick as motes are ſaid to be in the Sun: and I have heard the like of other Rivers, as namely in *Severn*, (where they are called *Telvers*) and in a *pond* or *mere* near unto *Stafford-ſhire*, where about a ſet time in Summer, ſuch ſmall *Eels* abound ſo much, that many of the poorer ſort of people, that inhabit near to it take ſuch *Eels* out of this Mere with ſieves or ſheets, and make a kind of Eel-cake of them, and eat it like as Bread. And *Geſner* quotes venerable *Bede* to ſay, that in *England* there is an Iſland called *Ely*, by reaſon of the innumerable number of *Eels* that breed in it. But that *Eels* may be bred as ſome worms, and ſome kind of *Bees* and *Waſps* are, either of *dew*, or out of the corruption of the earth, ſeems to be made probable by the *Barnacles* and young *Goſlings* bred by the Suns heat, and the rotten planks of an old Ship, and hatched of trees; both which are related for truths by *Dubartas* and *Lobel*, and alſo by our learned *Cambden*, and laborious *Gerard* in his *Herbal*.

It is ſaid by *Rondelitius*, that thoſe *Eels* that are bred in Rivers that relate to, or be nearer to the Sea, never return to the freſh waters (as the *Salmon* does always deſire to do) when they

they have once tasted the salt water; and I do the more easily believe this, because I am certain that powdered Beef is a most excellent bait to catch an *Eel*: and though Sir *Francis Bacon* will allow the *Eels* life to be but ten years; yet he in his History of Life and Death, mentions a *Lamprey* belonging to the *Roman* Emperour to be made tame, and so kept for almost threescore years: and that such useful and pleasant observations were made of this *Lamprey*, that *Crassus* the Orator (who kept her) lamented her Death. And we read (in Doctor *Hackwel*) that *Hortensius* was seen to weep at the death of a *Lamprey* that he had kept long, and loved exceedingly.

It is granted by all, or most men, that *Eels*, for about six months (that is to say, the six cold months of the year) stir not up and down, neither in the Rivers, nor in the Pools in which they usually are, but get into the soft earth or mud, and there many of them together bed themselves, and live without feeding upon any thing (as I have told you some *Swallows* have been observed to do in hollow trees for those six cold months:) and this the *Eel* and *Swallow* do, as not being able to endure winter weather: For *Gesner* quotes *Albertus*, to say, that in the year 1125. (that years winter being more cold than usually) *Eels* did by natures instinct get out of the water into a stack of hay in a Meadow

Meadow upon drie ground, and there bedded themſelves, but yet at laſt a froſt kill'd them. And our *Cambden* relates, that in *Lancaſhire* Fiſhes were dig'd out of the earth with Spades, where no water was near to the place. I ſhall ſay little more of the Eel, but that, as it is obſerved he is impatient of cold; ſo it hath been obſerved, that in warm weather an *Eel* has been known to live five days out of the water.

And laſtly, let me tell you that ſome curious ſearchers into the natures of Fiſh, obſerve that there be ſeveral ſorts or kinds of *Eels*, as the *ſilver Eel*, and green or *greeniſh Eel* (with which the River of *Thames* abounds, and thoſe are called *Grigs*;) and a *blackiſh Eel*, whoſe head is more flat and bigger than ordinary *Eels*; and alſo an *Eel* whoſe Fins are reddiſh, and but ſeldom taken in this Nation, (and yet taken ſometimes:) Theſe ſeveral kinds of *Eels* are (ſay ſome) diverſly bred, as namely, out of the corruption of the earth, and ſome by dew, and other ways, (as I have ſaid to you:) and yet it is affirmed by ſome for a certain, that the *ſilver Eel* is bred by generation, but not by Spawning as other Fiſh do, but that her brood come alive from her, being then little live Eels no bigger nor longer than a pin; and I have had too many teſtimonies of this to doubt the truth of it my ſelf, and if I thought it needful I might prove it, but I think it is needleſs.

And

And this Eel of which I have ſaid ſo much to you, may be caught with divers kinds of Baits: as namely with powdered Beef, with a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, with a *Minnow*, or gut of a *Hen*, *Chicken* or the guts of any Fiſh, or with almoſt any thing, for he is a greedy Fiſh; but the Eel may be caught eſpecially with a little, a very little *Lamprey* which ſome call a *Pride*, and may in the hot months be found many of them in the River *Thames*, and in many mud-heaps in other Rivers, yea, almoſt as uſually as one finds worms in a dunghill.

Next note, that the Eel ſeldom ſtirs in the day, but then hides himſelf, and therefore he is uſually caught by night with one of theſe baits of which I have ſpoken, and may be then caught by laying hooks, which you are to faſten to the bank or twigs of a tree; or by throwing a ſtring croſs the ſtream with many hooks at it, and thoſe baited with the aforeſaid Baits, and a clod, or plummet, or ſtone, thrown into the River with this line, that ſo you may in the morning find it near to ſome fixt place, and then take it up with a Drag-hook or otherwiſe: but theſe things are indeed too common to be ſpoken of, and an hours fiſhing with any Angler will teach you better, both for theſe and many other common things in the practical part of *Angling*, than a weeks diſcourſe. I ſhall therefore conclude this direction for taking the *Eel*, by telling

ling you, that in a warm day in Summer I have taken many a good Eel by *fnigling* and have been much pleaſed with that ſport.

And becauſe you that are but a young Angler know not what fnigling is, I will now teach it to you. You remember I told you that Eels do not uſually ſtir in the day time, for then they hide themſelves under ſome covert, or under boards or planks about Flood-gates, or Weires, or Mills, or in holes in the River banks; ſo that you obſerving your time in a warm day, when the water is loweſt, may take a ſtrong ſmall hook tied to a ſtrong line, or to a ſtring about a yard long, and then into one of theſe holes, or between any boards about a Mill, or under any great ſtone or plank, or any place where you think an Eel may hide or ſhelter her ſelf, you may with the help of a ſhort ſtick put in your bait, but leaſurely, and as far as you may conveniently: and it is ſcarce to be doubted, but that if there be an Eel within the ſight of it, the Eel will bite inſtantly, and as certainly gorge it: and you need not doubt to have him if you pull him not out of the hole too quickly, but pull him out by degrees, for he lying folded double in his hole, will with the help of his tail break all, unleſs you give him time to be wearied with pulling, and ſo get him out by degrees, not pulling too hard.

And

And to commute for your patient hearing this long Direction I ſhall next tell you how to make this *EEL*

a moſt excellent diſh of meat:

Firſt, waſh him in water and ſalt, then pull of his skin below his vent or navel, and not much further: having done that, take out his guts as clean as you can, but waſh him not: then give him three or four ſcotches with a knife, and then put into his belly and thoſe ſcotches, ſweet herbs, an Anchovy, and a little Nutmeg grated or cut very ſmall, and your herbs and Anchovis muſt alſo be cut very ſmall, and mixt with good butter and ſalt; having done this, then pull his skin over him all but his head, which you are to cut off, to the end you may tie his skin about that part where his head grew, and it muſt be ſo tyed as to keep all his moiſture within his skin: and having done this, tie him with Tape or Pack-

thred to a ſpit, and roſt him leaſurely, and baſte him with water and ſalt till his skin breaks, and then with Butter: and having roſted him enough, let what was put into his belly, and what he drips be his ſawce.

S.F.

When I go to dreſs an Eel thus, I wiſh he were as long and big, as that which was caught in *Peterborough* River in the year 1667. which was a yard and three quarters long. If you will not believe me? then go and ſee at one of the *Coffee-houſes* in *King-ſtreet* in *Weſtminſter*.

But now let me tell you, that though the Eel thus dreſt be not only excellent good, but more harmleſs than any other way, yet it is certain, that Phyſicians account the Eel dangerous meat; I will adviſe you therefore, as *Solomon* ſays of Honey, Prov. 25. *Haſt thou found it, eat no more than is ſufficient, leſt thou ſurfeit, for it is not good to eat much honey.* And let me add this that the uncharitable *Italian* bids us, *Give Eels, and no wine to our Enemies.*

And I will beg a little more of your attention to tell you that *Aldrovandus* and divers Phyſicians commend the Eel very much for medicine though not for meat. But let me tell you one obſervation; That the Eel is never out of ſeaſon, as *Trouts* and moſt other fiſh are ſet time, at leaſt moſt Eels are not.

I

I might here ſpeak of many other Fiſh whoſe ſhape and nature are much like the Eel, and frequent both the *Sea* and freſh Rivers; as namely the *Lamprel*, the *Lamprey* and the *Lamperne*: as alſo of the mighty *Conger*, taken often in *Severn*, about *Gloceſter*; and might alſo tell in what high eſteem many of them are for the curioſity of their taſte; but theſe are not ſo proper to be talk'd of by me, becauſe they make us Anglers no ſport, therefore I will let them alone as the Jews do, to whom they are forbidden by their Law.

And Scholar, there is alſo a Flounder, a Sea-fiſh, which will wander very far into freſh Rivers, and there loſe himſelf, and dwell and thrive to a hands breadth, and almoſt twice ſo long, a fiſh without ſcales, and moſt excellent meat, and a fiſh that affords much ſport to the Angler, with any ſmall worm, but eſpecially a little blewiſh worm, gotten out of Marſh ground or Meadows, which ſhould be well ſcowred, but this though it be moſt excellent meat, yet it wants ſcales, and is as I told you therefore an abomination to the Jews.

But Scholar, there is a fiſh that they in *Lancaſhire* boaſt very much of, called a *Char*, taken there, (and I think there only) in a Mere called *Winander Mere*; a Mere, ſays *Cambden*, that is the largeſt in this Nation, being ten miles in length, and ſome ſay as ſmooth in the bottom as

if it were paved with poliſht marble: this fiſh never exceeds fifteen or ſixteen inches in length; and 'tis ſpotted like a *Trout*, and has ſcarce a bone but on the back: but this, though I do not know whether it make the Angler ſport, yet I would have you take notice of it, becauſe it is a rarity, and of ſo high eſteem with perſons of great note.

Nor would I have you ignorant of a rare fiſh called a *Guiniad*, of which I ſhall tell you what *Cambden*, and others ſpeak. The River *Dee* (which runs by *Cheſter*) ſprings in *Merionethſhire*, and as it runs toward *Cheſter* it runs through *Pemble-Mere*, which is a large water: And it is obſerved, that though the River *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemble-Mere* with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the *Mere*, nor a *Guiniad* in the River. And now my next obſervation ſhall be of the *Barbel*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Obſervations of the Barbel, *and directions how to fiſh for him.*

PISC. The *Barbel* is ſo called (ſays *Geſner*) by reaſon of his Barb or Wattels at his mouth, which are under his noſe or chaps. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſhes that I told you of, that does very ſeldom break his hold if he be once hook'd: but he is ſo ſtrong, that he will often break both rod or line if he proves to be a big one.

But the *Barbel*, though he be of a fine ſhape, and looks big, yet he is not accounted the beſt fiſh to eat, neither for his wholſomneſs nor his taſte: But the Male is reputed much better than the Female, whoſe Spawn is very hurtful, as I will preſently declare to you.

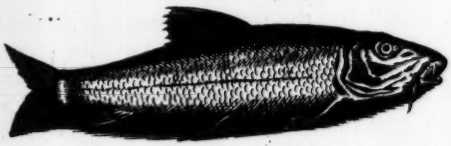
They flock together like ſheep, and are at the worſt in *April*, about which time they Spawn, but quickly grow to be in ſeaſon. He is able to live in the ſtrongeſt ſwifts of the Water, and in Summer they love the ſhalloweſt and ſharpeſt ſtreams; and love to lurk under weeds, and to feed on gravel againſt a riſing ground, and will root and dig in the ſands with his noſe like a hog, and there neſts himſelf: yet ſometimes

he retires to deep and ſwift Bridges, or Floodgates, or Weires, where he will neſt himſelf amongſt piles, or in hollow places, and take ſuch hold of moſs or weeds, that be the water never ſo ſwift, it is not able to force him from the place that he contends for. This is his conſtant cuſtom in Summer, when he and moſt living creatures ſport themſelves in the Sun, but at the approach of Winter, then he forſakes the ſwift ſtreams and ſhallow waters, and by degrees retires to thoſe parts of the River that are quiet and deeper; in which places (and I think about that time) he Spawns, and as I have formerly told you, with the help of the Melter, hides his Spawn or eggs in holes, which they both dig in the gravel, and then they mutually labour to cover it with the ſame ſand, to prevent it from being devoured by other fiſh.

There be ſuch ſtore of this fiſh in the River *Danubie*, that *Rondelitius* ſays, they may in ſome places of it, and in ſome months of the year, be taken by thoſe that dwell near to the River, with their hands, eight or ten load at a time; he ſays, they begin to be good in *May*, and that they ceaſe to be ſo in *Auguſt*, but it is found to be otherwiſe in this Nation: but thus far we agree with him, that the Spawn of a *Barbel*, if it be not poiſon as he ſays, yet that it is dangerous meat, and eſpecially in the month of *May*; which is ſo certain, that *Geſner* and *Gaſius* declare

clare, it had an ill effect upon them even to the endangering of their lives.

This fish is of a fine cast and handsome shape, with small scales, which are plac'd after a most exact and curious manner,



and, as I told you, may be rather said not to be ill, than to be good meat; the *Chub* and he have (I think) both lost part of their credit by ill cookery, they being reputed the worst or coursest of fresh-water-fish: but the *Barbel* affords an *Angler* choice sport, being a lusty and a cunning Fish: so lusty and cunning as to endanger the breaking of the Anglers line, by running his head forcibly towards any covert, or hole, or bank: and then striking at the line, to break it off with his tail (as is observed by *Plutarch*, in his Book *de industria animalium*) and also so cunning to nibble and suck off your worm close to the hook, and yet avoid the letting

ting the hook come into his mouth.

The *Barbel* is also curious for his baits, that is to say, that they be clean and sweet; that is to say, to have your worms well scowred, and not kept in sowre and musty moss, for he is a curious feeder; but at a well-scowred Lob-worm, he will bite as boldly as at any bait, and specially, if the night or two before you fish for him, you shall bait the places where you intend to fish for him with big worms cut into pieces: and note, that none did ever over-bait the place, nor fish too early or too late for a *Barbel*. And the *Barbel* will bite also at Gentles, which (not being too much scowred, but green) are a choice bait for him; and so is cheese, which is not to be too hard, but kept a day or two in a wet linnen cloth to make it tough: with this you may also bait the water a day or two before you fish for the *Barbel*, and be much the likelier to catch store: and if the cheese were laid in clarified honey a short time before (as namely, an hour or two) you were still the likelier to catch Fish: some have directed to cut the cheese into thin pieces, and toast it, and then tie it on the hook with fine silk: and some advise to fish for the *Barbel* with Sheeps tallow and soft cheese beaten or work'd into a Paste, and that it is choicely good in *August*, and I believe it: but doubtless the Lob-worm well scowred, and the Gentle not too much scowred,

red, and cheese ordered as I have directed, are baits enough, and I think will serve in any month; though I shall commend any Angler that tries conclusions, and is industrious to improve the Art. And now, my honest Scholar, the long shower, and my tedious discourse are both ended together: and I shall give you but this Observation, that when you fish for a *Barbel*, your Rod and Line be both long, and of good strength, for (as I told you) you will find him a heavy and a dogged fish to be dealt withall, yet he seldom or never breaks his hold if he be once stucken. And if you would know more of fishing for the *Umber* or *Barbel*, get into favour with Doctor *Sheldon*, whose skill is above others; and of that the Poor that dwell about him have a comfortable experience.

And now lets go and see what intereſt the *Trouts* will pay us for letting our *Angle-rods* lie so long, and so quietly in the water for their use. Come, Scholar, which will you take up?

Ven. Which you think fit, Master.

Pisc. Why, you shall take up that; for I am certain by viewing the Line, it has a Fish at it. Look you, Scholar: well done. Come now, take up the other too; well, now you may tell my brother *Peter* at night, that you have caught a leash of *Trouts* this day. And now lets move toward our lodging, and drink a draught of *Red-Cows Milk*, as we go, and give pretty

Maudlin

Maudlin and her honeſt mother a brace of *Trouts* for their ſupper.

Venat. Maſter, I like your motion very well and I think it is now about milking time, and yonder they be at it.

Piſc. God ſpeed you, good woman, I thank you both for our Songs laſt night; I and my companion have had ſuch fortune a fiſhing this day, that we reſolve to give you and *Maudlin* a brace of *Trouts* for ſupper, and we will now taſt a draught of your *Red-Cows milk.*

Milkw. Marry, and that you ſhall with all my heart, and I will be ſtill your debtor when you come this way: if you will but ſpeak the word, I will make you a good *Sillabub*, of new Verjuice, and then you may ſit down in a *hay-cock* and eat it, and *Maudlin* ſhall ſit by and ſing you the good old Song of the *Hunting in Chevy Chaſe*, or ſome other good Ballad, for ſhe hath good ſtore of them; *Maudlin*, my honeſt *Maudlin* hath a notable memory, and ſhe thinks nothing too good for you, becauſe you be ſuch honeſt men.

Venat. We thank you, and intend once in a month to call upon you again, and give you a little warning, and ſo good night: good night *Maudlin.* And now, good Maſter, lets loſe no time; but tell me ſomewhat more of Fiſhing, and if you pleaſe, firſt ſomething of Fiſhing for a *Gudgion.*

Piſc. I will, honeſt Scholar. CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Obſervations of the Gudgion, *the* Ruffe *and the* Bleak, *and how to fiſh for them.*

THE *Gudgion* is reputed a Fiſh of excellent taſt, and to be very wholſom: he is of a fine ſhape, of a ſilver colour, and beautified with black ſpots both on his body and tail. He breeds two or three times in the year, and always in Summer. He is commended for a Fiſh of excellent nouriſhment: the *Germans* call him *Groundling*, by reaſon of his feeding on the ground: and he there feaſts himſelf in ſharp ſtreams, and on the gravel, He and the *Barbel* both feed ſo, and do not hunt for flies at any time, as moſt other Fiſhes do: he is an excellent fiſh to enter a young Angler, being eaſie to be taken with a ſmall red worm, on or very near to the ground. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed fiſh that has his teeth in his throat, and will hardly be loſt off from the hook if he be once ſtucken: they be uſually ſcattered up and down every River in the ſhallows, in the heat of Summer: but in *Autumn*, when the weeds begin to grow ſowr or rot, and the weather colder, then they gather together, and get into the deeper parts of

of the water: and are to be Fiſhed for there, with your hook always touching the ground, if you Fiſh for him with a flote, or with a cork: But many will Fiſh for the *Gudgion* by hand, with a running line upon the ground, without a cork, as a *Trout* is fiſhed for, and it is an excellent way, if you have a gentle rod and as gentle a hand.

There is alſo another Fiſh called a *Pope*, and by ſome a *Ruffe*, a Fiſh that is not known to be in ſome Rivers, he is much like the *Pearch* for his ſhape, and taken to be better than the *Pearch*, but will not grow to be bigger than a *Gudgion*; he is an excellent Fiſh, no Fiſh that ſwims is of a pleaſanter taſt, and he is alſo excellent to enter a young *Angler*, for he is a greedy biter, and they will uſually lie abundance of them together in one reſerved place where the water is deep, and runs quietly; and an eaſie Angler, if he has found where they lie, may catch forty or fifty, or ſometimes twice ſo many at a ſtanding.

You muſt Fiſh for him with a ſmall red-worm, and if you bait the ground with earth, it is excellent.

There is alſo a *Bleak*, or freſh-water-Sprat, a Fiſh that is ever in motion, and therefore called by ſome the *River-Swallow*; for juſt as you ſhall obſerve the *Swallow* to be moſt evenings in Summer, ever in motion, making ſhort and quick

quick turns when he flies to catch Flies in the air (by which he lives) ſo does the *Bleak* at the top of the water. *Auſonius* would have him called *Bleak* from his whitiſh colour: his back is of a pleaſant ſad or Sea-water-green, his belly white and ſhining as the Mountain-ſnow: and doubtleſs though he have the fortune (which vertue has in poor people) to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want *Allamot* ſalt, and the skill that the *Italians* have to turn them into Anchovis. This fiſh may be caught with a *Pater-noſter* line, that is, ſix or eight very ſmall hooks tyed along the line one half a foot above the other: I have ſeen five caught thus at one time, and the bait has been Gentles, than which none is better.

Or this fiſh may be caught with a fine ſmall artificial flie, which is to be of a very ſad, brown colour, and very ſmall, and the hook anſwerable. There is no better ſport than whipping for *Bleaks* in a boat, or on a bank in the ſwift water in a Summers evening, with a Hazle top about five or ſix foot long, and a line twice the length of the Rod, I have heard Sir *Henry Wotton* ſay, that there be many that in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* ſo, or eſpecially *Martins* (this *Bird-angler* ſtanding on the top of a Steeple to do it, and with a line twice ſo long as I have ſpoken of:) And let me tell you, Scholar, that both *Martins* and *Bleaks* be moſt excellent meat.

And

And let me tell you, that I have known a *Hern* that did constantly frequent one place, caught with a hook baited with a big Minnow or a small *Gudgion*. The line and hook must be strong, and tied to some loose staff so big as she cannot flie away with it, a line not exceeding two Yards.

CHAP. XVI.

Is of nothing; or, that which is nothing worth.

MY purpose was to give you some directions concerning *Roach* and *Dace*, and some other inferiour Fish, which make the Angler excellent sport, for you know there is more pleasure in Hunting the *Hare* than in eating her: but I will forbear at this time to say any more, because you see yonder come our brother *Peter* and honest *Coridon*: but I will promise you, that as you and I fish and walk to morrow towards *London*, if I have now forgotten any thing that I can then remember, I will not keep it from you.

Well met, Gentlemen, this is lucky that we meet so just together at this very door. Come Hostess,

Hoſteſs, where are you? is Supper ready? come, firſt give us drink, and be as quick as you can, for I believe we are all very hungry. Well brother *Peter* and *Coridon*, to you both; come drink, and then tell me *what luck of fiſh*: we two have caught but ten Trouts, of which my Scholar caught three; look here's eight, and a brace we gave away: we have had a moſt pleaſant day for fiſhing and talking, and are returned home both weary and hungry, and now meat and reſt will be pleaſant.

Pet. and *Coridon*, and I have not had an unpleaſant day, and yet I have caught but five Trouts: for indeed we went to a good honeſt Ale-houſe, and there we plaid at Shovel-board half the day; all the time that it rained we were there, and as merry as they that fiſhed, and I am glad we are now with a dry houſe over our heads, for hark how it rains and blows. Come Hoſteſs, give us more Ale, and our ſupper with what haſte you may; and when we have ſup'd let us have your Song, *Piſcator*, and the Catch that your Scholar promiſed us, or elſe *Coridon* will be dogged.

Piſc. Nay, I will not be worſe than my word, you ſhall not want my Song, and I hope I ſhall be perfect in it.

Venat. And I hope the like for my Catch, which I have ready too, and therefore lets go merrily to ſupper, and then have a gentle touch

at singing and drinking: but the last with moderation.

Cor. Come, now for your Song, for we have fed heartily. Come Hostess, lay a few more sticks on the fire, and now sing when you will.

Pisc. Well then, here's to you *Coridon*; and now for my Song.

Oh the gallant Fishers life,
It is the best of any,
Tis full of pleasure, void of strife,
And 'tis belov'd of many:
Other joys
are but toys,
only this
lawful is,
for our skill
breeds no ill,
but content and pleasure.

In a morning up we rise,
Ere Aurora's *peeping,*
Drink a cup to wash our eyes,
Leave the sluggard sleeping:
Then we go
to and fro,
with our knacks
at our backs,
to such streams
as the Thames,
if we have the leasure.

When

When we pleaſe to walk abroad
For our recreation,
In the fields is our abode,
Full of delectation.
Where in a brook
with a hook,
or a Lake,
fiſh we take,
there we ſit,
for a bit,
till we fiſh entangle.

We have Gentles in a horn,
We have paſte and worms too,
We can watch both night and morn,
Suffer rain and ſtorms too:
None do here
uſe to ſwear,
oaths do fray
fiſh away,
we ſit ſtill,
and watch our quill;
Fiſhers muſt not wrangle.

If the Suns exceſſive heat
Make our bodies ſwelter,
To an Oſier *hedge we get*
For a friendly ſhelter,
Where in a dike
Pearch *or* Pike.

Roach *or* Dace.
we do chaſe,
Bleak *or* Gudgion
without grudging,
we are ſtill contented.

Or we ſometimes paſs an hour
Under a green Willow,
That defends us from a ſhowre,
Making earth our pillow,
Where we may
think and pray,
before death
ſtops our breath:
other joys
are but toys,
and to be lamented,

Jo. Chalkhill.

Venat. Well ſung, Maſter, this days fortune and pleaſure, and this nights company and ſong, do all make me more and more in love with *Angling.* Gentlemen, my Maſter left me alone for an hour this day, and I verily believe he retired himſelf from talking with me, that he might be ſo perfect in this ſong; was it not Maſter?

Piſc. Yes indeed, for it is many years ſince I learn'd it, and having forgotten a part of it, I was forced to patch it up by the help of mine own Invention, who am not excellent at Poetry,

trie, as my part of the ſong may teſtifie: But of that I will ſay no more, leſt you ſhould think I mean by diſcommending it to beg your commendations of it. And therefore without replications lets hear your Catch, Scholar, which I hope will be a good one, for you are both Muſical, and have a good fancie to boot.

Venat. Marry and that you ſhall, and as freely as I would have my honeſt Maſter tell me ſome more ſecrets of fiſh and Fiſhing as we walk and fiſh towards *London* to morrow. But Maſter, firſt let me tell you, that, that very hour which you were abſent from me, I ſate down under a *Willow-tree* by the water ſide, and conſidered what you had told me of the Owner of that pleaſant Meadow in which you then left me; that he had a plentiful eſtate, and not a heart to think ſo; that he had at this time many Law-ſuits depending, and that they both damp'd his mirth, and took up ſo much of his time and thoughts, that he himſelf had not leiſure to take the ſweet content that I (who pretended no title to them,) took in his fields, for I could there ſit quietly, and looking on the water, ſee ſome Fiſhes ſport themſelves in the ſilver ſtreams, others, leaping at Flies of ſeveral ſhapes and colours; looking on the Hills, I could behold them ſpotted with Woods and Groves; looking down the Meadows, could ſee here a Boy gathering *Lillies* and *Lady-ſmocks*, and there

a Girl cropping *Culverkeyes* and *Cow-slips*, all to make Garlands ſuitable to this preſent Month of *May*: theſe and many other Field-flowers, ſo perfumed the Air, that I thought that very Meadow like that Field in *Sicily* (of which *Diodorus* ſpeaks) where the perfumes ariſing from the place, make all Dogs that hunt in it, to fall off, and to loſe their hotteſt ſent. I ſay, as I thus ſate joying in my own happy condition, and pitying this poor rich man, that own'd this and many other pleaſant Groves and Meadows about me, I did thankfully remember what my Saviour ſaid, that the *meek poſſeſs the Earth*; or rather, they enjoy what the other poſſeſs and enjoy not, for Anglers and meek quiet-ſpirited-men, are free from thoſe high, thoſe reſtleſs thoughts which corrode the ſweets of life; and they, and they only can ſay as the Poet has happily expreſt it.

Hail bleſt eſtate of lowlineſs!
Happy enjoyments of ſuch minds,
As rich in ſelf-contentedneſs,
Can, like the reeds in roughest winds
By yielding make that blow but ſmall
At which proud Oaks and Cedars fall.

There came alſo into my mind at that time, certain Verſes in praiſe of a mean eſtate, and an humble mind, they were written by *Phineas Fletcher*:

Fletcher: an excellent Divine, and an excellent Angler, and the Author of excellent piſcatory Eclogues, in which you ſhall ſee the picture of this good mans mind, and I wiſh mine to be like it.

No empty hopes, no Courtly fears him fright,
No begging wants, his middle fortune bite,
But ſweet content *exiles, both* miſery *and* ſpite:

His certain life, that never can deceive him,
Is full of thouſand ſweets, and rich content;
The ſmooth-leav'd beeches *in the field receive him,*
With cooleſt ſhade, till noon-tides heat be ſpent:
His life, is neither toſt in boiſterous Seas,
Or the vexatious world, or loſt in ſlothful eaſe;
(pleaſe.)
Plea'd & full bleſt he livse, when he his God can

His bed, more ſafe than ſoft, yields quiet ſleeps,
While by his ſide his faithful Spouſe hath place,
His little ſon, into his boſom creeps,
The lively picture of his fathers face.
His humble houſe, or poor ſtate ne're torment him,
Leſs he could like, if leſs his God had lent him (him.
And when he dies, green turfs do for a tomb content

Gentlemen, theſe were a part of the thoughts that then poſſeſt me, and I there made a converſion of a piece of an old Catch, and added more

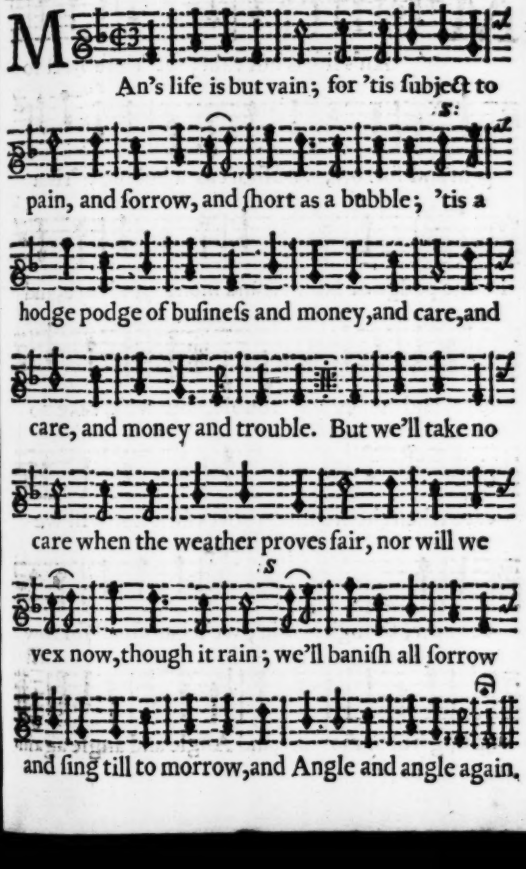
to it, fitting them to be ſung by us Anglers: come Maſter, you can ſing well, you muſt ſing a part of it as it is in this paper.

Mans life, is but vain: for, 'tis ſubject to pain
And ſorrow, and ſhort as a bubble;
'Tis a Hodg-poch of buſineſs, and mony, and care,
And care, and mony and trouble. (*fair:*
But we'l take no care, when the weather proves
Nor will we vex now tho it rain;
We'l baniſh all ſorrow, and ſing till to morrow,
And Angle, and Angle again.

The

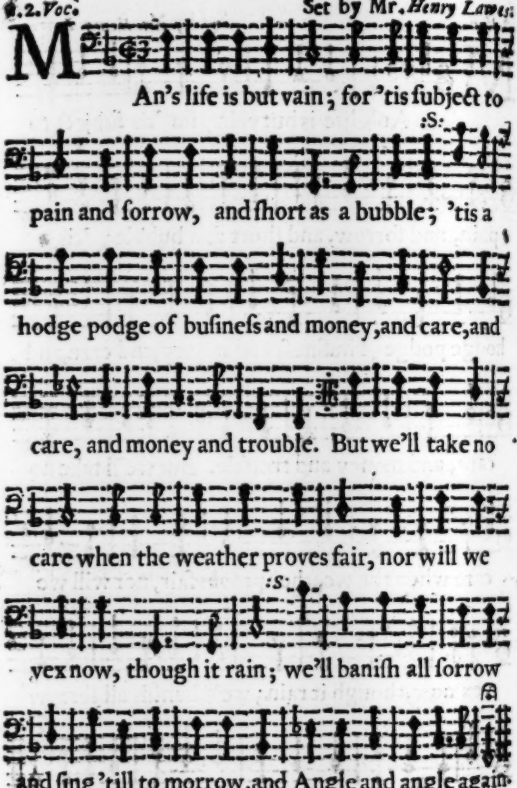
CANTUS.

a 2. Voc. Set by Mr. Henry Lawes.



BASSVS.

1.2. *Voc.* Set by Mr. *Henry Lawes.*



Pet. I marry Sir, this is Musick indeed, this has cheer'd my heart, and made me to remember six Verses in praise of Musick, which I will speak to you instantly,

Musick, miraculous Rhetorick, that speak'st sense
Without a tongue, excelling eloquence;
With what ease might thy errors be excus'd
Were thou as truly lov'd as th'art abus'd?
But though dull souls neglect, & some reprove thee,
I cannot hate thee, 'cause the Angels love thee.

Ven. And the repetition of these last Verses of musick have call'd to my memory what Mr. *Ed. Waller* (a Lover of the Angle) says of Love and Musick.

Whilst I listen to thy voice
(Choris) *I feel my heart decay:*
That powerful voice,
Calls my fleeting Soul away;
Oh! suppress that magick sound
Which destroys without a wound.

Peace Cloris, *peace, or singing die,*
That together you and I
To Heaven may go:
For all we know
Of what the blessed do above
Is, that they sing, and that they love.

Pisc.

Pisc. Well remembred brother *Peter*, these Verses came seasonably, and we thank you heartily. Come, we will all joyn together, my Host and all, and sing my Scholars Catch over again, and then each man drink the tother cup and to bed, and thank God we have a dry house over our heads.

Pisc. Well now, good night to every body.

Pet. And so say I.

Ven. And so say I.

Cor. Good night to you all, and I thank you.

Pisc. Good morrow brother *Peter*, and the like to you honest *Coridon:* come, my Hostess says there is seven shillings to pay, let's each man drink a pot for his mornings draught, and lay down his two shillings, that so my Hostess may not have occasion to repent her self of being so diligent, and using us so kindly.

Pet. The motion is liked by every body, and so Hostess, here's your money; we Anglers are all beholding to you, it will not be long e're I'll see you again. And now brother *Piscator* I wish you and my brother your Scholar a fair day, and good fortune. Come *Coridon*, this is our way,

CHAP.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Roach *and* Dace, *& how to fiſh for them. And of* Caddis.

Ven. Good Maſter, as we go now towards *London*, be ſtill ſo courteous as to give me more inſtructions, for I have ſeveral boxes in my memory, in which I will keep them all very ſafe, there ſhall not one of them be loſt.

Piſc. Well Scholar, that I will, and I will hide nothing from you that I can remember, and can think may help you forward towards a perfection in this Art; and becauſe we have ſo much time, and I have ſaid ſo little of *Roach* and *Dace*, I will give you ſome directions concerning them.

Some ſay the *Roach* is ſo called, from *Rutilus*, which they ſay, ſignifies red fins: He is a Fiſh of no great reputation for his dainty taſte, and his Spawn is accounted much better than any other part of him. And you may take notice, that as the *Carp* is accounted the *Water-Fox*, for his cunning; ſo the *Roach* is accounted the *Water-ſheep* for his ſimplicity or fooliſhneſs. It is noted that the *Roach* and *Dace* recover ſtrength, and grow in ſeaſon in a fortnight after Spawning,

ning, the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a month, the *Trout* in four months, and the *Salmon* in the like time, if he gets into the Sea, and after into freſh water.

Roaches be accounted much better in the River than in a Pond, though ponds uſually breed the biggeſt. But there is a kind of baſtard ſmall *Roach* that breeds in ponds with a very forked tail, and of a very ſmall ſize, which ſome ſay is bred by the *Bream* and right *Roach*, and ſome Ponds are ſtored with theſe beyond belief; and knowing-men that know their difference call them *Reds*; they differ from the true *Roach* as much as a Herring from a Pilchard, and theſe baſtard breed of *Roach* are now ſcattered in many Rivers, but I think not in *Thames*, which I believe affords the largeſt and fatteſt in this Nation, eſpecially below *London-bridg*: the *Roach* is a leather-mouth'd Fiſh, and has a kind of ſaw-like teeth in his throat. And laſtly let me tell you, the *Roach* makes an Angler excellent ſport, eſpecially the great Roaches about *London*, where I think there be the beſt Roach-Anglers, and I think the beſt *Trout-Anglers* be in *Derby-ſhire*, for the waters there are clear to an extremity.

Next, let me tell you, you ſhall fiſh for this *Roach* in Winter with Paſte or Gentles, in *April* with worms or Caddis; in the very hot months with little white ſnails, or with flies under-water,

ter, for he ſeldom takes them at the top, though the Dace will. In many of the hot months, Roaches may alſo be caught thus: Take a *May-flie* or *Ant-flie*, ſink him with a little lead to the bottom near to the Piles or Poſts of a Bridg, or near to any poſts of a *Weire*, I mean any deep place where Roaches lie quietly, and then pull your flie up very leiſurely, and uſually a Roach will follow your bait to the very top of the water and gaze on it there, and run at it and take it leſt the flie ſhould flie away from him.

I have ſeen this done at *Windſor* and *Henly-Bridg*, and great ſtore of *Roach* taken; and ſometimes a *Dace* or *Chub*; and in *Auguſt* you may fiſh for them with a Paſte made only of the crumbs of Bread, which ſhould be of pure fine Manchet; and that paſte muſt be ſo tempered betwixt your hands till it be both ſoft and tough too; a very little water, and time and labour, and clean hands will make it a moſt excellent paſte: But when you fiſh with it, you muſt have a ſmall hook, a quick eye, and a nimble hand, or the bait is loſt and the fiſh too; (if one may loſe that which he never had) with this paſte, you may, as I ſaid, take both the Roach and the Dace or Dare, for they be much of a kind, in matter of feeding, cunning, goodneſs, and uſually in ſize. And therefore take this general direction for ſome other baits which may concern you to take notice of. They will

bite

bite almoſt at any flie, but eſpecially at *Antflies*, concerning which, take this direction, for it is very good.

Take the blackiſh *Ant-flie* out of the Mole-hill or Ant-hill, in which place you ſhall find them in the month of *June*, or if that be too early in the year, then doubtleſs you may find them in *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt of *September*, gather them alive with both their wings, and then put them into a Glaſs that will hold a quart or a pottle; but firſt put into the Glaſs a handful or more of the moiſt earth, out of which you gather them, and as much of the roots of the graſs of the ſaid hillock, and then put in the flies gently, that they loſe not their wings, lay a clod of earth over it, and then ſo many as are put into the glaſs without bruiſing, will live there a month or more, and be always in a readineſs for you to fiſh with; but if you would have them keep longer, then get any great earthen pot, or barrel of three or four gallons (which is better) then waſh your barrel with water and honey; and having put into it a quantity of earth and graſs roots, then put in your flies, and cover it, and they will live a quarter of a year; theſe in any ſtream and clear water, are a deadly bait for *Roach* or *Dace*, or for a *Chub*; and your rule is, to fiſh not leſs than a handful from the bottom.

I ſhall next tell you a winter bait for a *Roach*,

a

a *Dace* or *Chub*, and it is choicely good. About *All-hallantide* (and ſo till Froſt comes) when you ſee men ploughing up heath ground, or ſandy ground, or green ſwards, then follow the plough, and you ſhall find a white worm as big as two Maggots, and it hath a red head, (you may obſerve in what ground moſt are, for there the Crows will be very watchful and follow the Plough very cloſe) it is all ſoft, and full of whitiſh guts; a worm that is in *Norfolk*, and ſome other Counties called a *Grub*, and is bred of the Spawn or Eggs of a Beetle, which ſhe leaves in holes that ſhe digs in the ground under Cow or Horſe dung, and there reſts all Winter, and in *March* or *April* comes to be firſt a red, and then a black Beetle: gather a thouſand or two of theſe, and put them with a peck or two of their own earth into ſome tub or firkin, and cover and keep them ſo warm, that the froſt or cold air, or winds kill them not; theſe you may keep all winter, and kill fiſh with them at any time: and if you put ſome of them into a little earth and honey a day before you uſe them, you will find them an excellent bait for *Bream*, *Carp*, or indeed for almoſt any fiſh.

And after this manner you may alſo keep Gentles all winter, which are a good bait then, and much the better for being lively and tough: or you may breed and keep Gentles thus: Take a piece of Beaſts liver, and with a croſs ſtick;

hang it in ſome corner over a pot or barrel half full of dry clay, and as the Gentles grow big, they will fall into the barrel and ſcowre themſelves, and be always ready for uſe whenſoever you incline to fiſh; and theſe Gentles may be thus created till after *Michaelmas*. But if you deſire to keep Gentles to fiſh with all the year, then get a dead Cat or a Kite and let it be fly-blown, and when the Gentles begin to be alive and to ſtir, then bury it and them in ſoft, moiſt earth, but as free from froſt as you can, and theſe you may dig up at any time when you intend to uſe them, theſe will laſt till *March*, and about that time turn to be Flies.

But if you be nice to foul your Fingers, (which good Anglers ſeldom are) then take this Bait: Get a handful of well-made Malt, and put it into a diſh of water, and then waſh and rub it betwixt your hands till you make it clean, and as free from husks as you can; then put that water from it, and put a ſmall quantity of freſh water to it, and ſet it in ſomething that is fit for that purpoſe over the Fire, where it is not to boil apace, but leaſurely and very ſoftly, until it become ſomewhat ſoft, which you may try by feeling it betwixt your Finger and Thumb, and when it is ſoft, then put your water from it, and then take a ſharp Knife, and turning the ſprout end of the Corn upward, with the point of your Knife take the back

back part of the husk off from it, and yet leaving a kind of inward husk on the Corn, or else it is marr'd, and then cut off that ſprouted end (I mean a little of it) that the white may appear, and ſo pull off the husk on the cloven ſide (as I directed you) and then cutting off a very little of the other end, that ſo your hook may enter; and if your hook be ſmall and good, you will find this to be a very choice Bait either for Winter or Summer, you ſometimes caſting a little of it into the place where your float ſwims.

And to take the *Roach* and *Dace*, a good Bait is the young brood of Waſps or Bees, if you dip their heads in blood; eſpecially good for *Bream*, if they be baked or hardned in their husks in an Oven, after the bread is taken out of it; or hardned on a Fire-ſhovel; and ſo alſo is the thick blood of *Sheep*, being half dried on a Trencher, that ſo you may cut it into ſuch pieces as may beſt fit the ſize of your hook, and a little ſalt keeps it from growing black, and makes it not the worſe but better: This is taken to be a choice Bait if rightly ordered.

There be ſeveral Oils of a ſtrong ſmell that I have been told of, and to be excellent to tempt Fiſh to bite, of which I could ſay much, but I remember I once carried a ſmall Bottle from Sir *George Haſtings* to Sir *Henry Wotton*, (they were both chymical men) as a great Pre-

ſent; it was ſent, and receiv'd, and us'd with great confidence; and yet upon enquiry I found it did not anſwer the expectation of Sir *Henry*, which with the help of this and other circumſtances, makes me have little belief in ſuch things as many men talk of: not but that I think Fiſhes both ſmelt and hear (as I have expreſt in my former diſcourſe) but there is a myſterious Knack, which (though it be much eaſier than the Philoſophers Stone, yet) is not attainable by common capacities, or elſe lies locked up in the brain or breaſt of ſome chymical man, that like the *Roſi-crucians* will not yet reveal it. But let me nevertheleſs tell you, that *Camphire* put with moſs into your worm-bag with your worms, makes them (if many Anglers be not very much miſtaken) a tempting bait, and the Angler more fortunate. But I ſtepped by chance into this diſcourſe of Oiles and Fiſhes ſmelling, and though there might be more ſaid, both of it and of Baits for *Roach* and *Dace*, and other float Fiſh, yet I will forbear it at this time, and tell you in the next place how you are to prepare your Tackling: concerning which I will for ſport ſake give you an old Rhime out of an old Fiſh-book, which will prove a part and but a part of what you are to provide.

My Rod and my Line, my Float and my Lead,
My Hook & my Plummet, my whetſtone and knife,
My Basket, my Baits both living and dead,
My Net and my Meat, for that is the chief:
Then I muſt have Thred, & Hairs green and ſmall,
With mine Angling purſe, and ſo you have all.

But you muſt have all theſe Tackling, and twice ſo many more, with which if you mean to be a Fiſher, you muſt ſtore your ſelf; and to that purpoſe I will go with you either to Mr. *Margrave* who dwells amongſt the Book-ſellers in St. *Pauls* Church-Yard, or to M. *John Stubs* near to the *Swan* in *Golding-lane*; they be both honeſt men, and will fit an *Angler* with what *Tackling* he lacks.

I have heard, that the tackling hath been prized at fifty pounds in the Inventory of an Angler.

Venat. Then, good Maſter, let it be at ——— for he is neareſt to my dwelling, and I pray let's meet there the ninth of *May* next, about two of the clock, and I'll want nothing that a Fiſher ſhould be furniſhed with.

Piſc. Well, and I'll not fail you God willing at the time and place appointed.

Venat. I thank you, good Maſter, and I will not fail you: and, good Maſter, tell me what Baits more you remember, for it will not now be long ere we ſhall be at *Tottenham-high-Croſs*, and when we come thither I will make you

ſome requital of your pains, by repeating as choice a copy of Verſes, as any we have heard ſince we met together; and that is a proud word for we have heard very good ones.

Piſc. Well, Scholar, and I ſhall be then right glad to hear them; and I will as we walk tell you whatſoever comes in my mind, that I think may be worth your hearing. You may make another choice Bait thus, Take a handful or two of the beſt and biggeſt *Wheat* you can get, boil it in a little milk (like as *Frumity* is boiled) boil it ſo till it be ſoft, and then fry it very leaſurely with Honey and a little beaten Saffron diſſolved in milk, and you will find this a choice Bait, and good I think for any Fiſh, eſpecially for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, or *Grayling*: I know not but that it may be as good for a River-*carp*, and eſpecially if the ground be a little baited with it.

And you may alſo note, that the ſpawn of moſt Fiſh is a very tempting bait, being a little hardned on a warm Tile, and cut into fit peices. Nay, Mulberries and thoſe Black-berries, which grow upon Briers, be good baits for *Chubs* or *Carps*, with theſe many have been taken in Ponds, and in ſome Rivers where ſuch Trees have grown near the water and the fruit cuſtomarily dropt into it, and there be a hundred other baits more than can be well nam'd, which, by conſtant baiting the water

will

will become a tempting bait for any Fiſh in it.

You are alſo to know, that there be divers kinds of *Caddis*, or *Caſe-worms*, that are to be found in this Nation in ſeveral diſtinct Counties, and in ſeveral little Brooks that relate to bigger Rivers; as namely, one *Cadis* called a *Piper*, whoſe husk or caſe is a piece of reed about an inch long or longer, and as big about as the compaſs of a two pence, theſe worms being kept three or four days in a woollen bag with ſand at the bottom of it, and the bag wet once a day, will in three or four days turn to be yellow, and theſe be a choice bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fiſh, for it is a large Bait.

There is alſo a leſſer *Cadis-worm*, called a *Cock-ſpur*, being in faſhion like the ſpur of a Cock, ſharp at one end, and the caſe or houſe in vvhich this dwells is made of ſmall husks, and gravel, and ſlime, moſt curiouſly made of theſe, even ſo as to be vvondred at, but not to be made by man no more than a *King-fiſhers* neſt can, vvhich is made of little Fiſhes bones, and have ſuch a Geometrical inter-weaving and connexion, as the like is not to be done by the art of man: This kind of *Cadis* is a choice bait for any float-Fiſh, it is much leſs than the *Piper-Cadis*, and to be ſo ordered, and theſe may be ſo preſerved ten, fifteen, or twenty days, or it may be longer.

There is also another *Cadis*, called by some a *Straw-worm*, and by some a *Ruff-coat*, whose house or case is made of little pieces of bents, and rushes, and straws, and water-weeds, and I know not what, which are so knit together with condensed slime, that they stick about her husk or case, not unlike the bristles of a *Hedg-hog*; these three *Cadis's* are commonly taken in the beginning of Summer, and are good indeed to take any kind of fish with float or otherwise. I might tell you of many more, which as these do early, so those have their time also of turning to be flies later in Summer; but I might lose my self, and tire you by such a discourse, I shall therefore but remember you, that to know these, and their several kinds, and to what flies every particular *Cadis* turns, and then how to use them first as they be *Cadis*, and after as they be *flies*, is an art, and an art that every one that professes to be an Angler has not leisure to search after, and if he had is not capable of learning.

I'le tell you, Scholar, several Countries have several kinds of *Caddis's*, that indeed differ as much as dogs do: That is to say, as much as a very *Cur* and a *Greyhound* do. These be usually bred in the very little rills or ditches that run into bigger Rivers, and I think a more proper bait for those very Rivers, than any other. I know not how or of what this *Cadis* receives life,

life, or what coloured flie, it turns to; but doubtleſs, they are the death of many *Trouts*, and this is one killing way.

Take one (or more if need be) of theſe large yellow *Cadis*, pull off his head, and with it pull out his black gut, put the body (as little bruiſed as is poſſible) on a very little hook, armed on with a Red hair (which will ſhew like the *Cadis-head*) and a very little thin lead, ſo put upon the ſhank of the hook that it may ſink preſently; throw this bait thus ordered (which will look very yellow) into any great ſtill hole where a Trout is, and he will preſently venture his life for it, 'tis not to be doubted if you be not eſpyed; and that the bait firſt touch the water, before the line; and this will do beſt in the deepeſt ſtilleſt water.

Next let me tell you, I have been much pleaſed to walk quietly by a Brook with a little ſtick in my hand, with which I might eaſily take theſe, and conſider the curioſity of their compoſure; and if you ſhall ever like to do ſo, then note, that your ſtick muſt be a little Haſel or Willow cleft, or have a nick at one end of it, by which means you may with eaſe take many of them in that nick out of the water, before you have any occaſion to uſe them. Theſe, my honeſt Scholar, are ſome obſervations told to you as they now come ſuddenly into my memory, of which you may make ſome uſe: but for the practical

practical part, it is that, that makes an Angler: it is diligence, and observation, and practice, and an ambition to be the best in the Art that must do it. I will tell you, Scholar, I once heard one say, *I envy not him that eats better* meat *than I do, nor him that is* richer, *or that wears better* clothes *than I do. I envy no body but him, and him only, that catches more* fish *than I do.* And such a man is like to prove an Angler, and this noble emulation I wish to you and all young Anglers.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Minnow *or* Penk, *of the* Loach, *and of the* Bull-head, *or* Millers-thumb.

PISC. There be also three or four other little fish that I had almost forgot, that are all without scales, and may for excellency of meat be compared to any fish of greatest value, and largest size. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the months of Summer; for they breed often, as 'tis observed *mice* and many of the smaller four-footed Creatures of the earth do; and as those, so these come quickly to their full

full growth and perfection. And it is needful that they breed both often and numerously, for they be (besides other accidents of ruine) both a prey, and baits for other fish. And first, I shall tell you of the *Minnow* or *Penk*.

The *Minnow* hath, when he is in perfect season, and not sick (which is only presently after spawning) a kind of dappled or waved colour, like to a *Panther*, on his sides, inclining to a greenish and skie-colour, his belly being milk-white, and his back almost black or blackish. He is a sharp biter at a small worm, and in hot weather makes excellent sport for young Anglers, or boys, or women that love that Recreation, and in the spring they make of them excellent *Minnow-Tanfies*, for being washed well in salt, and their heads and tails cut off, and their guts taken out, and not washt after, they prove excellent for that use, that is, being *fryed with yolks of eggs, the flowers of* Cowslips, *and of* Primroses, *and a little Tanfie*, thus us'd they make a dainty dish of meat.

The Loach is, as I told you, a most dainty fish, he breeds and feeds in little and clear swift brooks or rills; and lives there upon the gravel, and in the sharpest streams: He grows not to be above a finger-long, and no thicker than is suitable to that length. This *LOACH*,

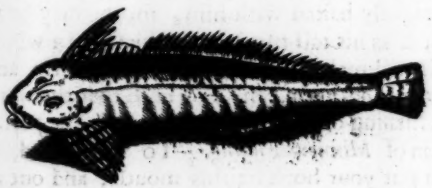
Is

is not unlike the ſhape of the Eel: He has a beard or wattels like a *Barbel*. He has two fins at his ſides, four at his belly and one at his tail; he is dapled with many black or brown ſpots, his mouth is Barbel-like under his noſe. This Fiſh is uſually full of eggs or ſpawn, and is by *Geſner* and other learned Phyſicians commended for great nouriſhment, and to be very grateful both to the palate and ſtomach of ſick perſons, he is to be fiſhed for with a very ſmall worm at the bottom, for he very ſeldom or never riſes above the Gravel, on which I told you he uſually gets his Living.

The *Millers-thumb* or *Bull-head*, is a Fiſh of no pleaſing ſhape. He is by *Geſner* compared to the *Sea-toad-fiſh*, for his ſimilitude and ſhape. It has a head big and flat, much greater than ſutable to his Body; a mouth very wide and uſually gaping. He is without teeth, but his lips

are

are very rough, much like to a Flie. He hath two Fins near to his gills, which be roundish or crested, two Fins also under the Belly, two on the back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his tail is round. Nature hath painted the Body of this Fish with *whitish*, *blackish*, *brownish* spots. They be usually full of eggs or spawn all the Summer (I mean the Females) and those eggs swell their Vents almost into the form of a dug. They begin to spawn about *April*, and (as I told you) spawn several months in the Summer; and in the winter the Minnow, and Loach and Bull-head dwell in the mud as the Eel doth, or we know not where: no more than we know where the Cuckow and Swallow, and other half year birds (which first appear to us in *April*) spend their six cold winter melancholy months. This *Bull-head*



does

does usually dwell and hide himself in holes or amongst stones in clear water; and in very hot daies will lie a long time very still, and sun himself, and will be easie to be seen upon any flat stone, or any gravel, at which time, he will suffer an Angler to put a hook baited with a small worm very near unto his very mouth, and he never refuses to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worst of Anglers. *Matthiolus* commends him much more for his taste and nourishment, than for his shape or beauty.

There is also a little Fish called a *Sticklebag*: a Fish without scales, but hath his body senc'd with several prickles. I know not where he dwells in winter, nor what he is good for in summer, but only to make sport for boys and women-Anglers, and to feed other Fish that be Fish of prey, as Trouts in particular, who will bite at him as at a Penk, and better, if your hook be rightly baited with him, for he may be so baited, as his tail turning like the sail of a wind-mill will make him turn more quick than any *Penk* or *Minnow* can. For note, that the nimble turning of that or the *Minnow* is the perfection of *Minnow-Fishing*. To which end, if you put your hook into his mouth, and out at his tail, and then having first tied him with white thred a little above his tail, and placed him after such a manner on your hook as he is like

like to turn, then ſow up his mouth to your line, and he is like to turn quick, and tempt any *Trout*: but if he do not turn quick, then turn his tail a little more or leſs towards the inner part; or towards the ſide of the hook, or put the *Minnow* or *Sticklebag* a little more crooked or more ſtrait on your hook, until it will turn both true and faſt; and then doubt not but to tempt any great *Trout* that lies in a ſwift ſtream. And the *Loach* that I told you of will do the like: no bait is more tempting, provided the *Loach* be not too big.

And now *Scholar*, with the help of this fine morning, and your patient attention, I have ſaid all that my preſent memory will afford me concerning moſt of the ſeveral Fiſh that are uſually fiſht for in freſh waters.

Venat. But Maſter, you have by your former civility made me hope that you will make good your promiſe, and ſay ſomething of the ſeveral Rivers that be of moſt note in this Nation; and alſo of *Fiſh-ponds*, and the ordering of them, and do it I pray good Maſter, for I love any Diſcourſe of Rivers, and Fiſh and fiſhing, the time ſpent in ſuch diſcourſe paſſes away very pleaſantly.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

Of several Rivers, *and some Observations of Fish.*

Pisc. Well Scholar, since the ways and weather do both favour us, and that we yet see not *Tottenham-Cross*, you shall see my willingness to satisfie your desire. And first, for the Rivers of this Nation, there be (as you may note out of Doctor *Heylins* Geography, and others) in number 325. but those of chiefest note he reckons and describes as followeth.

The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the later in *Cyrencester* in *Glocestershire* meet together about *Dorcester* in *Oxfordshire*, the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckingham-shire*, *Middlesex*, *Surry*, *Kent*, and *Essex*, and so weddeth himself to the Kentish *Medway* in the very jaws of the Ocean; this glorious River feeleth the violence and benefit of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than sixty miles: about whose banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces that a *German Poet* thus truly spake:

Tot

Tot Campos, &c.

We ſaw ſo many Woods *and Princely* bowers,
Sweet Fields, *brave* Palaces, *and* ſtately Towers,
So many Gardens *dreſt with curious care,*
That Thames *with* royal Tyber *may compare.*

2. The ſecond River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*: it hath its beginning in *Plinilimmon-Hill* in *Mont-gomery-ſhire*, and his end ſeven miles from *Briſtol*, waſhing in the mean ſpace the walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, and *Gloceſter*, and divers other places and palaces of note.

3. *Trent*, ſo called for thirty kind of Fiſhes that are found in it, or for that it receiveth thirty leſſer Rivers, who having his fountain in *Staffordſhire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the moſt violent ſtream of all the Iſle. This *Humber* is not, to ſay truth, a diſtinct River, having a ſpring head of his own, but it is rather the mouth or *Euſtorium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together; namely, your *Dorwent*, and eſpecially of *Ouſe* and *Trent*; and (as the *Danow*, having received into its *channel*, the River *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiſnus*, and divers others) changeth his name into this of *Humberabus*, as the old Geographers call it.

4. *Medway*, a Kentiſh River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy.

5. *Tweed*, the north-eaſt bound of *England*, on whoſe northern banks is ſeated the ſtrong and impregnable Town of *Barwick*.

6. *Tine*, famous for *Newcaſtle*, and her inexhauſtible Coal-pits. Theſe and the reſt of principal note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton's* Sonnets.

The floods queen, Thames, *for ſhips and ſwans is*
And ſtately Severn *for her ſhore is prais'd*, (*crown'd*
The Chryſtal Trent *for fords and fiſh renown'd*,
And Avons *fame to* Albions *cliffs is rais'd*,
Carlegion Cheſter *vaunts her holy* Dee,
York *many wonders of her* Ouſe *can tell*,
The Peak *her* Dove, *whoſe banks ſo fertile be*,
And Kent *will ſay her* Medway *doth excell*.
Cotſwool *commends her* Iſis *to the* Tame,
Our Northern borders boaſt of Tweeds *fair flood*,
Our Weſtern parts extoll their Willies *fame*,
And the old Lea *brags of the* Daniſh *blood*.

Theſe Obſervations are out of learned Dr. *Heylin*, and my old deceaſed friend *Michael Drayton*; and becauſe you ſay, you love ſuch diſcourſes as theſe of *rivers* and *fiſh* and *fiſhing*, I love you the better, and love the more to impart them to you: nevertheleſs, *Scholar*, if I ſhould begin but to name the ſeveral ſorts of

ſtrange

ſtrange Fiſh that are uſually taken in many of thoſe Rivers that run into the Sea, I might beget wonder in you, or unbelief, or both; and yet I will venture to tell you a real truth concerning one lately diſſected by Dr. *Wharton*, a man of great learning and experience, and of equal freedom to communicate it; one that loves me and my Art, one to whom I have been beholding for many of the choiceſt obſervations that I have imparted to you. This good man, that dares do any thing rather than tell an untruth, did (I ſay) tell me, he lately diſſected one ſtrange fiſh and he thus deſcribed it to me.

The Fiſh was almoſt a yard broad, and twice that length; his mouth wide enough to receive or take into it the head of a man, his ſtomach ſeven or eight inches broad: he is of a ſlow motion, and uſually lyes or lurks cloſe in the mud, and has a moveable ſtring on his head about a ſpan, or near unto a quarter of a yard long, by the moving of which (which is his natural bait) *when he lyes cloſe and unſeen in the mud, he draws other ſmaller fiſh ſo cloſe to him that he can ſuck them into his mouth, and ſo devours and digeſts them.*

And, Scholar, do not wonder at this, for beſides the credit of the Relator, you are to note, many of theſe, and Fiſhes which are of the

like and more unuſual ſhapes, are very often taken on the mouths of our Sea-Rivers, and on the Sea-ſhore; and this will be no wonder to any that have travelled *Egypt*, where 'tis known the famous River *Nilus* does not only breed Fiſhes that yet want names, but by the overflowing of that River and the help of the Suns heat on the fat ſlime which that River leaves on the Banks (when it falls back into its natural channel) ſuch ſtrange fiſh and beaſts are alſo bred, that no man can give a name to, as *Grotius* (in his *Sopham*) and others have obſerved.

But whither am I ſtraid in this diſcourſe? I will end it by telling you, that at the month of ſome of theſe Rivers of ours, Herrings are ſo plentiful, as namely, near to *Yarmouth* in *Norfolk*, and in the Weſt-Country, Pilchers ſo very plentiful, as you will wonder to read what our learned *Cambden* relates of them in his *Britannia*, p. 178, 186.

Well, Scholar, I will ſtop here, and tell you what by reading and conference I have obſerved concerning Fiſh-ponds.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of fiſh-ponds, and how to order them.

DOctor *Lebault* the learned French man, in his large diſcourſe of *Maſon Ruſtique*, gives this direction for making of *Fiſh-ponds*, I ſhall refer you to him to read it at large, but I think I ſhall contract it, and yet make it as uſeful.

He adviſeth, that when you have dreined the ground, and made the earth firm where the head of the Pond muſt be, that you muſt then in that place drive in two or three rows of Oak or Elme Piles, which ſhould be ſcorcht in the fire, or half burnt before they be driven into the earth, (for being thus uſed it preſerves them much longer from rotting) and having done ſo, lay Fagots or Bavins of ſmaller wood betwixt them, and then earth betwixt and above them, and then having firſt very well rammed them and the earth, uſe another pile in like manner as the firſt were: and note that the ſecond pile is to be of or about the height that you intend to make your Sluce or Flood-gate, or the vent that you intend ſhall convey the overflowings of your Pond in any flood that ſhall endanger the breaking of the Pond dam.

Then he adviſes that you plant Willows or Owlers about it, or both, and then caſt in Bavins in ſome places not far from the ſide, and in the moſt ſandy places, for Fiſh both to ſpawn upon, and to defend them and the young Frie from the many Fiſh, and alſo from Vermin that lie at watch to deſtroy them, eſpecially the ſpawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*, when 'tis left to the mercy of ducks or Vermin.

He and *Dubravius* and all others adviſe, that you make choice of ſuch a place for your Pond, that it may be refreſht with a little rill, or with rain water running or falling into it; by which Fiſh are more inclined both to breed, and are alſo refreſht and fed the better, and do prove to be of a much ſweeter and more pleaſant taſte.

To which end it is obſerved; that ſuch Pools as be large and have moſt gravel, and ſhallows where *fiſh* may ſport themſelves, do afford Fiſh of the pureſt taſte. And note, that in all Pools it is beſt for fiſh to have ſome retiring place, as namely hollow banks, or ſhelves, or roots of trees to keep them from danger; and when they think fit from the extream heat of Summer; as alſo, from the extremity of cold in Winter. And note, that if many trees be growing about your Pond, the leaves thereof falling into the water, make it nauſeous to the Fiſh, and the Fiſh to be ſo to the eater of it.

'Tis

'Tis noted that the *Tench* and *Eel* love mud, and the *Carp* loves gravelly ground, and in the hot months to feed on graſs: You are to cleanſe your Pond, if you intend either profit or pleaſure, once every three or four Years, (eſpecially ſome Ponds) and then let it lye dry ſix or twelve months, both to kill the water-weeds, as *Water-lillies*, *Candocks*, *Reate* and *Bull-ruſhes* that breed there; and alſo that as theſe die for want of water, ſo graſs may grow in the Ponds bottom, which *Carps* will eat greedily in all the hot months if the Pond be clean. The letting your Pond dry and ſowing Oats in the bottom is alſo good, for the fiſh feed the faſter: and being ſometime let dry, you may obſerve what kind of Fiſh either increaſes or thrives beſt in that water; for they differ much both in their breeding and feeding.

Lebault alſo adviſes, that if your Ponds be not very large and roomy, that you often feed your fiſh by throwing into them chippings of Bread, Curds, Grains, or the entrails of Chickens, or of any fowl or beaſt that you kill to feed your ſelves; for theſe afford Fiſh a great relief. He ſays that Frogs and Ducks do much harm, and devour both the Spawn and the young Frie of all Fiſh, eſpecially of the *Carp*. And I have, beſides experience, many teſtimonies of it, But *Lebault* allows Water-frogs to be good meat, eſpecially in ſome Months, if

they be fat: but you are to note, that he is a *French-man*, and we *English* will hardly believe him, though we know frogs are usually eaten in his Country: however he advises to destroy them and King-fishers out of your ponds; and he advises, not to suffer much shooting at wild fowl, for that (he says) affrightens, and harms, and destroys the Fish.

Note, that Carps and Tench thrive and breed best when no other fish is put with them into the same Pond; for all other fish devour their spawn, or at least the greatest part of it. And note, that clods of grass thrown into any Pond feed any Carps in Summer: and that garden earth and parsley thrown into a Pond, recovers and refreshes the sick fish. And note, that when you store your pond, you are to put into it two or three Melters for one Spawner, if you put them into a breeding Pond: but if into a nurse-pond, or feeding pond, in which they will not breed, then no care is to be taken, whether there be most Male or Female Carps.

It is observed, that the best ponds to breed Carps are those that be stony or sandy, and are warm, and free from wind, and that are not deep, but have willow trees and grass on their sides, over which the water does sometimes flow: and note, that Carps do more usually breed in marlé pits, or pits that have clean clay bottoms, or in new ponds, or ponds that lie dry

a winter ſeaſon, than in old ponds, that be full of mud and weeds.

Well *Scholar*, I have told you the ſubſtance of all that either *obſervation* or *diſcourſe*, or a diligent *Survey* of *Dubravius* and *Lebault* hath told me, Not that they in their long diſcourſes have not ſaid more, but the moſt of the reſt are ſo common obſervations, as if a man ſhould tell a good Arithmetician, that twice two, is four. I will therefore put an end to this diſcourſe, and we will here ſit down and reſt us.

CHAP. XXI.

Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.

Piſc. Well, Scholar, I have held you too long about theſe *Cadis*, and ſmaller *fiſh*, and *rivers*, and *Fiſh-ponds*, and my ſpirits are almoſt ſpent, and ſo I doubt is your patience; but being we are now almoſt at *Tottenham*, where I firſt met you, and where we are to part, I will loſe no time, but give you a little directions how to make and order your Lines, and to colour the hair of which you make your Lines,

Lines, for that is very needful to be known of an Angler; and also how to paint your Rod; especially your top, for a right grown top is a choice Commodity, and should be preserved from the water soaking into it, which makes it in wet weather to be heavy, and fish ill favouredly, and not true, and also it rots quickly for want of painting: and I think a good top is worth preserving, or I had not taken care to keep a top above twenty years.

But first for your line,

First, note, That you are to take care, that your hair be round and clear, and free from galls or scabs, or frets; for a well-chosen, even clear, round hair, of a kind of glass-colour, will prove as strong as three uneven, scabby hairs, that are ill chosen, and full of galls or unevenness. You shall seldom find a black hair but it is round, but many white are flat and uneven, therefore if you get a lock of right, round, clear, glass-colour hair make much of it.

And for making your *Line*, observe this rule, First, let your hair be clean washt 'ere you go about to twist it: and then chuse not only the cleerest hair for it, but hairs that be of an equal bigness, for such do usually stretch all together, and break altogether, which hairs of an unequal bigness never do, but break singly, and so deceive the Angler that trusts to them.

When

When you have twiſted your links, lay them in water for a quarter of an hour, at leaſt, and then twiſt them over again before you tie them into a Line: for thoſe that do not ſo, ſhall uſually find their Line to have a hair or two ſhrink, and be ſhorter than the reſt at the firſt fiſhing with it, which is ſo much of the ſtrength of the Line loſt for want of firſt watering it, and then re-twiſting it; and this is moſt viſible in a ſeven-hair line, one of thoſe which hath always a black hair in the middle.

And for dying of your hairs do it thus:

Take a pint of ſtrong Ale, half a pound of ſoot, and a little quantity of the juice of *Walnut*-tree leaves, and an equal quantity of Allom, put theſe together into a pot, pan, or pipkin, and boil them half an hour, and having ſo done, let it cool, and being cold, put your hair into it, and there let it lie; it will turn your hair to be a kind of water or glaſs colour, or greeniſh, and the longer you let it lie, the deeper coloured it will be; you might be taught to make many other colours, but it is to little purpoſe; for doubtleſs the water-colour, or glaſs-coloured hair is the moſt choice and moſt uſeful for an *Angler*; but let it not be too green.

But

But if you desire to colour hair greener; then do it thus: Take a quart of small Ale, half a pound of Allom, then put these into a pan or pipkin; and your hair into it with them, then put it upon a fire, and let it boil softly for half an hour, and then take out your hair, and let it dry, and having so done, then take a pottle of water, and put into it two handful of Marygolds, and cover it with a tile (or what you think fit) and set it again on the Fire, where it is to boil again softly for half an hour, about which time the scum will turn yellow, then put into it half a pound of Copperas beaten small, and with it the hair that you intend to colour, then let the hair be boiled softly till half the liquor be wasted, and then let it cool three or four hours with your hair in it: and you are to observe, that the more Copperas you put into it, the greener it will be, but doubtless the pale green is best; But if you desire yellow hair, (which is only good when the weeds rot) then put in the more *Mary-golds*, and abate most of the Copperas, or leave it quite out, and take a little Verdigrease instead of it.

This for colouring your hair. And as for painting your Rod, which must be in Oil, you must first make a size with glue and water, boiled together, untill the glue be dissolved, and the size of a Lie-colour; then strike your size upon the wood with a Bristle, or a Brush, or Pencil,

Penſil, whilſt it is hot: that being quite dry, take white Lead, and a little red Lead, and a little cole-black, ſo much as altogether will make an aſh-colour; grind theſe all together with Linſeed Oil, let it be thick, and lay it thin upon the wood with a Bruſh or Penſil, this do for the ground of any colour to lie upon wood.

For a Green.

Take Pink and Verdigreece, and grind them together in Linſeed Oil, as thin as you can well grind it, then lay it ſmoothly on with your Bruſh, and drive it thin; once doing for the moſt part will ſerve, if you lay it well; and if twice be ſure your firſt colour be throughly dry, before you lay on a ſecond.

Well Scholar; having now taught you to paint your Rod: and, we having ſtill a mile to Tottenham High-Croſs, *I will, as we walk towards it, in the cool ſhade of this ſweet* Hony-ſuckle-Hedg, *mention to you ſome of the thoughts and joys that have poſſeſt my Soul ſince we two met together. And, theſe thoughts ſhall be told you, that you alſo may joyn with me in thankfulneſs to the giver of every good and perfect gift for our happineſs. And, that our preſent happineſs may appear to be the greater, and we the more thankful for it: I will beg you to conſider with me, how many do, even at this very time, lie under the torment*

torment of the Stone, *the* Gout, *and* Tooth-ache; *and, this we are free from. And,* every misery that I miss is a new mercy, *and therefore let us be thankful. There have been since we met, others, that have met disasters of broken Limbs, some have been blasted, others Thunder-strucken; and we have been freed from these, and all those many other miseries that threaten humane nature: let us therefore rejoice and be thankful. Nay, which is a far greater mercy, we are free from the unsupportable burthen of an accusing, tormenting Conscience: a misery that none can bear, and therefore let us praise him for his preventing grace; and say,* every misery that I miss, is a new mercy: *Nay, let me tell you there be many that have forty times our Estates, that would give the greatest part of it to be healthful and chearful like us; who with the expence of a little mony have eat, and drank, and laught, and Angled, and sung, and slept securely: and rose next day, and cast away care, and sung, and laught, and Angled again: which are blessings, rich men cannot purchase with all their money. Let me tell you Scholar: I have a rich Neighbour, that is always so busie, that he has no leasure to laugh; the whole business of his life, is to get money, and more money, that he may still get more and more money; he is still drudging on; and says, that* Solomon *says,* the diligent hand maketh rich:

rich: *and 'tis true indeed, but he considers not, that 'tis not in the power of riches to make a man happy: for, it was wisely said by a man of great observation,* that there be as many miseries beyond riches, as on this side them: *and yet God deliver us from pinching poverty; and grant, that having a competency, we may be content and thankful. Let not us repine, or so much as think the gifts of God unequally dealt, if we see another abound with riches, when as God knows, the cares that are the keys that keep those riches, hang often so heavily at the rich mans girdle, that they clog him with weary days and restless nights, even when others sleep quietly. We see but the outside of the rich mans happiness: few consider him to be like the* Silk-worm, *that when she seems to play, is at the very same time spinning her own bowels, and consuming her self. And this many rich men do; loading themselves with corroding cares, to keep what they have (probably) unconscionably got. Let us therefore be thankful for health and a competence; and above all, for a quiet Conscience.*

Let me tell you, Scholar, that Diogenes *walked on a day with his friend to see a* Country Fair; *where he saw,* Ribbins, *and* Looking-glasses, *and* Nut-crackers, *and* Fiddles, *and* Hobby-horses, *and many other* gim-cracks; *and having observ'd them, and, all the other* finnimbruns *that make a compleat Country Fair: He said to his friend,*

Lord!

Lord! How many things are there in this world of which *Diogenes* hath no need? *And truly, it is ſo, or might be ſo, with very many who vex, and toyl themſelves, to get what they have no need of. Can any man charge God, that he hath not given him enough to make his life happy? no doubtleſs: for, nature is content with a little: and yet, you ſhall hardly meet with a man, that complains not of ſome want, though he indeed wants nothing but his will, it may be, nothing but his will of his poor Neighbour, for not worſhipping, or not flattering him, and thus, when we might be happy and quiet, we create trouble to our ſelves. I have heard of of a man, that was angry with himſelf becauſe he was no taller, and of a Woman, that broke her* Looking-glaſs *becauſe it would not ſhew her face to be as young and handſom as her next Neighbours was. And, I knew another, to whom God had given health, and plenty, but, a Wife that nature had made peeviſh, and, her Husbands riches had made* Purſe-proud, *and muſt becauſe ſhe was rich (and for no other vertue) ſit in the higheſt Pew in the Church: which being denied her; ſhe engag'd her Husband into a contention for it, and at laſt, into a Law-ſuit with a dogged Neighbour, who was as rich as he, and, had a Wife as peeviſh and* Purſe-proud *as the other: and this Law ſuit, begot higher oppoſitions, and actionable words, and more vexations, and Law-ſuits;*

ſuits: for you muſt remember that both were rich, and muſt therefore have their wills. Well, this wilful Purſe-proud *Law-ſuit laſted during the life of the firſt Husband: after which his wife vext, and chid, and chid and vext, till ſhe alſo chid and vext herſelf into her grave, and ſo the wealth of theſe poor rich people was curſt into a puniſhment, becauſe they wanted meek and thankful hearts; for thoſe only can make us happy. I knew a man that had health and riches, and ſeveral houſes all beautiful and ready furniſht, and would often trouble himſelf and Family to be removing from one houſe to another; and being ask'd by a friend, why he remov'd ſo often from one houſe to another? replyed,* it was to find content in ſome one of them: *but, his friend knowing his temper, told him, if he would find content in any of his houſes? he muſt leave himſelf behind him; for, content will never dwell but in a meek and quiet ſoul. And this may appear if we read and conſider what our Saviour ſays in St.* Matthews *Goſpel: for he there ſays,* ——Bleſſed be the merciful for they ſhall obtain mercy. —— Bleſſed be the pure in heart; for they ſhall ſee God. —— Bleſſed be the poor in Spirit; for theirs is the Kingdom of Heaven. *And* —— bleſſed be the meek; for they ſhall poſſeſs the earth. —— *not that the meek ſhall not alſo obtain mercy, and ſee God, and be comforted, and at laſt come to the King-*

dom of Heaven; but in the mean time he (and he only) poſſeſſes the earth as he goes toward that Kingdom of Heaven, by being humble and cheerful, and content with what his good God has allotted him: he has no turbulent, repining, vexatious thoughts that he deſerves better: nor is vext when he ſees others poſſeſt of more honour or more riches than his wiſe God has allotted for his ſhare; but he poſſeſſes what he has with a meek and contented quietneſs: ſuch a quietneſs as makes his very dreams pleaſing both to God and himſelf.

My honeſt Scholar, all this is told to incline you to thankfulneſs; and to incline you the more, let me tell you, that though the Prophet David *was guilty of* Murder *and* Adultery, *and many other of the moſt deadly ſins; yet he was ſaid to be* a man after Gods own heart, *becauſe he abounded more with thankfulneſs than any other that is mentioned in holy Scripture, as may appear in his book of Pſalms; where there is ſuch a Commixture of his confeſſing of his ſins and unworthineſs, and ſuch thankfulneſs for Gods pardon and mercies, as did make him to be accounted even by God himſelf, to be* a man after his own heart, *and let us in that, labour to be as like him as we can; let not the bleſſings we receive daily from God, make us not to value, or not praiſe him becauſe they be common; let not us forget to praiſe him for the innocent mirth and pleaſure, we have*

met

met with since we met together, what would a blind man give to see the pleasant Rivers and meadows and flowers and fountains, that we have met with since we met together? I have been told, that if a man that was born blind could obtain to have his sight for but only one hour, during his whole life, and should at the first opening of his eyes, fix his sight upon the Sun when it was in his full glory, either at the rising or setting of it; he would be so transported, and amased, and so admire the glory of it, that he would not willingly turn his eyes from that first ravishing object, to behold all the other various beauties this world could present to him. And this, and many other like blessings we enjoy daily; and for most of them, because they be so common, most men forget to pay their praises but let not us, because it is a Sacrifice so pleasing to him that made that Sun, and us, and still protects us, and gives us flowers and showers and stomachs and meat and content and leasure to go a fishing.

Well Scholar, I have almost tir'd my self, and I fear more than almost tir'd you: but I now see Tottenham High-Cross, *and our short walk thither shall put a period to my too long discourse, in which, my meaning was, and is, to plant that in your mind, with which I labour to possess my own Soul: that is; a meek and thankful heart. And, to that end, I have shew'd you,*

that riches without them, do not make any man happy. But let me tell you, that riches with them remove many fears, and cares, and therefore my advice is, that you endeavour to be honestly rich; or, contentedly poor: *but, be sure, that your riches be justly got, or you spoil all. For, it is well said by* Caussin, he that loses his Conscience, has nothing left that is worth keeping. *Therefore be sure you look to that. And, in the next place, look to your health: and if you have it praise God, and value it next to a good Conscience; for, health is the second blessing that we Mortals are capable of: a blessing, that money cannot buy, and therefore value it, and be thankful for it. As for money (which may be said to be the third blessing) neglect it not: but note, that there is no necessity of being rich: for I told you,* there be as many miseries beyond riches as on this side them: *and, if you have a competence, enjoy it with a meek, chearful, thankful heart. I will tell you Scholar, I have heard a grave Divine say, that* God has two dwellings; one in Heaven; and, the other in a meek and thankful heart. *Which Almighty God grant to me, and to my honest Scholar: and so, you are welcom to* Tottenham High-Cross.

Venat. Well Master, I thank you for all your good directions, but, for none more than this last of thankfulness, which I hope I shall never forget. And pray let's now rest our selves in

in this ſweet ſhady Arbour, which nature her ſelf has woven with her own fine fingers; 'tis ſuch a contexture of *Woodbines*, *Sweetbrier*, *Jeſſamine*, and *Mirtle*; and ſo interwoven, as will ſecure us both from the Suns violent heat; and from the approaching ſhower, and being ſate down I will requite a part of your courteſies with a bottle of *Sack*, *Milk*, *Oranges*, and *Sugar*; which all put together, make a drink like *Nectar*, indeed too good for any body but us *Anglers*: and ſo Maſter, here is a full glaſs to you of that liquor, and when you have pledged me, I will repeat the Verſes which I promiſed you; it is a Copy printed amongſt ſome of Sir *Henry Wottons*: and doubtleſs made either by him, or by a lover of Angling: Come Maſter, now drink a glaſs to me, and then I will pledge you, and fall to my repetition; it is a deſcription of ſuch *Country-Recreations* as I have enjoyed ſince I had the happineſs to fall into your company.

Quivering fears, *heart-tearing* cares,
Anxious ſighs, *untimely* tears,
Flye, *flye to* Courts,
Flye to fond worldlings ſports
Where ſtrain'd Sardonick ſmiles are gloſing ſtill,
And grief *is forc'd to* laugh *againſt her will.*
Where mirth's but mummery,
And ſorrows only real be.

Fly from our Country-paſtimes, *fly*,
Sad troops of humane miſery,
Come ſerene looks,
Clear as the chryſtal Brooks.
Or the pure azur'd heaven that ſmiles to ſee
The rich attendance on our poverty;
Peace and a ſecure mind,
Which all men ſeek, *we only find*.

Abuſed Mortals, *did you know*
Where joy, hearts-eaſe *and* comforts *grow*?
Youl'd ſcorn proud Towers,
And ſeek them in theſe Bowers, (*ſhake*,
Where winds *ſometimes our woods perhaps may*
But bluſtring care *could never tempeſt make*,
Nor murmurs ere come nigh us,
Saving, *of fountains that glide by us*.

Here's no fantaſtick Maſk nor Dance,
But of our Kids that friſk and prance;
Nor wars *are ſeen*,
Unleſs upon the green
Two harmleſs Lambs *are butting one the other*,
Which done, *both bleating run each to his Mother*.
And wounds are never found,
Save what the plough-ſhare gives the ground.

Here are no entrapping baits
To haſten too, *too haſty fates*,

Unleſs

Unleſs it be
The fond credulity
Of ſilly fiſh, which (worldling like) ſtill look
Upon the bait, but never on the hook:
Nor envy, 'nleſs among
The birds for price of their ſweet ſong.

Go, let the diving Negro *ſeek*
For Gems hid in ſome forlorn creek:
We all pearls ſcorn,
Save what the dewy morn
Congeals upon each little ſpire of graſs,
Which careleſs ſhepherds beat down as they paſs:
And gold ne're here appears,
Save what the yellow Ceres *bears.*

Bleſt ſilent groves, oh may you be
For ever mirths beſt nurſery!
May pure contents
For ever pitch their tents (mountains,
Upon theſe downs, *theſe* meads, *theſe* rocks, *theſe*
And Peace ſtill ſlumber by theſe purling fountains:
Which we may every year
Meet when we come a fiſhing here.

Piſc. Truſt me (Scholar) I thank you heartily for theſe Verſes, they be choicely good, and doubtleſs made by a lover of Angling: Come, now, drink a glaſs to me, and I will requite you with another very good Copy: it is a Fare-

well to the vanities of the World, and some say written by Sir *Harry Wotton*, who I told you was an excellent Angler. But let them be writ by whom they will, he that writ them had a brave soul, and must needs be possest with happy thoughts at the time of their composure:

Farewell ye gilded follies, pleasing troubles;
Farewell ye honour'd rags, ye glorious bubbles:
Fame's but a hollow eccho, Gold pure clay;
Honour the darling but of one short day.
Beauty (th' eyes idol) but a damask'd skin;
State but a golden prison, to live in
And torture free-born minds: embroydred Trains
Meerly but pageants for proud swelling veins:
And Blood Ally'd to Greatness is alone
Inherited, not purchas'd, nor our own.
Fame, Honour, Beauty, State, Train, Blood and Birth
Are but the fading Blossoms of the earth.

I would be great, *but that the Sun doth still*
Level his rayes against the rising hill:
I would be high, *but see the proudest Oak*
Most subject to the rending Thunder-stroak:
I would be rich, *but see men (too unkind)*
Dig in the bowels of the richest mind:
I would be wise, *but that I often see*
The Fox suspected, whilst the Ass goes free:
I would be fair, *but see the fair and proud,*
(Like the bright Sun) oft setting in a cloud:

I

I would be poor, *but know the humble graſs*
Still trampled on by each unworthy Aſs:
Rich *hated:* wiſe *ſuſpected:* *ſcorn'd if* poor:
Great *fear'd:* fair *tempted:* high *ſtill envi'd more:*
I have wiſh'd all; but now I wiſht for neither;
Great, high, rich, wiſe, *nor* fair; poor *Ile be rather.*
Would the world now adopt me for her heir?
Would Beauties Queen entitle me the Fair?
Fame ſpeak me Fortunes Minion? *could I vie*
Angels with India, *with a ſpeaking eye* (*dumb*
Command bare heads, bow'd knees, ſtrike Juſtice
As well as blind and lame, or give a tongue
To ſtones by Epitaphs: be call'd great Maſter
In the looſe Rhimes of every Poetaſter?
Could I be more than any man that lives,
Great, fair, rich, wiſe all in Superlatives:
Yet I more freely would theſe gifts reſign,
Then ever fortune would have made them mine,
And hold one minute of this holy leaſure.
Beyond the riches of this empty pleaſure.

Welcome pure thoughts, welcome ye ſilent Groves,
Theſe gueſts, theſe courts my ſoul moſt dearly loves:
Now the wing'd people of the skie ſhall ſing
My chearful Anthems to the gladſom Spring:
A Pray'r-Book *now, ſhall be my looking-glaſs,*
In which I will adore ſweet Vertue's face.
Here dwell no hateful looks, no Palace cares,
No broken Vows dwell here, nor pale-fac'd Fears:
Then

Then here I'le ſit, and ſigh my hot loves folly,
And learn't affect an holy melancholy,
And if Contentment be a ſtranger then,
I'le ne're look for it, but in heaven agen.

Venat. Well Maſter! theſe Verſes be worthy to keep a room in every mans memory. I thank you for them; and I thank you for your many inſtructions, which (God willing) I will not forget: and as St. *Auſtin* in his Confeſſions (*book* 4. *chap.* 3.) commemorates the kindneſs of his friend *Verecundus*, for lending him and his companion a *Country-houſe*, becauſe there they reſted and enjoyed themſelves free from the troubles of the world; ſo, having had the like advantage, both by your converſation, and the Art you have taught me, I ought ever to do the like: for indeed, your company and diſcourſe have been ſo uſeful and pleaſant, that I may truly ſay, *I have only lived ſince I enjoyed them, and turned Angler, and not before.* Nevertheleſs, here I muſt part with you, here in this now ſad place where I was ſo happy as firſt to meet you: But I ſhall long for the ninth of *May*, for then I hope again to enjoy your beloved company at the appointed time and place. And now I wiſh for ſome *ſomniferous potion*, that might force me to ſleep away the intermitted time, which will paſs away with me as tediouſly, as it does with men in ſorrow; nevertheleſs I will make it as ſhort as I can by my

hopes

hopes and *wiſhes*. And my good Maſter, I will not forget the doctrine which you told me *Socrates* taught his Scholars, *That they ſhould not think to be honoured ſo much for being* Philoſophers, *as to honour* Philoſophy *by their vertuous lives*. You adviſed me to the like concerning *Angling*, and I will endeavour to do ſo, and to live like thoſe many *worthy men*, of which you made mention in the former part of your diſcourſe. This is my firm reſolution; and as a pious man adviſed his friend, *That to beget* Mortification *he ſhould frequent* Churches; *and view* Monuments, *and* Charnel-houſes, *and then and there conſider, how many dead bones time had pil'd up at the gates of death*. So when I would beget *content*, and increaſe confidence in the *Power*, and *Wiſdom*, and *Providence* of Almighty God, I will walk the *Meadows* by ſome gliding ſtream, and there contemplate the *Lillies* that take no care, and thoſe very many other various little living *creatures*, that are not only created but fed (mans knows not how) by the goodneſs of the God of *Nature*, and therefore truſt in him. This is my purpoſe: and ſo, *Let every thing that hath breath praiſe the Lord*. And let the bleſſing of St. *Peters* Maſter be with mine.

Piſc. And upon all that are lovers of *Vertue*; and dare truſt in his *providence*, and be *quiet*, and go a *Angling*.

Study to be quiet, 1 Theſ. 4. 11.

FINIS.

A SHORT DISCOURSE

By way of

POST-SCRIPT,

Touching the

LAWES OF ANGLING.

My good Friend,

I Cannot but tender my particular thanks to you, for that you have been pleased by these Editions of your Complete Angler, freely to dispence your dear-bought Experiences to all the lovers of that Art, and have thereby so excellently vindicated the Legality thereof, as to divine approbation, that

that if I should go about to say more in that behalf, it indeed were to light a Candle to the Sun: But since all pleasures (though never so innocent in themselves) lose that name, when they are either pursued with inordinate affections, or to the prejudice of another; therefore as to the former, every man ought to endeavour, through a serious consideration of the vanity of worldly contentments, to moderate his affections thereunto, whereby they may be made of excellent use, as some poisons allayed are in Physick: And as to the latter, we are to have recourse to the known Laws, ignorance whereof excuseth no man, and therefore by their directions so to square our actions, that we hurt no man, but keep close to that golden Rule, To do to all men, as we would our selves be done unto.

Now concerning the Art of Angling, we may conclude, Sir, that as you have proved it to be of great Antiquity, so I find it favoured by the Laws of this Kingdom; for where prohibition is made by our Statutes primo Elizab. cap. 17. against taking Fish by Nets that be not of such and such a size there set down, yet, those Lawmakers had so much respect to Anglers, as to except them; and leave them at liberty to catch as big as they could, and as little as they would catch. And yet though this Apostolical Recreation be

simply

ſimply in it ſelf lawful, yet no man can go upon another mans ground to fiſh, without his licenſe, but that he is a Treſpaſſer; but if a man have licenſe to enter into a Cloſe or Ground for ſuch a ſpace of time, there, though he practiſe Angling all that time, he is not a Treſpaſſer, becauſe his fiſhing is no abuſe of his licenſe: but this is to be underſtood of running Streams, and not of Ponds or ſtanding Pools; for in caſe of a Pond or ſtanding Pool, the Owner thereof hath a property in the fiſh, and they are ſo far ſaid to be his, that he may have Treſpaſs for the fiſh againſt any one that ſhall take them without his licenſe, though it be upon a Common, or adjoyning to the Kings High-way, or adjoyning to another mans ground, who gives licenſe: But in caſe of a River, where one or more have libera piſcaria, only it is otherwiſe, for there the fiſhes are ſaid to be feræ naturæ, and the taking of them with an Angle is not Treſpaſs for that no man is ſaid to have a property in them till he have caught them: and then it is a Treſpaſs for any to take them from him: but this is not to be underſtood of fiſhes confined to a mans own ground by gates or otherwiſe, ſo that they cannot paſs away, but may be taken out or put in at pleaſure, for in that caſe the party hath a property in them, as in the caſe of a ſtanding Pool.

But

But where any one hath ſeparalis piſcaria, as in Child and Greenhills Caſe in Tr. 15. Car. 1. Trin. 15. Car. 1. in the Kings Bench, there it ſeemeth that the fiſh may be ſaid to be his, becauſe no man elſe may take them whilſt they are within his ſeveral fiſhing: therefore what is meant by a ſeveral fiſhing is neceſſary to be conſidered: and though the difference between a Free-fiſhing, and a Several fiſhing be often treated of in the antient books of the Law, and ſome Opinions will have the difference to be great, and others ſmall or nothing at all; yet the certainest definition of a ſeveral fiſhing is, where one hath the Royalty, and oweth the ground on each ſide of the water which agreeth with Sir William Calthrops Caſe, Mich. 17. E. 4. 6. & Paſc. 18. E. 4. 4. where an Action was brought by him againſt another for fiſhing in his ſeveral fiſhing, &c. to which the Defendant pleaded, That the place wherein the Treſpaſs was ſuppoſed to be done, contained ten Perches of Land in length, and twenty Perches in breadth, which was his own Free hold at the time when the Treſpaſs was ſuppoſed to be done, and that he fiſhed there as was lawful for him to do, and this was adjudged a good Plea by the whole Court, and upon argument in that very Caſe it was agreed, that no man could have

have a several fishing but in his own soil, and that free fishing may be in the soil of another man, which was all agreed unto by Littleton our famous English Lawyer. So that from all this may be drawn this short conclusion, That if the Angler take care that he offend not with his feet, there is no great danger of his hands.

But there are some covetous rigid persons, whose souls hold no sympathy with those of the innocent Anglers, having either got to be Lords of Royalties, or owners of Lands adjoyning to Rivers, and these do, by some apted clownish nature and education for the purpose, insult and domineer over the innocent Angler, beating him, breaking his Rod, or at least taking it from him, and sometimes imprisoning his person as if he were a Felon. Whereas a true-bred Gentleman scorns those spider-like attempts, and will rather refresh a civil Stranger at his Table, than warn him from coming on his ground upon so innocent an occasion. It would therefore be considered how far such furious drivers are warranted by the Law and what the Angler may (in case of such violence) do in defence of himself: If I come upon another mans ground without his license, or the license of the Law, I am a Trespasser, for which the owner may have an Action of Trespass against me, and if I con-

tinue there after warning, to depart by the owner, or his servant thereunto authorised, the owner, or his servant by his command, may put me off by force, but not beat me, but in case of resistance by me, for then I (by resisting) make the assault; but if he beat me, I not resisting, in that case, he makes the assault, and I may beat him in defence of my self, and to free my self from his violence: and in case I shall leave my Rod behind in his ground, he may take it damage feasant, but he can neither take it from my person by force, nor break it, but he is a Trespasser to me: Which seems clear by the case of Reynell and Champernoon, where Reynell brought an Action of Trespass against Champernoon for taking and cutting his Nets, the Defendant justified for that he was seised in fee of a several fishing, and that the Plaintiff with others endeavoured to row upon his water, and with the Nets to catch his fish, and that for the safe-guard of his fishing he took and cut the Nets and Mars; to which plea the Plaintiff demurred, and there it was adjudged by the whole Court, that he could not by such colour cut the Nets and Mars; and judgment was thereupon given for the Plaintiff.

Mich. 7. Car. 1.

Doubtless our Fore-fathers well considered, that man to man was a wolf, and therefore

fore made good Laws to keep us from devouring one another, and amongſt the reſt a very good Statute was made in the three and fortieth year of Queen Elizabeth, whereby it is provided, that in perſonal Actions in the Courts at Weſtminſter, (being not for Land or Battery) when it ſhall appear to the Judges, (and be ſo by them ſignified) that the debt or damages to be recovered amount not to the ſum of forty ſhillings or above, the ſaid Judges ſhall award to the Plaintiff no more coſts than damages, but leſs at their diſcretion.

And now with my acknowledgment of the advantage I have had both by your friendſhip and your book; I wiſh nothing may ever be that looks like an alteration in the firſt; nor any thing in the laſt, unleſs, by reaſon of the uſeful pleaſure of it, you had called it The Arcadia of Angling; for it deſerves that Title, and I would deſerve the continuance of your Friendſhip.

THE

CONTENTS.

Chapter 1.

A *Conference betwixt an* Angler, *a* Faulkner, *and a* Hunter, *each commending his Recreation.* pag. 1.
Chap. 2. *Obſervations of the Otter and Chub.* p. 50.
Chap. 3. *How to fiſh for, and to dreſs the Chevender or Chub.* 61.
Chap. 4. *Obſervations of the nature and breeding of the Trout, and how to fiſh for him. And the Milk-maids ſong.* p. 68.
Chap. 5. *More directions how to fiſh for, and how to make the Trout an artificial minnow and flye: and ſome merriment.* p. 85.
Chap. 6. *Obſervations of the Umber or Grayling, and directions how to fiſh for them.* p. 137.
Chap. 7. *Obſervations of the Salmon, with directions how to fiſh for him.* p. 140.
Chap. 8. *Obſervations of the Luce or Pike, with directions how to fiſh for him.* p. 149.
Chap. 9. *Obſervations of the Carp, with directions how to fiſh for him.* p. 165.

Chap.

Chap. 10. *Observations of the Bream, and directions how to fish for him.* 177.
Chap. 11. *Observations of the Tench, and advice how to angle for him.* p. 186.
Chap. 12. *Observations of the Pearch, and directions how to fish for him.* 190.
Chap. 13. *Observations of the Eel, and other fish that want scales, and how to fish for them.* p. 196
Chap. 14. *Observations of the Barbel, and directions how to fish for him.* p. 207.
Chap. 15. *Observations of the Gudgion, the Ruff, and the Bleak, and how to fish for them.* p. 213.
Chap. 16. *Is of nothing.* p. 216.
Chap. 17. *Of Roach and Dace, and how to fish for them. And of Cadis.* p. 229.
Chap. 18. *Of the Minnow or Penk, of the Loach, and of the Bull-head or Millers-thumb.* p. 242.
Chap. 19. *Of several Rivers, and some observations of fish.* p. 248.
Chap. 20. *Of Fish-ponds, and how to order them.* p. 253.
Chap. 21. *Directions for making of a Line, and for the colouring of both Rod and Line.* p. 257.

FINIS.

Licenſed,

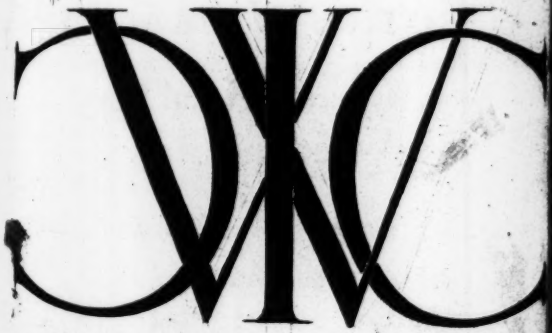
April 5. 1676.

Roger L'Eſtrange.

THE COMPLEAT ANGLER.

Being Instructions how to angle for a TROUT or GRAYLING in a clear Stream.

PART. II.



Qui mihi non credit, faciat licet ipse periclum:
Et fuerit scriptis æquior ille meis.

LONDON,
Printed for *Richard Marriott* and *Henry Brome* in St. *Paul's* Church-yard, MDCLXXVI.

TO

My most Worthy

FATHER and FRIEND,

Mr. IZAAK WALTON

The Elder.

SIR,

BEing you were pleased some years past, to grant me your free leave to do what I have here attempted; and observing, you never retract any promise when made in favour even of your mea-

nest friends ; I accordingly expect to see these following particular Directions for the taking of a Trout, *to wait upon your better and more general Rules for all sorts of* Angling : *And, though mine be neither so perfect, so well digested, nor indeed so handsomely coucht as they might have been, in so long a time as since your leave was granted ; yet, I dare affirm them to be generally true: And they had appeared too in something a neater dress, but that I was surpriz'd with the suddain news of a suddain new Edition of your* Compleat Angler ; *so that, having but a little more than ten days time to turn me in, and rub up my memory (for in truth I have not in all this long time, though*

I have often thought on't, and almost as often resolv'd to go presently about it) I was forc't upon the instant to scribble what I here present you: which I have also endeavour'd to accommodate to your own Method. And, if mine be clear enough for the honest Brothers of the Angle readily to understand; (which is the only thing I aim at) then I have my end; and shall need to make no further Apology; a writing of this kind, not requiring (if I were Master of any such thing) any Eloquence to set it off, or recommend it; so that if you, in your better Judgment, or kindness rather, can allow it passable for a thing of this nature: You will then do me honour if the Cypher *fixt and carv'd in the front*

of

of my little fishing-house may be here explained: And, to permit me to attend you in publick, who in private, have ever been, am, and ever resolve to be

Sir,

Your most affectionate

Son and Servant

Berisford 10th. of *March* 167½.

Charles Cotton.

THE COMPLEAT ANGLER; OR, The Contemplative Man's Recreation.

PART. II.

CHAP. I.

Piſcator Junior & Viator.

PISCAT. You are happily overtaken Sir; may a man be ſo bold as to enquire how far you travel this way?

Viator. Yes ſure Sir very freely; though it be a queſtion I cannot very well reſolve you; as not knowing my ſelf how far it is to *Aſhborn*, where I intend to night to take up my Inn.

Piſcat. Why then Sir, ſeeing I perceive you

to be a Stranger in these parts; I shall take upon me to inform you, that from the Town you last came through, call'd *Brelsford*, it is five miles, and you are not yet above half a mile on this side.

Viat. So much! I was told it was but ten miles from *Derby*, and methinks I have rode almost so far already.

Piscat. O Sir, find no fault with large measure of good Land, which *Derby-shire* abounds in, as much as most Counties of *England*.

Viat. It may be so, and good Land I confess affords a pleasant prospect: but by your good leave Sir, large measure of foul way is not altogether so acceptable.

Piscat. True Sir, but the foul way serves to justifie the fertility of the soyl; according to the Proverb: *There is good Land, where there is foul way*; and is of good use to inform you of the Riches of the Country you are come into, and of its continual Travel, and Traffick to the Country Town you came from; which is also very observable by the fulness of its Road, and the loaden Horses you meet every where upon the way.

Viat. well Sir, I will be content to think as well of your Country, as you would desire, and I shall have a great deal of reason both to think, and to speak very well of you, If I may obtain the happiness of your company to the fore-

forementioned place, provided your affairs lead you that way, and that they will permit you to slack your pace out of complacency to a Traveller utterly a Stranger in these parts, and who am still to wander further out of my own knowledg.

Piscat. Sir, you invite me to my own advantage, and I am ready to attend you: my way lying through that Town; but my business, that is, my home, some miles beyond it: however I shall have time enough to lodg you in your Quarters, and afterwards to perform my own Journey. In the mean time may I be so bold as to enquire the end of your Journey.

Viat. 'Tis into *Lancashire* Sir, and about some business of concern to a near Relation of mine: for I assure you, I do not use to take so long Journeys, as from *Essex* upon the single account of pleasure.

Piscat. From thence Sir! I do not then wonder you should appear dissatisfied with the length of the Miles, and the foulness of the way: though I am sorry you should begin to quarrel with them so soon; for, believe me Sir, you will find the Miles much longer, and the way much worse before you come to your Journies end.

Viat. Why truly Sir for that, I am prepar'd to expect the worst; but methinks the way is

mended ſince I had the good fortune to fall into your good company.

Piſcat. You are not oblig'd to my company for that: but becauſe you are already paſt the worſt, and the greateſt part of your way to your Lodging.

Viat. I am very glad to hear it, both for the eaſe of my ſelf, and my Horſe; but eſpecially becauſe I may then expect a freer enjoyment of your converſation; though the ſhortneſs of the way will, I fear, make me loſe it the ſooner.

Piſcat. That Sir is not worth your care; and I am ſure you deſerve much better, for being content with ſo ill company: but we have already talkt away two Miles of your Journey; for from the Brook before us, that runs at the foot of this Sandy Hill, you have but three Miles to *Aſhborn*.

Viat. I meet every where in this Country with theſe little Brooks, and they look as if they were full of Fiſh; have they not Trouts in them?

Piſcat. That is a queſtion, which is to be excus'd in a Stranger as you are; otherwiſe, give me leave to tell you, it would ſeem a kind of affront to our Country, to make a doubt of what we pretend to be famous for, next, if not before, our Malt, Wool, Lead, and Cole; for you are to underſtand, that we think we have as

as many fine Rivers, Rivulets, and Brooks, as any Country whatever, and they are all full of Trouts, and ſome of them the beſt (it is ſaid) by many degrees in *England.*

Viat. I was firſt Sir in love with you, and now ſhall be ſo enamour'd of your Country by this account you give me of it, as to wiſh my ſelf a *Derby-ſhire* Man, or at leaſt that I might live in it: for you muſt know I am a pretender to the Angle, and doubtleſs a Trout affords the moſt pleaſure to the Angler, of any ſort of Fiſh whatever; and the beſt Trouts, muſt needs make the beſt ſport : But this Brook, and ſome others I have met with upon this way, are too full of Wood for that recreation.

Piſcat. This Sir! why this, and ſeveral others like it, which you have paſt, and ſome that you are like to paſs, have ſcarce any name amongſt us: but we can ſhew you as fine Rivers, and as clear from wood, or any other encumbrance to hinder an Angler, as any you ever ſaw; and for clear, beautiful ſtreams, *Hantſhire* it ſelf, by Mr. *Izaak Walton's* good leave, can ſhew none ſuch; nor I think and Country in *Europe.*

Viat. You go far Sir in the praiſe of your Country Rivers, and I perceive have read Mr *Walton's Compleat Angler* by your naming of *Hantſhire*, and I pray what is your opinion of that Book?

Piſcat. My Opinion of Mr. *Walton's* Book is the ſame with every Man's, that underſtands any thing of the Art of Angling, that it is an excellent good one, and that the forementioned Gentleman underſtands as much of Fiſh, and Fiſhing as any Man living: but I muſt tell you further, that I have the happineſs to know his perſon, and to be intimately acquainted with him, and in him to know the worthieſt Man, and to enjoy the beſt, and the trueſt Friend any Man ever had: nay, I ſhall yet acquaint you further, that he gives me leave to call him Father, and I hope is not yet aſham'd to own me for his adopted Son.

Viat. In earneſt Sir I am raviſht to meet with a friend of Mr. *Izaak Walton's*, and one that does him ſo much right in ſo good and true a Character; for I muſt boaſt to you, that I have the good fortune to know him too, and came acquainted with him much after the ſame manner I do with you; that he was my Maſter who firſt taught me to love Angling, and then to become an Angler; and to be plain with you, I am the very Man decipher'd in his Book under the name of *Venator*, for I was wholly addicted to the Chace; till he taught me as good, a more quiet, innocent, and leſs dangerous diverſion.

Piſcat. Sir, I think my ſelf happy in your acquaintance, and before we part ſhall entreat leave

leave to embrace you; you have ſaid enough to recommend you to my beſt opinion; for my Father *Walton* will be ſeen twice in no Man's company he does not like, and likes none but ſuch as he believes to be very honeſt men, which is one of the beſt Arguments, or at leaſt of the beſt Teſtimonies I have, that I either am, or that he thinks me one of thoſe, ſeeing I have not yet found him weary of me.

Viat. You ſpeak like a true Friend, and in doing ſo render your ſelf worthy of his friendſhip. May I be ſo bold as to ask your name?

Piſcat. Yes ſurely Sir, and if you pleaſe a much nicer queſtion, my name is —— and I intend to ſtay long enough in your company, if I find you do not diſlike mine, to ask yours too. In the mean time, becauſe we are now almoſt at *Aſhborn*, I ſhall freely, and bluntly tell you, that I am a Brother of the Angle too, and peradventure can give you ſome inſtructions how to Angle for a Trout in a clear River, that my Father *Walton* himſelf will not diſapprove, though he did either purpoſely omit, or did not remember them, when you, and he ſate diſcourſing under the *Sycamore* Tree. And being you have already told me whether your Journey is intended, and that I am better acquainted with the Country than you are; I will heartily, and earneſtly entreat, you will not think of ſtaying at this Town: but go on with

me ſix Miles further to my Houſe, where you ſhall be extreamly welcom; it is directly in your way, we have day enough to perform our Journey, & as you like your entertainment, you may there repoſe your ſelf a day or two; or as many more as your occaſions will permit, to recompence the trouble of ſo much a longer Journey.

Viat. Sir, you ſurpriſe me with ſo friendly an invitation upon ſo ſhort acquaintance: but how advantagious ſoever it would be to me, and that my haſt perhaps is not ſo great, but it might diſpenſe with ſuch a divertiſement as I promiſe my ſelf in your Company; yet I cannot in modeſty accept your offer, & muſt therefore beg your pardon: I could otherwiſe, I confeſs be glad to wait upon you, if upon no other account but to talk of Mr. *I. Walton*, and to receive thoſe inſtructions you ſay you are able to give me for the deceiving a Trout; in which art I will not deny, but that I have an ambition to be one of the greateſt deceivers; though I cannot forbear freely to tell you, that I think it hard to ſay much more, than has been read to me upon that ſubject.

Piſcat. well Sir, I grant that too; but you muſt know that the variety of Rivers, require different ways of Angling: however you ſhall have the beſt Rules I am able to give, and I will tell you nothing I have not made my ſelf as certain of, as any Man can be in thirty years

experience

experience (for ſo long I have been a dabler in that art) and that if you pleaſe to ſtay a few days, you ſhall not in a very great meaſure ſee made good to you. But of that hereafter, and now, Sir, if I am not miſtaken I have half overcome you; and that I may wholly conquer that modeſty of yours, I will take upon me to be ſo familiar as to ſay, you muſt accept my invitation, which that you may the more eaſily be perſwaded to do, I will tell you that my Houſe ſtands upon the margin of one of the fineſt Rivers for Trouts, and grayling in *England*; that I have lately built a little Fiſhing Houſe upon it, dedicated to Anglers, over the door of which you will ſee the two firſt Letters of my Father *Walton's* name and mine twiſted in *Cypher*; * that you ſhall lye in the ſame Bed he has ſometimes been contented with, and have ſuch Country entertainment, as my Friends ſometimes accept, and be as welcome too, as the beſt Friend of them all.

* *as in the Title page.*

Viat. No doubt Sir, but my Maſter *Walton* found good reaſon to be ſatisfied with his entertainment in your Houſe; for you who are ſo friendly to a meer Stranger who deſerves ſo little, muſt needs be exceedingly kind and free to him who deſerves ſo much.

Piſcat. Believe me, no! and ſuch as are intimately acquainted with that Gentleman, know him

him to be a Man, who will not endure to be treated like a Stranger. So that his acceptation of my poor entertainments, has ever been a pure effect of his own humility, and good nature, and nothing elſe. But Sir, we are now going down the Spittle Hill into the Town, and therefore let me importune you ſuddainly to reſolve, and moſt earneſtly not to deny me.

Viat. In truth Sir, I am ſo overcome by your Bounty, that I find I cannot , but muſt render my ſelf wholly to be diſpos'd by you.

Piſcat. Why that's heartily, and kindly ſpoken, and I as heartily thank you; and being you have abandon'd your ſelf to my conduct, we will only call and drink a glaſs on Horſeback at the *Talbot*, and away.

Viat. I attend you, but what pretty River is this, that runs under this Stone-Bridg? has it a name?

Piſcat. Yes, 'Tis call'd *Henmore*, and has in it both Trout, and Grayling; but you will meet with one or two better anon. And ſo ſoon as we are paſt through the Town, I will endeavour by ſuch diſcourſe as beſt likes you to paſs away the time, till you come to your ill Quarters.

Viat. we can talk of nothing with which I ſhall be more delighted than of Rivers and Angling.

Piſcat. Let thoſe be the Subjects then, but we

we are now come to the *Talbot*, what will you drink Sir, Ale, or Wine.

Viat. Nay, I am for the Country liquor, *Derby-ſhire* Ale, if you pleaſe; for a Man ſhould not methinks come from *London* to drink Wine in the Peak.

Piſcat. You are in the right; and yet let me tell you, you may drink worſe *French-wine* in many Taverns in *London*, than they have ſometimes at this Houſe. What hoe! bring us a Flaggon of your beſt Ale, and now Sir my ſervice to you, a good health to the honeſt Gentleman you know of, and you are welcome into the Peak.

Viat. I thank you Sir, and preſent you my ſervice again, and to all the honeſt Brothers of the Angle.

Piſcat. I'le pledg you Sir; ſo, there's for your Ale, and farewell. Come Sir, let us be going; for the ſun grows low, and I would have you look about you as you ride; for you will ſee an odd Country, and ſights, that will ſeem ſtrange to you.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

PISCAT. So Sir, now we are got to the top of the Hill out of Town, look about you, and tell me how you like the Country.

Viat. Bleſs me! what Mountains are here! are we not in *Wales?*

Piſcat. No, but in almoſt as Mountainous a Country, and yet theſe Hills though high, bleak, and craggy, breed and feed good Beef, and Mutton above ground, and afford good ſtore of Lead within.

Viat. They had need of all thoſe commodities to make amends for the ill Land-ſchape: But I hope our way does not lye over any of theſe; for I dread a *precipice.*

Piſcat. Believe me but it does, and down one eſpecially, that will appear a little terrible to a Stranger; though the way is paſſable enough, and ſo paſſable, that we who are Natives of theſe Mountains, and acquainted with them, diſdain to alight.

Viat. I hope though that a Forraigner is priviledged to uſe his own diſcretion, and that I may have the liberty to entruſt my neck to the fidelity of my own feet, rather than to thoſe of my Horſe; for I have no more at home.

Piſca.

Piſcat. 'Twere hard elſe. But in the mean time I think 'twere beſt while this way is pretty even, to mend our pace, that we may be paſt that Hill I ſpeak of, to the end your apprehenſion may not be doubled for want of light to diſcern the eaſineſs of the deſcent.

Viat. I am willing to put forward as faſt as my Beaſt will give me leave; though I fear nothing in your Company. But what pretty River is this we are going into?

Piſcat. Why this Sir is called *Bently* Brook, and is full of very good Trout, and Grayling; but ſo encumbred with wood in many places, as is troubleſom to an Angler.

Viat. Here are the prettieſt Rivers, and the moſt of them in this Country that ever I ſaw; do you know how many you have in the Country?

Piſcat. I know them all, and they were not hard to reckon, were it worth the trouble; but the moſt conſiderable of them I will preſently name you. And to begin where we now are (for you muſt know we are now upon the very skirts of *Derby-ſhire*) we have firſt the River *Dove*, that we ſhall come to by and by, which divides the two Counties of *Derby*, and *Stafford* for many Miles together, and is ſo call'd from the ſwiftneſs of its current, and that ſwiftneſs occaſion'd by the declivity of its courſe, and by being ſo ſtraitned in that courſe

betwixt

betwixt the Rocks; by which, and those very high ones, it is hereabout for four, or five Miles confin'd into a very narrow stream. A River that from a contemptible Fountain (which I can cover with my Hat) by the confluence of other Rivers, Rivulets, Brooks, and Rills, is swell'd, (before it fall into *Trent* a little below *Egginton*, (where it loses the name,) to such a breadth, and depth, as to be in most places navigable, were not the passage frequently interrupted with Fords, and Wires, and has as fertile Bancks, as any River in *England*, none excepted. And this River from its head for a Mile or two is a black water (as all the rest of the *Derby-shire* Rivers of note, originally are, for they all spring from the Mosses) but is in a few Miles travel so clarified by the addition of several clear, and very great springs (bigger than it self) which gush out of the Lime-stone Rocks, that before it comes to my House, which is but six, or seven Miles from its source, you will find it one of the purest Chrystalline streams you have seen.

Viat. does *Trent* spring in these parts?

Piscat. Yes in these parts; not in this County, but somewhere towards the upper end of *Stafford-shire*, I think not far from a place call'd *Trentham*, and thence runs down not far from *Stafford* to *Wolsly* Bridg, and washing the skirts and purlews of the Forrest of *Needwood* runs down

down to *Burton* in the ſame County; thence it comes into this where we now are, and running by *Swarkſton*, and *Dunnington*, receives *Derwent* at *Wildou*, and ſo to *Nottingham*, thence to *Newark*, and by *Gainsborough*, to *Kingſton* upon *Hull*, where it takes the name of *Humber*, and thence falls into the Sea: but that the Map will beſt inform you.

Viat. Know you whence this River *Trent* derives its name?

Piſcat. No indeed, and yet I have heard it often diſcourſt upon, when ſome have given its denomination from the forenamed *Trentham*; though that ſeems rather a derivative from it; others have ſaid 'tis ſo call'd from thirty Rivers that fall into it, and there loſe their names, which cannot be neither, becauſe it carries that name from its very Fountain, before any other Rivers fall into it; others derive it from thirty ſeveral ſorts of Fiſh that breed there, and that is the moſt likely derivation: But be it how it will, it is doubtleſs one of the fineſt Rivers in the World, and the moſt abounding with excellent Salmon, and all ſorts of delicate Fiſh.

Viat. Pardon me Sir for tempting you into this digreſſion, and then proceed to your other Rivers; for I am mightily delighted with this diſcourſe.

Piſcat. It was no interruption, but a very ſea-

ſeaſonable queſtion; for *Trent* is not only one of our *Derby-ſhire* Rivers, but the chief of them, and into which all the reſt pay the Tribute of their names; which I had perhaps forgot to inſiſt upon, being got to the other end of the County, had you not awoke my memory; But I will now proceed, and the next River of note (for I will take them as they lye Eaſtward from us) is the River *Wye*; I ſay of note, for we have two leſſer betwixt us and it, namely *Lathkin*, and *Bradford*, of which *Lathkin* is by many degrees the pureſt, and moſt tranſparent ſtream, that I ever yet ſaw either at home or abroad, and breeds 'tis ſaid, the reddeſt, and the beſt Trouts in *England*; but neither of theſe are to be reputed Rivers, being no better than great ſprings. The River *Wye* then has its ſource near unto *Buxtons*, a Town ſome ten Miles from hence, famous for a warm Bath, and which you are to ride through in your way to *Mancheſter*, a black water too at the Fountain; but by the ſame reaſon with *Dove*, becomes very ſoon a moſt delicate clear River, and breeds admirable Trout, and Grayling, reputed by thoſe, who, by living upon its Banks are partial to it, the beſt of any, and this, running down by *Aſhford*, *Bakewell*, and *Haddon*; at a Town a little lower call'd *Rowſly* falls into *Derwent*, and there loſes its name. The next in order is *Derwent* a black water too, and that not only from

from its Fountain, but quite through its progress, not having these Chrystal springs to wash and cleanse it, which the two forementioned have; but abounds with Trout and Grayling (such as they are) towards its source, and with *Salmon* below; and this River from the upper and utmost part of this County, where it springs, taking its course by *Chatsworth*, *Darly*, *Matlock*, *Derby*, *Barrow-Ash*, and *Awberson*, falls into *Trent* at a place call'd *Wildon*, and there loses its name. The East side of this County of *Derby* is bounded by little inconsiderable Rivers, as *Awbir*, *Eroway*, and the like, scarce worth naming, but Trouty too, and further we are not to enquire. But Sir I have carried you, as a Man may say by water, till we are now come to the descent of the formidable Hill I told you of, at the foot of which runs the River *Dove*, which I cannot but love above all the rest, and therefore prepare your self to be a little frighted.

Viat. Sir, I see you would fortifie me, that I should not shame my self: but I dare follow where you please to lead me, and I see no danger yet; for the descent methinks is thus far green, even, and easy.

Pisc. You will like it worse presently when you come to the brow of the Hill, and now we are there, what think you?

Viat. What do I think? why I think

it the ſtrangeſt place that ever ſure Men, and Horſes went down, and that (if there be any ſafety at all) the ſafeſt way is to alight.

Piſc. I think ſo too for you, who are mounted upon a Beaſt not acquainted with theſe ſlippery ſtones: and though I frequently ride down, I will alight too to bear you company, and to lead you the way, and if you pleaſe my Man ſhall lead your Horſe.

Viat. Marry Sir, and thank you too, for I am afraid I ſhall have enough to do to look to my ſelf; and with my Horſe in my hand ſhould be in a double fear, both of breaking my neck, and my Horſe's falling on me, for it is as ſteep as a penthouſe.

Piſc. To look down from hence it appears ſo, I confeſs, but the path winds and turns, and will not be found ſo troubleſom.

Viat. Would I were well down though! Hoiſt thee! there's one fair ſcape! theſe ſtones are ſo ſlippery I cannot ſtand! yet again! I think I were beſt lay my heeles in my neck, and tumble down.

Piſc. If you think your heeles will defend your neck, that is the way to be ſoon at the bottom; but give me your hand at this broad ſtone, and then the worſt is paſt.

Viat. I thank you Sir, I am now paſt it, I can go my ſelf. What's here the ſign of a Bridg? Do you uſe to Travel with wheel-barrows in this Country? *Piſc.*

Piſc. Not that I ever ſaw Sir, why do you ask that queſtion?

Viat. Becauſe this Bridg certainly was made for nothing elſe; why a mouſe can hardly go over it: 'Tis not two fingers broad.

Piſc. You are pleaſant, and I am glad to ſee you ſo: but I have rid over the Bridg many a dark night.

Viat. Why according to the *French* proverb, and 'tis a good one among a great many of worſe ſenſe and ſound that language abounds in, *Ce que Dieu garde, eſt bien gardé.* They, whom God takes care of are in ſafe protection: but, let me tell you, I would not ride over it for a thouſand pounds, nor fall off it for two; and yet I think I dare venture on foot, though if you were not by to laugh at me: I ſhould do it on all four.

Piſc. Well Sir, your mirth becomes you, and I am glad to ſee you ſafe over, and now you are welcome into *Stafford-ſhire.*

Viat. How *Stafford-ſhire*! what do I there trow! there is not a word of *Stafford-ſhire* in all my direction.

Piſc. You ſee you are betray'd into it; but it ſhall be in order to ſomething that will make amends; and 'tis but an ill Mile or two out of your way.

Viat. I believe all things Sir, and doubt nothing. Is this your beloved River *Dove.* 'Tis

clear, and ſwift indeed, but a very little one.

Piſc. You ſee it here at the worſt; we ſhall come to it anon again after two Miles riding, and ſo near as to lye upon the very Banks.

Viat. Would we were there once; but I hope we have no more of theſe Alpes to paſs over.

Piſc. No, no Sir, only this aſcent before you, which you ſee is not very uneaſy, and then you will no more quarrel with your way.

Viat. Well, if ever I come to *London* (of which many a Man there, if he were in my place would make a queſtion;) I will ſit down and write my Travels, and like *Tom Coriate* print them at my own charge. Pray what do you call this Hill we come down?

Piſc. We call it *Hanſon Toot.*

Viat. Why farewell *Hanſon Toot*, I'le no more on thee; I'le go twenty Miles about firſt: Puh. I ſweat, that my ſhirt ſticks to my back.

Piſc. Come Sir, now we are up the Hill, and now how do you?

Viat. Why very well I humbly thank you Sir, and warm enough I aſſure you. What have we here, a Church! As I'me an honeſt Man a very pretty Church! Have you Churches in this Country Sir?

Piſc.

Piſc. You ſee we have: but had you ſeen none, why ſhould you make that doubt Sir?

Viat. Why, if you will not be angry, I'le tell you, I thought my ſelf a Stage, or two beyond *Chriſtendom.*

Piſc. Come, come, wee'l reconcile you to our Country before we part with you; if ſhewing you good ſport with Angling will do't.

Viat. My reſpect to you, and that together may do much Sir; otherwiſe, to be plain with you, I do not find my ſelf much inclin'd that way.

Piſc. Well Sir, your raillery upon our Mountains has brought us almoſt home; and look you where the ſame River of *Dove* has again met us to bid you welcome, and to invite you to a diſh of Trouts to morrow.

Viat. Is this the ſame we ſaw at the foot of *Penmen-Maure?* It is much a finer River here.

Piſc. It will appear yet much finer to morrow. But look you Sir here appears the Houſe, that is now like to be your Inn, for want of a better.

Viat. It appears on a ſuddain, but not before 'twas lookt for, it ſtands prettily, and here's vvood about it too, but ſo young, as appears to be of your ovvn planting.

Pisc. It is so, will it please you to alight Sir; and now permit me after all your pains and dangers to take you in my arms, and to assure you, that you are infinitely welcome.

Viat. I thank you Sir, and am glad with all my heart I am here, for, in down right truth, I am exceeding weary.

Pisc. You will sleep so much the better; you shall presently have a light supper, and to bed. Come, Sirs, lay the Cloth, and bring what you have presently, and let the Gentleman's Bed be made ready in the mean time in my Father *Waltons* Chamber; and now Sir here is my service to you, and once more welcome.

Viat. I marry Sir this glass of good Sack has refresht me, and I'le make as bold with your meat; for the Trot has got me a good stomach.

Pisc. Come Sir fall to then, you see my little supper is always ready when I come home, and I'le make no Stranger of you.

Viat. That your Meal is so soon ready is a sign your Servants know your certain hours, Sir; I confess I did not expect it so soon; but now 'tis here, you shall see I will make my self no Stranger.

Pisc. Much good do your heart, and I thank you for that friendly word: and now Sir my service to you in a Cup of *More-Lands* Ale: for

for you are now in the *More-Lands*, but within a ſpit, and a ſtride of the peak; fill my Friend his Glaſs.

Viat. Believe me you have good Ale in the *More-Lands*; far better than that at *Aſhborn*.

Piſc. That it may ſoon be: for *Aſhborn* has (which is a kind of a Riddle) always in it the beſt Maulſt, and the worſt Ale in *England*. Come take away, and bring us ſome pipes, and a bottle of Ale, and go to your own Suppers. Are you for this diet Sir?

Viat. Yes Sir, I am for one pipe of Tobacco; and I perceive yours is very good by the ſmell.

Piſc. The beſt I can get in *London* I aſſure you: But Sir, now you have thus far comply'd with my deſigns, as to take a troubleſom Journey into an ill Country, only to ſatisfie me; how long may I hope to enjoy you?

Viat. Why truly Sir, as long as I conveniently can; and longer I think you would not have me.

Piſc. Not to your inconvenience by any means Sir, but I ſee you are weary, and therefore I will preſently wait on you to your Chamber, where take Counſel of your pillow, and to morrow reſolve me. Here take the lights, and pray follow them, Sir; Here you are like to lye, and now I have ſhew'd you

your Lodging, I beſeech you command any thing you want, and ſo I wiſh you good reſt.

Viat. Good night *Sir*,

CHAP. III.

PISC. Good morrow *Sir*, what up and dreſt ſo early?

Viat. Yes *Sir*, I have been dreſt this half hour; for I reſted ſo well, and have ſo great a mind either to take, or to ſee a Trout taken in your fine River, that I could no longer lye a bed.

Piſc. I am glad to ſee you ſo brisk this morning, and ſo eager of ſport; though I muſt tell you, this day proves ſo calm, and the Sun riſes ſo bright, as promiſes no great ſucceſs to the Angler: but however we'l try, and one way or other we ſhall ſure do ſomething. What will you have to your breakfaſt, or what will you drink this Morning.

Viat. For Breakfaſt I never eat any, and for Drink am very indifferent; but if you pleaſe to call for a Glaſs of Ale, I'me for you; and let it be quickly if you pleaſe: for I long to ſee the little Fiſhing-houſe you ſpoke of, and to be at my Leſſon.

Piſc.

Pisc. Well *Sir*, You see the Ale is come without Calling; for though I do not know yours, my people know my diet, which is always one Glass so soon as I am dress't, and no more till Dinner, and so my Servants have served you.

Viat. My thanks, and now if you please let us look out this fine morning.

Pisc. With all my heart, Boy take the Key of my Fishing-house, and carry down those two Angle-Rods in the Hall window thither, with my Fish-pannier, Pouch, and landing Net, and stay you there till we come. Come *Sir* we'l walk after, where by the way I expect you should raise all the exceptions against our Country you can.

Viat. Nay *Sir*, do not think me so ill natur'd, nor so uncivil, I only made a little bold with it last night to divert you, and was only in jeast.

You were then in as good earnest as I am now with you: but had you been really angry at it, I could not blame you: For, to say the truth, it is not very taking at first sight: But look you, *Sir*, now you are abroad, does not the Sun shine as bright here as in *Essex*, *Middlesex*, or *Kent*, or any of your Southern Countries?

Viat. 'Tis a delicate Morning indeed, and I now think this a marvellous pretty place.

Pisc.

Pisc. Whether you think so or no, you cannot oblige me more than to say so; and those of my friends who know my humour, and are so kind as to comply with it, usually flatter me that way. But look you *Sir*, now you are at the brink of the Hill, how do you like my River, the Vale it winds through like a Snake, and the scituation of my little Fishing-house?

Viat. Trust me 'tis all very fine, and the house seems at this distance a neat building.

Pisc. Good enough for that purpose; and here is a bowling Green too, close by it, so though I am my self no very good bowler, I am not totally devoted to my own pleasure; but that I have also some regard to other men's. And now *Sir* you are come to the door, pray walk in, and there we will sit, and talk as long as you please.

Viat. Stay, what's here over the door? *Piscatoribus sacrum.* * Why then I perceive I have some Title here, for I am one of them, though one of the worst, and here below it is the Cifer too you spoke of, and 'tis prettily contriv'd. Has my Master *Walton* ever been here to see it; for it seems new built?

* *There is under this* Motto, *the* Cifer *mentioned in the Title Page and some part of the* Fishing-house *has been discrib'd; but, the pleasantness of the River, Mountains, and Meadows about it, cannot; unless Sir* Philip Sidney, *or Mr.* Cotton's Father *were again alive to do it.*

Pisc.

Piſc. Yes he ſaw it cut in the ſtone before it was ſet up; but never in the poſture it now ſtands: for the houſe was but building when he was laſt here, and not rais'd ſo high as the Arch of the dore, and I am afraid he will not ſee it yet; for he has lately writ me word he doubts his coming down this Summer, which I do aſſure you was the worſt news he could poſſibly have ſent me.

Viat. Men muſt ſometimes mind their affairs to make more room for their pleaſures; and 'tis odds he is as much diſpleas'd with the buſineſs, that keeps him from you, as you are that he comes not. But I am the moſt pleaſed with this little houſe of any thing I ever ſaw: It ſtands in a kind of *Peninſula* too, with a delicate clear River about it. I dare hardly go in, leſt I ſhould not like it ſo well within as without; but by your leave, I'le try. Why, this is better and better, fine lights, finely wainſcoted, and all exceeding neat, with a Marble Table and all in the middle!

Piſc. Enough, *Sir*, enough, I have laid open to you the part where I can worſt defend my ſelf, and now you attaque me there. Come Boy ſet two Chairs, and whilſt I am taking a Pipe of Tobacco, which is alwaies my Breakfaſt, we will, if you pleaſe, talk of ſome other Subject.

Viat,

Viat. None fitter then *Sir* for the time and place, than those Instructions you promis'd.

Pisc. I begin to doubt, by something I discover in you, whether I am able to instruct you, or no; though, if you are really a stranger to our clear *Northern* Rivers I still think I can; and therefore, since it is yet too early in the morning at this time of the year, to day being but the Seventh of *March*, to cast a Flie upon the water, if you will direct me what kind of Fishing for a Trout I shall read you a Lecture on, I am willing and ready to obey you.

Viat. Why *Sir*, if you will so far oblige me, and that it may not be too troublesome to you, I would entreat you would run through the whole body of it; and I will not conceal from you, that I am so far in love with you, your courtesie, and pretty Moreland Seat, as to resolve to stay with you long enough by Intervals (for I will not oppress you) to hear all you can say upon that Subject.

Pisc. You cannot oblige me more than by such a promise, and therefore without more Ceremony I will begin to tell you; that my Father *Walton* having read to you before, it would look like a presumption in me, and peradventure would do so in any other man, to pretend to give Lessons for angling after him, who I do really believe understands as much of it, at least as any man in *England*, did I not pre-

acquaint

acquaint you, that I am not tempted to it by any vain opinion of my ſelf, that I am able to give you better directions; but having from my Childhood purſued the recreation of angling in very clear Rivers (truly I think by much (ſome of them at leaſt) the cleareſt in this Kingdom) and the manner of Angling here with us by reaſon of that exceeding clearneſs, being ſomething different from the method commonly us'd in others, which by being not near ſo bright, admit of ſtronger tackle, and allow a nearer approach to the ſtream; I may peradventure give you ſome Inſtructions, that may be of uſe even in your own Rivers, and ſhall bring you acquainted with more Flies, and ſhew you how to make them, and with what dubbing too, than he has taken notice of in his *Compleat Angler*.

I beſeech you *Sir* do, and if you will lend me your Steel, I will light a Pipe the while, for that is commonly my Breakfaſt in a morning too.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

PISC. Why then *Sir*, to begin methodically, as a Maſter in any Art ſhould do (and I will not deny, but that I think my ſelf a Maſter in this) I ſhall divide Angling for Trout or Grayling into theſe three ways,

At the Top,
At the bottom, and
In the Middle.

Which three ways, though they are all of them (as I ſhall hereafter endeavour to make it appear) in ſome ſort common to both thoſe kinds of Fiſh; yet are they not ſo generally and abſolutely ſo, but that they will neceſſarily require a diſtinction, which in due place I will alſo give you.

That which we call Angling at the top, is with a Flie;
At the bottom with a ground-bait.
In the middle with a Minnow, or Ground-bait.

Angling

Angling at the Top is of two ſorts,

With a quick Flie:
or,
With an artificial Flie.

That we call Angling at the bottom is alſo of two ſorts,

By hand:
or,
With a Cork, or Float.

That we call Angling in the middle is alſo of two ſorts.

With a Minnow for a Trout:
or,
With a Ground-bait for a Grayling.

Of all which ſeveral ſorts of Angling, I will, if you can have the patience to hear me, give you the beſt account I can.

Viat. The trouble will be yours, and mine the pleaſure and the obligation: I beſeech you therefore to proceed.

Piſc. Why then firſt of Flie-Fiſhing.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Flie-Fiſhing.

PISC. Flie-Fiſhing or Fiſhing at the top, is, as I ſaid before, of two ſorts,

With a natural and living Flie:
or,
With an artificial and made Flie.

First then of the natural Flie; of which we generally uſe but two ſorts, and thoſe but in the two months of *May* and *June* only, namely the *Green Drake*, and the *Stone-Flie*; though I have made uſe of a third that way, called the *Chamblet-Flie* with very good ſucceſs for *Grayling*, but never ſaw it angled with by any other after this manner, my Maſter only excepted, who did many years ago, and was one of the beſt Anglers, that ever I knew.

Theſe are to be angled with, with a ſhort Line, not much more than half the length of your Rod, if the air be ſtill; or with a longer very near, or all out as long as your Rod, if you have any wind to carry it from you, and this way of Fiſhing we call *Daping*, *Dabbing* or *Dibling*, wherein you are always to have your Line

Line flying before you up or down the River as the wind ſerves, and to angle as near as you can to the bank of the ſame ſide whereon you ſtand, though where you ſee a Fiſh riſe near you, you may guide your quick Flie over him, whether in the middle, or on the contrary ſide, and if you are pretty well out of ſight, either by kneeling, or the Interpoſition of a bank, or buſh, you may almoſt be ſure to raiſe, and take him too, if it be preſently done; the Fiſh will otherwiſe peradventure be remov'd to ſome other place, if it be in the ſtill deeps, where he is always in motion, and roving up and down to look for prey, though in a ſtream, you may alwaies almoſt, eſpecially if there be a good ſtone near, find him in the ſame place. Your Line ought in this Caſe to be three good hairs next the hook, both by reaſon you are in this kind of angling, to expect the biggeſt Fiſh, and alſo that wanting length to give him Line after he is ſtruck, you muſt be forc't to tugg for't; to which I will alſo add, that not an Inch of your Line being to be ſuffered to touch the water in dibbling; it may be allow'd to be the ſtronger. I ſhould now give you a Deſcription of thoſe Flies, their ſhape and colour, and then give you an account of their breeding, and withal ſhew you how to keep and uſe them; but ſhall defer that to their proper place and ſeaſon.

Viat. In earneſt, Sir, you diſcourſe very rationally of this affair, and I am glad to find my ſelf miſtaken in you; for in plain truth I did not expect ſo much from you.

Piſc. Nay Sir, I can tell you a great deal more than this, and will conceal nothing from you. But I muſt now come to the ſecond way of angling at the top, which is with an artificial Flie, which alſo I will ſhew you how to make before I have done, but firſt ſhall acquaint you, that with this you are to angle with a Line longer by a yard and a half, or ſometimes two yards than your Rod, and with both this, and the other in a ſtill day in the ſtreams, in a breeze, that curles the water in the ſtill deeps, where (excepting in *May* and *June*, that the beſt Trouts will lye in ſhallow ſtreams to watch for prey, and even then too) you are like to hit the beſt Fiſh.

For the length of your Rod you are always to be govern'd by the breadth of the River you ſhall chuſe to angle at; and for a Trout River, one of five or ſix yards long is commonly enough, and longer (though never ſo neatly and artificially made) it ought not to be, if you intend to Fiſh at eaſe, and if otherwiſe, where lies the ſport?

Of theſe, the beſt that ever I ſaw are made in *York-ſhire*, which are all of one piece; that is to ſay, of ſeveral, ſix, eight, ten or twelve

twelve pieces, fo neatly piec't, and ty'd together with fine thred below, and Silk above, as to make it taper, like a ſwitch; and to ply with a true bent to your hand; and theſe are too light, being made of Fir wood, for two or three lengths, neareſt to the hand, and of other wood nearer to the top, that a Man might very eaſily manage the longeſt of them that ever I ſaw, with one hand; and theſe when you have given over Angling for a ſeaſon, being taken to pieces, and laid up in ſome dry place, may afterwards be ſet together again in their former poſtures, and will be as ſtrait, ſound, and good as the firſt hour they were made, and being laid in Oyl and colour according to your Maſter *Waltons* direction, will laſt many years.

The length of your line, to a Man that knows how to handle his Rod, and to caſt it, is no manner of encumbrance, excepting in woody places, and in landing of a Fiſh, which every one that can afford to Angle for pleaſure, has ſome body to do for him, and the length of line is a mighty advantage to the fiſhing at diſtance; and to fiſh *fine, and far off* is the firſt and principal Rule for Trout Angling.

Your Line in this caſe ſhould never be leſs, nor ever exceed two hairs next to the hook, for one (though ſome I know will pretend to more Art, than their fellows) is indeed too

few, the leaſt accident, with the fineſt hand being ſufficient to break it: but he that cannot kill a Trout of twenty inches long with two, in a River clear of wood and weeds, as this and ſome others of ours are, deſerves not the name of an Angler.

Now to have your whole line as it ought to be, two of the firſt lengths, neareſt the hook, ſhould be of two hairs a piece, the next three lengths above them of three, the next three above them of four, and ſo of five, and ſix, and ſeven, to the very top: by which means your Rod and tackle will in a manner be taper from your very hand to your hook; your line will fall much better and ſtraiter, and caſt your Flie to any certain place to which the hand and eye ſhall direct it, with leſs weight and violence, that would otherwiſe circle the water, and fright away the fiſh.

In caſting your line, do it always before you, and ſo that your flie may firſt fall upon the water, and as little of your line with it as is poſſible, though if the wvind be ſtiff, you will then of neceſſity be compell'd to drown a good part of your line to keep your flie in the water: and in caſting your flie, you muſt aim at the further, or nearer Bank, as the wind ſerves your turn, which alſo will be with, and againſt you on the ſame ſide ſeveral times in an hour, as the River wvinds in its courſe, and

you

you will be forc't to Angle up and down by turns accordingly; but are to endeavour, as much as you can, to have the wind evermore on your back, and always be ſure to ſtand as far off the Bank as your length will give you leave when you throw to the contrary ſide, though when the wind will not permit you ſo to do, and that you are conſtrain'd to Angle on the ſame ſide whereon you ſtand, you muſt then ſtand on the very brink of the River, and caſt your Flie at the utmoſt length of your Rod and Line, up or down the River as the gale ſerves.

It only remains, touching your Line, to enquire whether your two hairs next to the hook, are better twiſted, or open; and for that, I ſhould declare that I think the open way the better, becauſe it makes leſs ſhew in the water, but that I have found an inconvenience, or two, or three, that have made me almoſt weary of that way; of which one is, that without diſpute they are not ſo ſtrong twiſted, as open; another, that they are not eaſily to be faſtned of ſo exact an equal length in the arming, that the one will not cauſe the other to bagge, by which means a Man has but one hair, upon the matter, to truſt to; and the laſt is, that theſe looſe flying hairs are not only more apt to catch upon every twig, or bent they meet with; but moreover the

hook, in falling upon the water, will very often rebound and fly back betwixt the hairs, and there ſtick (which in a rough water eſpecially, is not preſently to be diſcern'd by the Angler) ſo as the point of the hook ſhall ſtand revers't, by which means your Flie ſwims backward, makes a much greater circle in the water, and till taken home to you, and ſet right, will never raiſe any Fiſh, or if it ſhould, I am ſure, but by a very extraordinary chance, can hit none.

Having done with both theſe ways of fiſhing at the top; the length of your Rod, and Line and all: I am next to teach you how to make a Flie; and afterwards of what dubbing you are to make the ſeveral Flies I ſhall hereafter name to you.

In making a Flie then (which is not a Hackle or Palmer Flie for of thoſe, and their ſeveral kinds we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak every Month in the Year) you are firſt to hold your hook faſt betwixt the fore finger and thumb of your left hand, with the back of the ſhanck upwards, and the point towards your fingers end; then take a ſtrong ſmall ſilk of the colour of the Flie you intend to make, wax it well with wax of the ſame colour too (to which end you are always (by the way) to have wax of all colours about you) and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb, to the head of

of the ſhanck, and then whip it twice or thrice about the bare hook, which, you muſt know, is done, both to prevent ſlipping, and alſo that the ſhanck of the hook may not cut the hairs of your Towght, which ſometimes it will otherwiſe do) which being done, take your Line, and draw it likewiſe betwixt your finger and thumb, holding the Hook ſo faſt, as only to ſuffer it to paſs by, untill you have the knot of your Towght almoſt to the middle of the ſhanck of your hook, on the inſide of it, then whip your ſilk twice or thrice about both hook and Line, as hard as the ſtrength of the ſilk will permit, which being done, ſtrip the feather for the wings proportionable to the bigneſs of your Flie, placing that ſide downwards, which grew uppermoſt before, upon the back of the hook, leaving ſo much only as to ſerve for the length of the wing of the point of the plume, lying revers't from the end of the ſhanck upwards, then whip your ſilk twice, or thrice about the root end of the feather, hook, and towght, which being done clip off the root end of the feather cloſe by the arming, and then whip the ſilk faſt and firm about the hook, and tought untill you come to the bend of the hook: but not further (as you do at *London*; and ſo make a very unhandſom, and, in plain *Engliſh*, a very unnatural and ſhapeleſs Flie) which being done, cut

away the end of your tought,and faſten it,and then take your dubbing which is to make the body of your Flie, as much as you think convenient, and holding it lightly, with your hook, betwixt the finger, and thumb of your left hand, take your ſilk with the right, and twiſting it betwixt the finger and thumb of that hand, the dubbing will ſpin it ſelf about the ſilk, which when it has done,whip it about the arm'd hook backward, till you come to the ſetting on of the wings; and then take the feather for the wings, and divide it equally into two parts, and turn them back towards the bend of the Hook, the one on the one ſide, and the other on the other of the ſhanck, holding them faſt in that poſture betwixt the fore finger, and thumb of your left hand, which done, warp them ſo down, as to ſtand, and ſlope towards the bend of the hook, and having warpt up to the end of the ſhanck,hold the Flie faſt betwixt the finger and thumb of your left hand, and then take the ſilk betwixt the finger, and thumb of your right hand, and where the warping ends, pinch or nip it with your thumb nail againſt your finger, and ſtrip away the remainder of your dubbing from the ſilk,and then with the bare ſilk whip it once or twice about,make the wings to ſtand in due order, faſten, and cut it off; after which with the point of a needle raiſe up the dubbing gently

gently from the warp, twitch off the superfluous hairs of your dubbing, leave the wings of an equal length (your Flie will never else swim true) and the work is done. And this way of making a Flie (which is certainly the best of all other) was taught me by a Kinsman of mine, one Captain *Henry Jackson*, a near neighbour, an admirable Flie Angler, by many degrees the best Flie maker, that ever I yet met with. And now that I have told you how a Flie is to be made, you shall presently see me make one, with which you may peradventure take a Trout this morning, notwithstanding the unlikelinesse of the day; for it is now nine of the Clock, and Fish will begin to rise, if they will rise to day; I will walk along by you, and look on, and after dinner I will proceed in my lecture of Flie-Fishing.

Viat. I confess I long to be at the River, and yet I could sit here all day to hear you: but some of the one, and some of the other will do well: and I have a mighty ambition to take a Trout in your River *Dove*.

Pisc. I warrant you shall: I would not for more, than I will speak of but you should, seeing I have so extoll'd my River to you: nay I will keep you here a Month, but you shall have one good day of sport before you go.

Viat. You will find me I doubt too tractable

ble that vvay; for in good earneſt, if buſineſs vvould give me leave, and that if it vvere fit, I could find in my heart to ſtay with you for ever.

Piſc. I thank you *Sir*, for that kind expreſſion, and now let me look out my things to make this flie.

CHAP. VI.

PISC. Boy, come give me my dubbing bagg here preſently; and now Sir, ſince I find you ſo honeſt a man, I will make no ſcruple to lay open my Treaſure before you.

Viat. Did every any one ſee the like! What a heap of Trumpery is here! certainly never an Angler in *Europe* has his ſhop half ſo well furniſht, as you have.

Piſc. You perhaps may think now, that I rake together this Trumpery, as you call it, for ſhew only, to the end that ſuch as ſee it (which are not many I aſſure you) may think me a great Maſter in the Art of angling: but let me tell you here are ſome colours (as contemptible as they ſeem here) that are very hard to be got, and ſcarce any one of them, which

if

if it should be loſt, I ſhould not miſs, and be concern'd about the loſs of it too, once in the year; but look you, Sir, amongſt all theſe I will chuſe out theſe two colours only, of which this is Bears-hair, this darker no great matter what; but I am ſure I have kill'd a great deal of Fiſh with it; and with one or both of theſe you ſhall take Troue or Grayling this very day, notwithſtanding all diſadvantages, or my Art ſhall fail me.

Viat. You promiſe comfortably, and I have a great deal of reaſon to believe every thing you ſay; but I wiſh the Flie were made, that we were at it.

Piſc. That will not be long in doing: and pray obſerve then. You ſee firſt how I hold my hook, and thus I begin. Look you here are my firſt two or three whips about the bare hook, thus I joyn hook and line, thus I put on my wings, thus I twirle and lap on my dubbing, thus I work it up towards the head, thus I part my wings, thus I nip my ſuperfluous dubbing from my ſilk, thus faſten, thus trim and adjuſt my Flie, and there's a Flie made, and now how do you like it?

Viat. In earneſt, admirably well, and it perfectly reſembles a Flie; but we about *London* make the bodies of our Flies both much bigger and longer, ſo long as even almoſt to the very beard of the Hook.

Piſc.

Pisc. I know it very well, and had one of those Flies given me by an honest Gentleman, who came with my Father *Walton* to give me a Visit, which (to tell you the truth) I hung in my parlour Window to laugh at: but *Sir*, you know the Proverb, *They who go to* Rome, *must do as they at* Rome *do*; and believe me you must here make your Flies after this fashion, or you will take no Fish. Come I will look you out a Line, and you shall put it on, and try it. There *Sir*, now I think you are fitted, and now beyond the farther end of the walk you shall begin, I see at that bend of the water above, the air crisps the water a little, knit your Line first here, and then go up thither, and see what you can do.

Viat. Did you see that *Sir?*

Pisc. Yes, I saw the Fish, and he saw you too, which made him turn short, you must fish further off, if you intend to have any sport here, this is no *New-River* let me tell you. That was a good Trout believe me, did you touch him?

Viat. No, I would I had, we would not have parted so. Look you there was another; this is an excellent Flie.

Pisc. That Flie I am sure would kill Fish, if the day were right; but they only chew at it I see, and will not take it. Come *Sir*, let us return back to the Fishing-house; this still water

ter I ſee will not do our buſineſs to day; you ſhall now, if you pleaſe, make a Flie your ſelf, and try what you can do in the ſtreams with that, and I know a Trout taken with a Flie of your own making will pleaſe you better than twenty with one of mine. Give me that Bag again, *Sirrah*; look you *Sir*, there is a hook, tought, ſilk, and a feather for the wings, be doing with thoſe, and I will look you out a Dubbing, that I think will do.

Viat. This is a very little hook.

Piſc. That may ſerve to inform you, that it is for a very little Flie, and you muſt make your wings accordingly; for as the caſe ſtands it muſt be a little Flie, and a very little one too, that muſt do your buſineſs. Well ſaid! believe me you ſhift your fingers very handſomely; I doubt I have taken upon me to teach my Maſter. So here's your dubbing now.

Viat. This dubbing is very black.

Piſc. It appears ſo in hand; but ſtep to the doors and hold it up betwixt your eye and the Sun, and it will appear a ſhining red; let me tell you never a man in *England* can diſcern the true colour of a dubbing any way but that, and therefore chuſe always to make your Flies on ſuch a bright Sun-ſhine day as this, which alſo you may the better do, becauſe it is worth nothing to fiſh in, here put it on, and be ſure to make the body of your Flie as ſlender as you can.

can. Very good! Upon my word you have made a marvellous handſom Flie.

Viat. I am very glad to hear it; 'tis the firſt that ever I made of this kind in my life.

Piſc. Away, away! You are a Doctor at it! but I will not commend you too much, leſt I make you proud. Come put it on, and you ſhall now go downward to ſome ſtreams betwixt the rocks below the little foot bridg you ſee there, and try your Fortune. Take heed of ſlipping into the water as you follow me under this rock: So now you are over, and now throw in.

Viat. This is a fine ſtream indeed: There's one! I have him!

Piſc. And a precious catch you have of him; pull him out! I ſee you have a tender hand: This is a diminutive Gentleman, e'en throw him in again, and let him grow till he be more worthy your anger.

Viat. Pardon me, *Sir*, all's Fiſh that comes to'th' hook with me now. Another!

Piſc. And of the ſame ſtanding.

Viat. I ſee I ſhall have good ſport now: Another! and a Grayling. Why you have Fiſh here at will.

Piſc. Come, come, croſs the Bridge, and go down the other ſide lower, where you will find finer ſtreams, and better ſport I hope than this

this. Look you *Sir*, here is a fine ſtream now, you have length enough, ſtand a little further off, let me entreat you, and do but Fiſh this ſtream like an Artiſt, and peradventure a good Fiſh may fall to your ſhare. How now! what is all gone?

Viat. No, I but touch't him; but that was a Fiſh worth taking.

Piſc. Why now let me tell you, you loſt that Fiſh by yout own fault, and through your own eagerneſs and haſte; for you are never to offer to ſtrike a good Fiſh, if he do not ſtrike himſelf, till firſt you ſee him turn his head after he has taken your Flie, and then you can never ſtrain your tackle in the ſtriking, if you ſtrike with any manner of moderation. Come throw in one again, and fiſh me this ſtream by inches; for I aſſure you here are very good Fiſh, both Trout and Grayling, lie here; and at that great ſtone on the other ſide, 'tis ten to one a good Trout gives you the meeting.

Viat. I have him now, but he is gone down towards the bottom, I cannot ſee what he is: yet he ſhould be a good Fiſh by his weight; but he makes no great ſtir.

Piſc. Why then, by what you ſay, I dare venture to aſſure you, 'tis a Grayling, who is one of the deadeſt hearted Fiſhes in the world, and the bigger he is the more eaſily taken. Look you, now you ſee him plain; I told you what he

he was, bring hither that landing net, Boy, and now *Sir*, he is your own; and believe me a good one, ſixteen Inches long I warrant him, I have taken none ſuch this year.

Viat. I never ſaw a Grayling before look ſo black.

Piſc. Did you not? Why then let me tell you, that you never ſaw one before in right ſeaſon: for then a Grayling is very black about his head, guills, and down his back, and has his Belly of a dark grey, dappled with black ſpots, as you ſee this is, and I am apt to conclude, that from thence he derives his name of *Umber*. Though I muſt tell you this Fiſh is paſt his prime, and begins to decline, and was in better ſeaſon at Chriſtmas than he is now. But move on, for it grows towards dinner-time, and there is a very great and fine ſtream below, under that Rock, that fills the deepeſt pool in all the River, where you are almoſt ſure of a good Fiſh.

Viat. Let him come, I'le try a fall with him; but I had thought, that the Grayling had been always in ſeaſon with the Trout, and had come in, and gone out with him.

Oh no! aſſure your ſelf a Grayling is a winter-fiſh: but ſuch a one as would deceive any but ſuch as know him very well indeed; for his fleſh, even in his worſt ſeaſon, is ſo firm, and will ſo eaſily calver, that in plain truth he is

is very good meat at all times; but in his perfect ſeaſon (which, by the way, none but an overgrown Grayling will ever be) I think him ſo good a fiſh, as to be little inferiour to the beſt Trout that ever I taſted in my life.

Viat. Here's another skip-jack, and I have rais'd five or ſix more at leaſt whilſt you were ſpeaking: Well, go thy way little *Dove!* thou art the fineſt River, that ever I ſaw, and the fulleſt of fiſh. Indeed, *Sir*, I like it ſo well, that I am afraid you will be troubled with me once a year, ſo long as we two live.

Piſc. I am afraid I ſhall not *Sir*; but were you once here a *May* or a *June*, if good ſport would tempt you, I ſhould then expect you would ſometimes ſee me; for you would then ſay it were a fine River indeed, if you had once ſeen the ſport at the height.

Viat. Which I will do, if I live, and that you pleaſe to give me leave, there was one, and there another.

Piſc. And all this in a ſtrange River, and with a Flie of your own making! vvhy vvhat a dangerous man are you!

Viat. I, *Sir*, but vvho taught me? and as *Dametas* ſays by his man *Dorus*, ſo you may ſay by me,

If my man ſuch praiſes have,
What then have I, that taught the Knave?

But vvhat have we got here? A Rock ſpringing up in the middle of the River! this is one of the oddeſt ſights, that ever I ſaw.

Piſc. Why, *Sir*, from that *Pike* †, that you ſee ſtanding up there diſtant from the rock, this is call'd *Pike-Pool:* and young Mr. *Izaac Walton* was ſo pleas'd with it, as to draw it in Landſchape in black and white in a blank Book I have at home, as he has done ſeveral proſpects of my houſe alſo, which I keep for a memorial of his favour, and will ſhew you, when we come up to dinner.

† *'Tis a Rock, in the faſhion of a* Spire-Steeple; *and, almoſt as big. It ſtands in the midſt of the River* Dove; *and not far from Mr.* Cotton's *houſe, below which place this delicate River takes a ſwift Carere betwixt many mighty Rocks, much higher and bigger than St* Pauls Church, *before 'twas burnt. And this* Dove *being oppos'd by one of the higheſt of them, has at laſt, forc't it ſelf away through it; and after a miles concealment, appears again with more glory and beauty than before that oppoſition; running through the moſt pleaſant Valleys and moſt fruitful Meadows, that this Nation can juſtly boaſt of.*

Viat. Has young Maſter *Izaak Walton* been here too?

Piſc. Yes marry has he Sir, and that again, and again too, and in *France* ſince, and at *Rome*, and at *Venice*, and I can't tell vvhere: but I intend to ask him a great many hard queſtions

ſtions ſo ſoon as I can ſee him, which vvill be, God vvilling, next Month. In the mean time, Sir, to come to this fine ſtream at the head of this great Pool, you muſt venture over theſe ſlippery cobling ſtones; believe me, Sir, there you vvere nimble or elſe you had been down; but now you are got over, look to your ſelf; for on my vvord if a Fiſh riſe here, he is like to be ſuch a one, as will endanger your tackle: How novv!

Viat. I think you have ſuch command here over the Fiſhes, that you can raiſe them by your vvord, as they ſay Conjurers can do Spirits, and afterward make them do vvhat you bid them: for here's a Trout has taken my Flie, I had rather have loſt a Crown. What luck's this! He vvas a lovely Fiſh, and turn'd up a ſide like a Salmon.

Piſc. O Sir, this is a War vvhere you ſometimes win, and muſt ſometimes expect to looſe. Never concern your ſelf for the loſs of your Flie; for ten to one I teach you to make a better. Who's that calls?

Serv. Sir, Will it pleaſe you to come to dinner?

Piſc. We come. You hear Sir we are call'd, and now take your choice, whether you vvill climb this ſteep Hill before you, from the top of vvhich you vvill go directly into the Houſe, or back again over theſe ſtepping ſtones, and about by the Bridg.

Viat. Nay, ſure the neareſt vvay is beſt; at leaſt my ſtomach tells me ſo; and I am now ſo well acquainted with your Rocks, that I fear them not.

Piſc. Come then, follow me, and ſo ſoon as we have din'd; we will down again to the little Houſe; where I will begin at the place I left off about Flie-Fiſhing, and read you another Lecture; for I have a great deal more to ſay upon that Subject.

Viat. The more the better; I could never have met with a more obliging Maſter, my firſt excepted; nor ſuch ſport can all the Rivers about *London* ever afford, as is to be found in this pretty River.

Piſc. You deſerve to have better, both becauſe I ſee you are willing to take pains, and for liking this little ſo well; and better I hope to ſhew you before we part.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

VIAT. Come Sir, having now well din'd, and being again ſet in your little Houſe; I will now challenge your promiſe, and entreat you to proceed in your inſtruction for Flie-fiſhing, which, that you may be the better encourag'd to do, I will aſſure you, that I have not loſt, I think, one ſyllable of what you have told me; but very well retain all your directions both for the Rod, Line, and making a Flie, and now deſire an account of the Flies themſelves.

Piſc. Why Sir, I am ready to give it you, and ſhall have the whole afternoon to do it in, if no body come in to interrupt us; for you muſt know (beſides the unfitneſs of the day) that the afternoons ſo early in *March* ſignifie very little to Angling with a Flie, though with a Minnow, or a Worm ſomething might (I confeſs) be done.

To begin then where I left off, my Father *Walton* tells us but of 12 Artificial flies only, to Angle with at the top, and gives their names; of which ſome are common with us here; and I think I gueſs at moſt of them by his deſcription, and I believe they all breed, and are taken in our Rivers, though we do not make

them either of the ſame Dubbing, or faſhion. And it may be in the Rivers about *London*, which I preſume he has moſt frequented, and where 'tis likely he has done moſt execution, there is not much notice taken of many more: but we are acquainted with ſeveral others here (though perhaps I may reckon ſome of his by other names too) but if I do, I ſhall make you amends by an addition to his Catalogue. And although the forenamed great Maſter in the Art of Angling (for ſo in truth he is) tells you that no man ſhould in honeſty catch a Trout till the middle of *March*, yet I hope he will give a Man leave ſooner to take a Grayling, which, as I told you, is in the dead Months in his beſt ſeaſon; and do aſſure you (which I remember by a very remarkable token) I did once take upon the ſixt day of December one, and only one, of the biggeſt Graylings and the beſt in ſeaſon, that ever I yet ſaw, or taſted; and do uſually take Trouts too, and with a Flie, not only before the middle of this Month, but almoſt every year in *February*, unleſs it be a very ill ſpring indeed, and have ſometimes in *January*, ſo early as New-years-tide, and in froſt and ſnow taken Grayling in a warm ſunſhine day for an hour or two about Noon; and to fiſh for him with a Grub it is then the beſt time of all.

I ſhall therefore begin my Flie-fiſhing with that

that Month (though I confeſs very few begin ſo ſoon, and that ſuch as are ſo fond of the ſport as to embrace all opportunities, can rarely in that Month find a day fit for their purpoſe) and tell you, that upon my knowledg theſe Flies in a warm ſun, for an hour or two in the day, are certainly taken.

January.

1. A red brown with wings of the Male of a Malard almoſt white: the dubbing of the tail of a black long coated Cur, ſuch as they commonly make muffs of; for the hair on the tail of ſuch a Dog dies, and turns to a red Brown, but the hair of a ſmoth coated Dog of the ſame colour will not do, becauſe it will not dye, but retains its natural colour, and this flie is taken in a warm ſun, this whole Month thorough.

2. There is alſo a very little bright Dun Gnat, as little as can poſſibly be made, ſo little as never to be fiſht with, with above one hair next the hook, and this is to be made of a mixt dubbing of Martins fur, and the white of a Hares ſcut; with a very white, and ſmall wing; and 'tis no great matter how fine you fiſh, for nothing will riſe in this Month but a Grayling, and of them I never at this ſeaſon ſaw any taken with a Flie, of above a foot

long in my life: but of little ones about the bigneſs of a ſmelt in a warm day, and a glowing Sun, you may take enough with theſe two Fiſhes, and they are both taken the whole North through.

February.

1. Where the Red-brown of the laſt Month ends, another almoſt of the ſame colour begins with this, ſaving that the dubbing of this muſt be of ſomething a blacker colour, and both of them warpt on with red ſilk; the dubbing that ſhould make this Flie, and that is the trueſt colour, is to be got of the black ſpot of a Hogs ear: not that a black ſpot in any part of the Hog will not afford the ſame colour; but that the hair in that place is by many degrees ſofter, and more fit for the purpoſe: his wing muſt be as the other, and this kills all this Month, and is call'd the leſſer Red-brown.

2. This Month alſo a plain Hackle, or palmer-Flie made with a rough black body, either of black Spaniels furr, or the whirl of an *Eſtridg* feather, and the red Hackle of a Capon over all, will kill, and if the weather be right make very good ſport.

3. Alſo a leſſer Hackle with a black body alſo, ſilver twiſt over that, and a red feather over all, will fill your pannier if the Month be open,

open, and not bound up in Ice, and ſnow, with very good Fiſh; but in caſe of a froſt and ſnow, you are to Angle only with the ſmalleſt Gnats, Browns and Duns you can make, and with thoſe are only to expect Graylings no bigger, than ſprats.

4. In this Month, upon a whirling round water, we have a great Hackle, the body black, and wrapped with a red feather of a Capon untrim'd; that is, the whole length of the Hackle ſtaring out (for we ſometimes barb the Hackle feather ſhort all over; ſometimes barb it only a little, and ſometimes barb it cloſe underneath, leaving the whole length of the feather on the top, or back of the Flie which makes it ſwim better, and as occaſion ſerves kills very great Fiſh.

5. We make uſe alſo in this Month of another great Hackle the body black, and rib'd over with Gold twiſt, and a red feather over all, which alſo does great execution.

6. Alſo a great Dun, made with Dun Bears Hair, and the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard near unto his tail, which is abſolutely the beſt Flie can be thrown upon a River this Month, and with which an Angler ſhall have admirable ſport.

7. We have alſo this Month the great blew Dun, the dubbing of the bottom of Bears hair next to the roots, mixt with a little blew

Camlet,

Camlet, the wings of the dark grey feather of a Mallard.

8. We have alſo this Month a Dark-Brown, the dubbing of the brown hair of the Flanck of a brended Cow, and the wings of the grey-Drakes feather.

And note, that theſe ſeveral Hackels, or Palmer Flies, are ſome for one Water, and one Skye, and ſome for another, and according to the change of thoſe, we alter their ſize, and colour, and note alſo, that both in this, and all other Months of the Year, when you do not certainly know what Flie is taken; or cannot ſee any Fiſh to riſe, you are then to put on a ſmall Hackle, if the Water be clear, or a bigger if ſomething dark, untill you have taken one, and then thruſting your finger thorough his Guils, to pull out his Gorge, which being open'd with your knife, you will then diſcover what Flie is taken, and may fit your ſelf accordingly.

For the making of a Hackle, or Palmer Flie my Father *Walton* has already given you ſufficient direction.

March.

For this Month you are to uſe all the ſame Hackels, and Flies with the other, but you are to make them leſs.

1. We

1. We have beſides for this Month a little Dun call'd a whirling Dun (though it is not the whirling Dun indeed, which is one of the beſt Flies we have) and for this the dubbing muſt be of the bottom fur of a Squirrels tail and the wing of the grey feather of a Drake.

2. Alſo a bright brown, the dubbing either of the brown of a Spaniel, or that of a Cows flanck, with a Grayling.

3. Alſo a whitiſh Dun made of the roots of Camels hair, and the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. There is alſo for this Month a Flie, call'd the Thorn Tree Flie, the dubbing an abſolute black mixt with eight or ten hairs of *Iſabella* colour'd Mohair, the body as little as can be made, and the wings of a bright Malards feather, an admirable Flie, and in great repute amongſt us for a killer.

5. There is beſides this another blew Dun, the dubbing of which it is made being thus to be got. Take a ſmall tooth comb, and with it comb the neck of a black Grey hound, and the down that ſticks in the teeth, will be the fineſt blew, that ever you ſaw. The wings of this Flie can hardly be too white, and he is taken about the tenth of this Month, and laſteth till the four and twentieth.

6. From the tenth of this Month alſo till towards the end, is taken a little black Gnat; the

the dubbing either of the fur of a black water-Dog, or the down of a young black water-Coot, the wings of the Male of a Mallard as white as may be, the body as little as you can possibly make it, and the wings as short as his body.

7. From the Sixteenth of this Month also to the end of it, we use a bright brown, the dubbing for which, is to be had out of a Skinners Lime-pits, and of the hair of an abortive Calf, which the lime will turn to be so bright, as to shine like Gold, for the wings of this Flie, the feather of a brown Hen is best; which Flie is also taken till the tenth of *April*.

April.

All the same Hackles, and Flies that were taken in *March* will be taken in this Month also, with this distinction only concerning the Flies, that all the browns be lapt with red silk, and the Duns with yellow.

1. To these a small bright brown, made of Spaniels fur, with a light grey wing; in a bright day, and a clear water is very well taken.

2. We have too a little dark brown, the dubbing of that colour, and some violet Camlet mixt, and the wing of the grey feather of a Mallard.

3. From

3. From the ſixth of this Month to the tenth, we have alſo a Flie call'd the violet Flie, made of a dark violet ſtuff, with the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. About the twelfth of this Month comes in the Flie call'd the whirling Dun, which is taken every day about the mid time of day all this Month through, and by fits from thence to the end of *June*, and is commonly made of the down of a Fox Cub, which is of an Aſh colour at the roots, next the skin, and ribb'd about with yellow ſilk, the wings of the pale grey feather of a Mallard.

5. There is alſo a yellow Dun, the dubbing of Camels hair, and yellow Camlet, or wool mixt, and a white grey wing.

6. There is alſo this Month another little brown, beſides that mention'd before, made with a very ſlender body, the dubbing of dark brown, and violet Camlet mixt, and a grey wing; which though the direction for the making be near the other, is yet another Flie, and will take when the other will not, eſpecially in a bright day, and a clear water.

7. About the twentieth of this Month comes in a Flie call'd the Horſe-fleſh Flie, the dubbing of which is a blew Mohair, with pink colour'd, and red Tammy mixt, a light colour'd wing, and a dark brown head. This flie is taken beſt in an Evening, and kills from two hours

hours before Sun ſet till twilight, and is taken the Month thorough.

May.

And now Sir, that we are entring into the Month of *May*, I think it requiſite to beg not only your attention; but alſo your beſt patience; for I muſt now be a little tedious with you, and dwell upon this Month longer than ordinary; which that you may the better endure, I muſt tell you, this Month deſerves, and requires to be inſiſted on, for as much as it alone, and the next following afford more pleaſure to the Flie-Angler, than all the reſt; and here it is that you are to expect an account of the Green Drake, and ſtone-flie, promis'd you ſo long ago, and ſome others that are peculiar to this Month, and part of the Month following, and that (though not ſo great either in bulk, or name) do yet ſtand in competition with the two before named, and ſo, that it is yet undecided amongſt the Anglers to which of the pretenders to the Title of the May-flie, it does properly, and duly belong, neither dare I (where ſo many of the learned in this Art of Angling are got in diſpute about the controverſie) take upon me to determine; but I think I ought to have a vote amongſt them, and according to that priviledg, ſhall give

give you my free opinion, and peradventure when I have told you all, you may incline to think me in the right.

Viat. I have so great a deference to your judgment in these matters, that I must always be of your opinion; and the more you speak, the faster I grow to my attention, for I can never be weary of hearing you upon this Subject.

Pisc. Why that's encouragement enough; and now prepare your self for a tedious Lecture; but I will first begin with the flies of less esteem (though almost any thing will take a Trout in *May*) that I may afterwards insist the longer upon those of greater note, and reputation; know therefore that the first flie we take notice of in this Month, is call'd the Turky-flie, the.

1. The dubbing ravell'd out of some blew stuff, and lapt about with yellow silk, the wings of a grey Mallards feather.

2. next a great Hackle; or Palmer-flie, with a yellow body ribb'd with Gold twist, and large wings of a Mallards feather dyed yellow, with a red Capons Hackle over all,

3. Then a black flie, the dubbing of a black Spaniels fur, and the wings of a grey Mallards feather.

4, After that a light brown with a slender body,

body, the dubbing twirl'd upon ſmall red ſilk, and rais'd with the point of a needle, that the ribs or rows of ſilk may appear through the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

5. Next a little Dun, the dubbing of a Bears dun whirl'd upon yellow ſilk, the wings of the grey feather of a Mallard.

6. Then a white Gnat, with a pale wing, and a black head.

7. There is alſo this Month a flie call'd the Peacock-flie, the body made of a whirl of a Peacocks feather, with a red head, and wings of a Mallards feather.

8. We have then another very killing flie, known by the name of the Dun-Cut, the dubbing of which is a Bears dun, with a little blew, and yellow mixt with it, a large dun wing, and two horns at the head, made of the hairs of a Squirrels tail.

9. The next is the Cow-Lady, a little flie, the body of a Peacocks feather, the wing of a red feather, or ſtrips of the red hackle of a Cock.

10. We have then the Cow-turd flie; the dubbing light brown, and yellow mixt, the wing the dark grey feather of a Mallard. And note that beſides theſe abovementioned, all the ſame Hackles and Flies, the Hackles only brighter, and the Flies ſmaller, that are taken in *April*, will alſo be taken this Month, as alſo all

all Browns, and Duns: and now I come to my Stone-Flie, and Green-Drake, which are the Matadores for Trout and Grayling, and in their ſeaſon kill more Fiſh in our *Derbyſhire* Rivers, than all the reſt paſt, and to come, in the whole Year beſides.

But firſt I am to tell you, that we have four ſeveral flies which contend for the Title of the May-Flie, namely,

The Green-Drake,
The Stone-Flie,
The Black Flie, and
The little yellow May-Flie.

And all theſe have their Champions and Advocates to diſpute, and plead their priority; though I do not underſtand why the two laſt named ſhould; the firſt two having ſo manifeſtly the advantage, both in their beauty, and the wonderful execution they do in their ſeaſon.

11. Of theſe the Green-Drake comes in about the twentieth of this Month, or betwixt that, and the latter end (for they are ſometimes ſooner, and ſometimes later according to the quality of the Year) but never well taken till towards the end of this Month, and the beginning of *June*. The Stone-Flie comes much ſooner, ſo early as the middle of *April*;

but is never well taken till towards the middle of *May*, and continues to kill much longer than the Green-Drake ſtays with us, ſo long as to the end almoſt of *June*; and indeed, ſo long as there are any of them to be ſeen upon the water; and ſometimes in an Artificial Flie, and late at night, or before Sun riſe in a morning, longer.

Now both theſe Flies (and I believe many others, though I think not all) are certainly, and demonſtratively bred in the very Rivers where they are taken, our Caddis or Cod-bait which lye under ſtones in the bottom of the water, moſt of them turning into thoſe two Flies, and being gather'd in the husk, or cruſt, near the time of their maturity, are very eaſily known, and diſtinguiſht, and are of all other the moſt remarkable, both for their ſize, as being of all other the biggeſt (the ſhorteſt of them being a full inch long, or more) and for the execution they do, the Trout, and Grayling being much more greedy of them, than of any others; and indeed the Trout never feeds fat, nor comes into his perfect ſeaſon, till theſe Flies come in.

Of theſe the Green-Drake never diſcloſes from his husk, till he be firſt there grown to full maturity, body, wings, and all, and then he creeps out of his cell, but with his wings ſo crimpt, and ruffled, by being preſt together in

in that narrow room, that they are for ſome hours totally uſeleſs to him, by which means he is compelled either to creep upon the flags, ſedges, and blades of graſs (if his firſt riſing from the bottom of the water be near the banks of the River) till the Air, and Sun, ſtiffen and ſmooth them! or if his firſt appearance above water happen to be in the middle, he then lies upon the ſurface of the water like a Ship at Hull (for his feet are totally uſeleſs to him there, and he cannot creep upon the water as the Stone-Flie can) untill his wings have got ſtiffneſs to fly with, if by ſome Trout, or Grayling he be not taken in the interim (which ten to one he is) and then his wings ſtand high, and clos'd exact upon his back, like the Butterfly, and his motion in flying is the ſame. His Body is in ſome of a paler, in others of a darker yellow (for they are not all exactly of a colour) rib'd with rows of green, long, ſlender, and growing ſharp towards the tail, at the end of which he has three long ſmall whisks of a very dark colour, almoſt black, and his tail turns up towards his back like a Mallard, from whence queſtionleſs he has his name of the green-Drake. Theſe (as I think I told you before) we commonly dape, or dibble with, and having gather'd great ſtore of them into a long draw box, with holes in the Cover to give them Air (where alſo they

will continue freſh, and vigorous a night or more) we take them out thence by the wings, and bait them thus upon the Hook. We firſt take one) for we commonly Fiſh with two of them at a time) and putting the point of the Hook into the thickeſt part of his Body under one of his wings, run it directly through and out at the other ſide, leaving him ſpitted croſs upon the Hook, and then taking the other, put him on after the ſame manner, but with his head the contrary way, in which poſture they will live upon the Hook, and play with their wings for a quarter of an hour, or more: but you muſt have a care to keep their wings dry, both from the water, and alſo that your fingers be not wet when you take them out to bait them; for then your bait is ſpoil'd.

Having now told you how to Angle with this Flie alive; I am now to tell you next, how to make an Artificial Flie, that will ſo perfectly reſemble him, as to be taken in a rough windy day, when no Flies can lye upon the water; nor are to be found about the Banks and ſides of the River, to a wonder, and with which you ſhall certainly kill the beſt Trout, and Grayling in the River.

The Artificial Green-Drake then is made upon a large Hook, the Dubbing, Camels hair, bright Bears hair, the ſoft down that is comb'd from a Hogs briſtles, and yellow Camlet well mixt

mixt together, the body long, and ribb'd about with green ſilk, or rather yellow waxt with green-wax, the whisks of the tail of the long hairs of ſables, or fitchet, and the wings of the white grey feather of a Mallard dyed yellow, which alſo is to be dyed thus.

Take the root of a Barbary Tree, and ſhave it, and put to it Woody viß, with as much Alum as a Walnut, and boyl your feathers in it with Rain water; and they will be of a very fine yellow.

I have now done with the Green-drake excepting to tell you, that he is taken at all hours during his ſeaſon, whilſt there is any day upon the Sky; and with a made Flie, I once took, ten days after he was abſolutely gone, in a Cloudy day, after a ſhowr, and in a whiſtling wind, five and thirty very great Trouts, and Graylings betwixt five, and eight of the Clock in the Evening, and had no leſs than five, or ſix Flies with three good hairs a piece taken from me in deſpite of my heart, beſides.

12. I ſhould now come next to the Stone-Flie, but there is another Gentleman in my way: that muſt of neceſſity come in between, and that is the Grey-Drake, which in all ſhapes, and dimenſions is perfectly the ſame with the other, but quite almoſt of another colour, being of a paler, and more livid yellow, and green, and ribb'd with black quite down his

body, with black shining wings, and so diaphanous and tender, cob-web like, that they are of no manner of use for Daping; but come in, and are taken after the Green-Drake, and in an Artificial Flie kill very well, which Flie is thus made, the Dubbing of the down of a Hogs bristles, and black Spaniels fur mixt, and ribb'd down the body with black silk, the whisks of the hairs of the beard of a black Cat, and the wings of the black grey feather of a Mallard.

And now I come to the Stone-Flie, but am afraid I have already wearied your patience, which if I have, I beseech you freely tell me so, and I will defer the remaining instructions for Flie-Angling till some other time.

Viat. No truly Sir, I can never be weary of hearing you: but if you think fit, because I am afraid I am too troublesom, to refresh your self with a glass, and a pipe; you may afterwards proceed, and I shall be exceedingly pleas'd to hear you.

Pisc. I thank you *Sir* for that motion; for believe me I am dry with talking, Here Boy, give us here a Bottle, and a Glass; and *Sir*, my service to you, and to all our Friends in the South.

Viat. Your Servant *Sir*, and I'le pledg you as heartily; for the good powder'd beef I eat at Dinner, or something else, has made me thirsty.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

VIAT. So, *Sir*, I am now ready for another Leſſon ſo ſoon as you pleaſe to give it me.

Piſc. and I, *Sir*, as ready to give you the beſt I can. Having told you the time of the Stone-Flie's coming in, and that he is bred of a Caddis in the very River where he is taken, I am next to tell you, that

13. This ſame Stone-Flie has not the patience to continue in his Cruſt, or Husk till his wings be full grown; but ſo ſoon as ever they begin to put out, that he feels himſelf ſtrong (at which time we call him a Jack) ſqueezes himſelf out of Priſon, and crawls to the top of ſome ſtone, where if he can find a chink that will receive him, or can creep betwixt two ſtones, the one lying hollow upon the other (which, by the way, we alſo lay ſo purpoſely to find them) he there lurks till his wings be full grown, and there is your only place to find him (and from thence doubtleſs he derives his name) though, for want of ſuch convenience, he will make ſhift with the hollow of a Bank, or any other place where the wind cannot come to fetch him off. His body is long, and pretty thick, and as broad at the tail almoſt, as in the

middle; his colour a very fine brown, ribb'd with yellow, and much yellower on the belly than the back, he has two or three whisks alſo at the tag of his tail, and two little horns upon his head, his wings, when full grown, are double, and flat down his back of the ſame colour, but rather darker than his body, and longer than it; though he makes but little uſe of them, for you ſhall rarely ſee him flying, though often ſwimming, and padling with ſeveral feet he has under his belly upon the water, without ſtirring a wing: but the Drake will mount Steeple height into the Air, though he is to be found upon flags and graſs too, and indeed every where high and low, near the River; there being ſo many of them in their ſeaſon, as were they not a very inoffenſive inſect, would look like a Plague; and theſe Drakes (ſince I forgot to tell you before, I will tell you here) are taken by the Fiſh to that incredible degree, that upon a calm day you ſhall ſee the ſtill deeps continually all over circles by the Fiſhes riſing, who will gorge themſelves with thoſe Flies, till they purge again out of their Guills; and the Trouts are at that time ſo luſty and ſtrong, that one of eight, or ten inches long, will then more ſtruggle, and tug, and more endanger your Tackle, than one twice as big in winter: but pardon this digreſſion.

This

This Stone-flie then we dape or dibble with as with the Drake, but with this difference, that whereas the green-Drake is common both to ſtream and ſtill, and to all hours of the day, we ſeldome dape with this but in the ſtreams, (for in a whiſtling wind a made Flie in the deep is better, and rarely, but early and late, it not being ſo proper for the mid-time of the day; though a great *Grayling* will then take it very well in a ſharp ſtream, and here and there a Trout too: but much better toward 8,9,10. or eleven of the clock at night, at which time alſo the beſt Fiſh riſe, and the latter the better, provided you can ſee your Flie, and when you cannot, a made Flie will murder, which is to be made thus: The dubbing of bears dun with a little brown and yellow Camlet very well mixt; but ſo plac'd that your Flie may be more yellow on the belly and towards the tail underneath than in any other part, and you are to place two or three hairs of a black Cats beard on the top of the hook in your arming, ſo as to be turn'd up, when you warp on your dubbing, and to ſtand almoſt upright, and ſtaring one from another, and note that your Flie is to be ribb'd with yellow ſilk, and the wings long, and very large, of the dark grey feather of a Mallard.

14. The

14. The next *May-Flie* is the black Flie, made with a black body of the whirle of an Oſtridg-feather, rib'd with ſilver twiſt, and the black hackle of a Cock over all; and is a killing Flie, but not to be nam'd with either of the other.

15. The laſt *May-Flie* (that is of the four pretenders) is the little yellow *May-Flie*, in ſhape exactly the ſame with the green Drake, but a very little one, and of as bright a yellow as can be ſeen; which is made of a bright yellow Camlet, and the wings of a white grey feather died yellow.

16. The laſt Flie for this month (and which continues all *June*, though it comes in the middle of *May*) is the Flie called the Camlet-Flie, in ſhape like a moth with fine diapred, or water-wings, and with which (as I told you before) I ſometimes uſed to dibble; and Grayling will riſe mightily at it. But the artificial Flie (which is only in uſe amongſt our Anglers) is made of a dark brown ſhining Camlet, rib'd over with a very ſmall light green ſilk, the wings of the double grey feather of a Mallard; and 'tis a killing Flie for ſmall Fiſh, and ſo much for *May*.

June

June.

From the first to the four and twentieth, the green-Drake and Stone-Flie are taken (as I told you before.)

1. From the twelfth to the four and twentieth late at night is taken a Flie, called the Owl-Flie; the dubbing of a white Weesel's tail, and a white Grey wing.

2. We have then another *Dunne*, call'd the *Barm-flie*, from it's yesty colour, the dubbing of the fur of a yellow dun Cat, and a grey wing of a Mallards feather.

3. We have also a hackle with a purple body, whipt about with a red Capons feather.

4. As also a gold twist Hackle with a purple body, whipt about with a red Capons feather.

5. To these we have this month a Flesh-flie, the dubbing of a black Spaniels furre, and blew wool mixt, and a grey wing.

6. Also another little flesh-flie, the body made of the whirle of a Peacocks feather, and the wings of the grey feather of a Drake.

7. We have then the Peacock-flie, the body and wing both made of the feather of that bird.

8. There

8. There is alſo the flying Ant, or Ant-flie, the dubbing of brown and red Camlet mixt, with a light grey wing.

9. We have likewiſe a brown Gnat, with a very ſlender body of brown and violet Camlet well mixt, and a light grey wing.

10. And another little black Gnat, the dubbing of black mohair, and a white Grey wing.

11. As alſo a green Graſhopper, the dubbing of green and yellow Wool mixed, rib'd over with green Silk, and a red Capons feather over all.

12. And laſtly a little dun Graſhopper, the body ſlender made of a dun Camlet, and a dun hackle at the top.

July.

July.

First all the ſmall flies that were taken in *June*, are alſo taken in this month.

1. We have then the Orange Flie, the dubbing of Orange Wool, and the wing of a black feather.

2. Alſo a little white dun, the body made of white Mohair, and the wings blew of a Herons feather.

3. We have likewiſe this month a Waſp-flie, made either of a dark brown dubbing, or elſe the furre of a black Cats tail, ribb'd about with yellow ſilk, and the wing of the grey feather of a Mallard.

4. Another flie taken this month is a black Hackle, the body made of the whirle of a Peacock's feather, and a black hackle feather on the top.

5. We have alſo another made of a Peacocks whirle without wings.

6. Another flie alſo is taken this month call'd the ſhel-flie, the dubbing of yellow-green Jerſey Wool, and a little white Hoggs hair mixt, which I call the Palm-flie, and do believe it is taken for a Palm, that drops off the willows into the water; for this flie I have

ſeen

ſeen Trouts take little pieces of moſs, as they have ſwam down the River, by which I conclude that the beſt way to hit the right colour is to compare your dubbing with the Moſs, and mix the colours as near as you can.

7. There is alſo taken this month a black blew Dun, the dubbing of the furre of a black Rabbet mixt with a little yellow, the wings of the Feather of a blew Pigeons wing.

Auguſt.

The ſame Flies with *July*.

1. Then another Art-flie, the dubbing of the black brown hair of a Cow, ſome red warpt in for the Tagg of his tail, and a dark wing, a killing flie.

2. Next a flie call'd the Fern-flie, the dubbing of the fur of a Hares neck, that is of the colour of Fearn, or Brackin, with a darkiſh grey wing of a Mallards feather, a killer too.

3. Beſides theſe we have a white Hackle, the body of white Mo-hair, and wrapped about with a white Hackle Feather, and this is aſſuredly taken for Thiſtle-down.

4. We

4. We have alſo this month a Harry-long-leggs, the body made of Bears dun, and blew Wool mixt, and a brown hackle Feather over all.

Laſtly in this month all the ſame browns and duns are taken, that were taken in *May*.

September.

This month the ſame Flies are taken, that are taken in *April*.

1. To which I ſhall only add a Camel-brown Flie, the dubbing pull'd out of the lime of a Wall whipt about with red Silk, and a darkiſh grey Mallards feather for the wing.

2. And one other for which we have no name; but it is made of the black hair of a Badgers skin mixt with the yellow ſofteſt down of a ſanded Hog.

October.

October.

The ſame Flies are taken this month, that were taken in *March.*

Novemb.

The ſame Flies that were taken in *February*, are taken this month alſo.

December.

Few men angle with the Flie this month, no more than they do in *January*: but yet if the weather be warm (as I have known it ſometimes in my life to be, even in this cold Country where it is leaſt expected) then a brown that looks red in the hand, and yellowiſh betwixt your eye and the Sun; will both raiſe and kill in a clear water, and free from ſnow-broth: but at the beſt 'tis hardly worth a man's labour.

And

And now *Sir*, I have done with Flie-fishing, or angling at the top, excepting once more to tell you, that of all these (and I have named you a great many very killing flies) none are fit to be compared with the Drake and Stone-flie, both for many and very great fish; and yet there are some daies, that are by no means proper for the sport, and in a calm you shall not have near so much sport even with daping, as in a whistling gale of wind, for two reasons, both because you are not then so easily discovered by the fish, and also because there are then but few flies can lye upon the water; for where they have so much choice, you may easily imagine they will not be so eager and forward to rise at a bait, that both the shadow of your body, and that of your Rod, nay of your very line, in a hot calm day will, in spite of your best caution, render suspected to them: but even then, in swift streams, or by sitting down patiently behind a willow bush, you shall do more execution than at almost any other time of the year with any other flie, though one may sometimes hit of a day, when he shall come home very well satisfied with sport with several other Flies: but with these two, the green Drake and the Stone-flie, I do verily believe I could some daies in my life, had I not been weary of slaughter, have loaden a lusty boy, and have sometimes, I do honestly assure you,

given over upon the meer account of ſatiety of ſport; which will be no hard matter to believe, when I likewiſe aſſure you, that with this very flie, I have in this very River that runs by us in three or four hours taken thirty, five and thirty, and forty of the beſt Trouts in the River. What ſhame and pity is it then, that ſuch a River ſhould be deſtroyed by the baſeſt ſort of people, by thoſe unlawful ways of fire and netting in the night, and of damming, groping, ſpearing, hanging and hooking by day, which are now grown ſo common, that, though we have very good Laws to puniſh ſuch Offenders, every Raſcal does it, for ought I ſee, *impunè*.

To conclude, I cannot now in honeſty but frankly tell you, that many of theſe flies I have nam'd, at leaſt ſo made as we make them here, will peradventure do you no great ſervice in your Southern Rivers, and will not conceal from you, but that I have ſent flies to ſeveral friends in *London*, that for ought I could ever hear, never did any great feats with them, and therefore if you intend to profit by my inſtructions, you muſt come to angle with me here in the Peak; and ſo, if you pleaſe, let us walk up to Supper, and to morrow, if the day be windy, as our daies here commonly are, 'tis ten to one but we ſhall take a good diſh of fiſh for dinner.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Pisc. A good day to you, *Sir*; I see you will alwaies be stirring before me.

Viat. Why, to tell you the truth, I am so allur'd with the sport I had yesterday, that I long to be at the River again, and when I heard the wind sing in my Chamber window, could forbear no longer, but leap out of bed, and had just made an end of dressing my self, as you came in.

Pisc. Well, I am both glad you are so ready for the day, and that the day is so fit for you, and look you I have made you three or four flies this morning, this silver twist hackle, this bears dun, this light brown and this dark brown, any of which I dare say will do; but you may try them all, and see which does best, only I must ask your pardon that I cannot wait upon you this Morning, a little business being fal'n out, that for two or three hours, will deprive me of your Company: but I'le come call you home to dinner, and my man shall attend you.

Viat. Oh *Sir*, mind your affairs by all means, do but lend me a little of your skill to these fine flies, and, unless it have forsaken me since yesterday, I shall find luck of my own I hope to do something.

Piſc. The beſt Inſtruction I can give you, is, that, ſeeing the wind curles the water, and blows the right way, you would now angle up the ſtill deep to day; for betwixt the Rocks where the ſtreams are, you would find it now too brisk, and beſides I would have you take fiſh in both Waters.

Viat. I'le obey your Direction, and ſo a good morning to you. Come young man, let you and I walk together. But heark you, *Sir*, I have not done with you yet; I expect another Leſſon for angling at the bottom, in the afternoon.

Piſc. Well, Sir, I'le be ready for you.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Pisc. Oh *Sir*, are you return'd? you have but just prevented me. I was coming to call you.

Viat. I am glad then I have sav'd you the labour.

Pisc. And how have you sped.

Viat. You shall see that, *Sir*, presently, look you *Sir*, here are three * brace of Trouts, one of them the biggest but one, that ever I kill'd with a flie in my life, and yet I lost a bigger than that, with my Flie to boo't, and here are three Graylings, and one of them longer by some inches than that I took yesterday, and yet I thought that a good one too.

* *Spoke like a South-Country man.*

Pisc. Why you have made a pretty good mornings work on't, and now *Sir*, what think you of our River *Dove?*

Viat. I think it to be the best Trout River in *England*; and am so far in love with it, that if it were mine, and that I could keep it to my self, I would not exchange that water, for all the Land it runs over; to be totally debarr'd from't.

Piſc. That Complement to the River, ſpeaks you a true lover of the Art of angling: And now, *Sir*, to make part of amends for ſending you ſo uncivilly out alone this Morning, I will my ſelf dreſs you this diſh of fiſh for your dinner, walk but into the parlour, you will find one Book or other in the window to entertain you the while, and you ſhall have it preſently.

Viat. Well *Sir*, I obey you.

Piſc. Look you *Sir*, have I not made haſte?

Viat. Believe me *Sir*, that you have, and it looks ſo well, I long to be at it.

Piſc. Fall too then; now *Sir* what ſay you! am I a tolerable Cook or no?

Viat. So good a one, that I did never eat ſo good Fiſh in my life. This Fiſh is infinitely better, than any I ever taſted of the kind in my life. 'Tis quite another thing, than our Trouts about *London*.

Piſc. You would ſay ſo, if that Trout you eat of were in right ſeaſon: but pray eat of the Grayling, which upon my word at this time, is by much the better Fiſh.

Viat. In earneſt, and ſo it is: and I have one requeſt to make to you, which is, that as you have taught me to catch Trout and Grayling, you will now teach me how to dreſs them as theſe are dreſt, which queſtionleſs is of all other the beſt way.

Piſc.

Piſc. That I will *Sir*, with all my heart, and am glad you like them ſo well, as to make that requeſt, and they are dreſt thus.

Take your Trout, waſh, and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his guts, and all the blood, wipe him very clean within, but waſh him not, and give him three ſcotches with a Knife to the bone on one ſide only. After which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much hard ſtale Beer (but it muſt not be dead) Vinegar, and a little Whitewine, and Water, as will cover the Fiſh you intend to boyl; then throw into the Liquor a good quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Lemon, a handful of ſlic'd Horſe-Radiſh root, with a handſom little fagot of Roſemary, Time, and Winter-Savory. Then ſet your Kettle upon a quick fire of wood, and let your Liquor boyl up to the height before you put in your Fiſh, and then, if there be many, put them in one by one, that they may not ſo cool the Liquor, as to make it fall; and whilſt your Fiſh is boyling, beat up the Butter for your Sawce with a Ladle full or two of the Liquor it is boyling in, and being boyld enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fiſh, and being laid in a Diſh, pour your Butter upon it, and ſtrewing it plentifully over with ſhav'd Horſe-Raddiſh, and a little pounded Ginger, garniſh your ſides of your Diſh, and the Fiſh it ſelf with a ſlic'd

Lemon, or two, and ſerve it up. A Grayling is alſo to be dreſt exactly after the ſame manner, ſaving that he is to be ſcal'd, which a Trout never is: and that muſt be done either with ones nails, or very lightly and carefully with a Knife for bruiſing the Fiſh. And note, that theſe kinds of Fiſh, a Trout eſpecially, if he is not eaten within four, or five hours after he be taken, is worth nothing.

But come *Sir*, I ſee you have din'd, and therefore if you pleaſe we will walk down again to the little Houſe, and there I will read you a Lecture of Angling at the bottom.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

VIAT. So *Sir*, Now we are here, and ſet: let me have my inſtructions for Angling for Trout, and Grayling at the bottom; which though not ſo eaſy, ſo cleanly, nor (as 'tis ſaid) ſo Gentile a way of Fiſhing, as with a Flie; is yet (if I miſtake not) a good holding way and takes Fiſh when nothing elſe will.

Piſc. You are in the right, it does ſo: and a worm is ſo ſure a bait at all times, that, excepting in a Flood, I would I had laid thouſand pounds that I kill'd Fiſh more, or leſs with it, Winter or Summer every day throughout the Year; thoſe days always excepted, that, upon a more ſerious account always ought ſo to be. But not longer to delay you, I will begin, and tell you, that Angling at the bottom is alſo commonly of two ſorts (and yet there is a third way of Angling with a Ground-bait, and to very great effect too, as ſhall be ſaid hereafter) namely.

By Hand:

or,

With a Cork, or Float.

That we call Angling by hand is of three ſorts.

The firſt with a line about half the length of the Rod, a good weighty plum, and three hairs next the Hook, which we call a running Line, and with one large Brandling, or a dew-worm of a moderate ſize, or two ſmall ones of the firſt, or any other ſort, proper for a Trout, of which my Father *Walton* has already given you the names, and ſav'd me a labour; or indeed almoſt any worm whatever; for if a Trout be in the humour to bite, it muſt be ſuch a worm as I never yet ſaw, that he will refuſe; and if you Fiſh with two, you are then to bait your hook thus. You are firſt to run the point of your hook in at the very head of your firſt worm, and ſo down through his body till it be paſt the knot, and then let it out, and ſtrip the worm above the arming (that you may not bruiſe it with your fingers) till you have put on the other by running the point of the Hook in below the knot, and upwards through his body towards his head till it be but juſt cover'd

with

with the head, which being done, you are then to ſlip the firſt worm down over the arming again, till the knots of both worms meet together.

The ſecond way of Angling by hand, and with a running Line, is with a Line ſomething longer than the former, and with Tackle made after this ſame manner. At the utmoſt extremity of your Line, where the Hook is always plac'd in all other ways of Angling, you are to have a large Piſtol, or Carabine Bullet, into which the end of your Line is to be faſtned with a Peg, or Pin even and cloſe with the Bullet, and about half a foot above that, a branch of Line, of two, or three handfuls long; or more, for a ſwift ſtream, with a Hook at the end thereof baited with ſome of the forenamed worms, and another half foot above that another arm'd, and baited after the ſame manner; but with another ſort of worm, without any lead at all above: by which means you will always certainly find the true bottom in all depths, which with the Plums upon your Line above you can never do, but that your bait muſt always drag whilſt you are ſounding (which in this way of Angling muſt be continually) by which means you are like to have more trouble, and peradventure worſe ſucceſs. And both theſe ways of Angling at the bottom are moſt proper for a dark, and muddy water, by reaſon

reaſon that in ſuch a condition of the ſtream, a Man may ſtand as near as he will, and neither his own ſhadow; nor the roundneſs of his Tackle will hinder his ſport.

The third way of Angling by hand with a Ground-bait, and by much the beſt of all other, is, with a Line full as long, or a yard and half longer than your Rod, with no more than one hair next the hook, and for two or three lengths above it, and no more than one ſmall pellet of ſhot for your plum, your Hook little, your worms of the ſmaller Brandlings very well ſcour'd, and only one upon your hook at a time, which is thus to be baited. The point of your hook is to be put in at the very tagg of his tail, and run up his body quite over all the arming, and ſtill ſtript on an inch at leaſt upon the hair, the head and remaining part hanging downward; and with this line and hook thus baited you are evermore to angle in the ſtreams, always in a clear rather than a troubled water, and always up the River, ſtill caſting out your worm before you with a light one-handed Rod, like an artificial Flie, where it will be taken, ſometimes at the top, or within a very little of the *Superficies* of the water, and almoſt always before that light plumb can ſink it to the bottom, both by reaſon of the ſtream, and alſo that you muſt always keep your worm in motion by drawing ſtill back towards

wards you, as if you were angling with a flie; and believe me, whoever will try it, ſhall find this the beſt way of all other to angle with a worm, in a bright water eſpecially; but then his rod muſt be very light and pliant, and very true and finely made, which with a skilful hand will do wonders, and in a clear ſtream is undoubtedly the beſt way of angling for a Trout, or Grayling with a worm, by many degrees, that any man can make choice of, and of moſt eaſe and delight to the Angler. To which let me add, that if the Angler be of a conſtitution that will ſuffer him to wade, and will ſlip into the tail of a ſhallow ſtream, to the Calf of the leg or the knee, and ſo keep off the bank, he ſhall almoſt take what fiſh he pleaſes.

The ſecond way of angling at the bottom is with a Cork or float; and that is alſo of two ſorts.

With a worm:
or,
With a Grub or Caddis.

With a worm you are to have your line within a foot, or a foot and half as long as your rod, in a dark water with two, or if you will

will with three; but in a clear water never with above one hair next the hook, and two or three for four or five lengths above it, and a worm of what ſize you pleaſe, your plums fitted to your Cork, your Cork to the condition of the River (that is to the ſwiftneſs or ſlowneſs of it) and both, when the water is very clear, as fine as you can, and then you are never to bait with above one of the leſſer ſort of Brandlings; or, if they are very little ones indeed, you may then bait with two after the manner before directed.

When you angle for a Trout, you are to do it as deep, that is, as near the bottom as you can, provided your bait do not drag, or if it do, a Trout will ſometimes take it in that poſture: if for a Grayling, you are then to fiſh further from the bottom, he being a fiſh that uſually ſwims nearer to the middle of the water, and lyes alwaies looſe: or however is more apt to riſe than a Trout, and more inclin'd to riſe than to deſcend even to a Ground-bait.

With a Grub or Caddis, you are to angle with the ſame length of Line; or if it be all out as long as your Rod, 'tis not the worſe, with never above on hair for two or three lengths next the hook, and with the ſmalleſt Cork, or float, and the leaſt weight of plumb you can that will but ſink, and that the ſwiftneſs

neſs of your ſtream will allow; which alſo you may help, and avoid the violence of the Current, by angling in the returnes of a ſtream, or the Eddies betwixt two ſtreams, which alſo are the moſt likely places wherein to kill a Fiſh in a ſtream, either at the top or bottom.

Of Grubs for a Grayling, the Aſh-Grub, which is plump, milk-white, bent round from head to tail, and exceeding tender with a red head; or the Dock worm, or Grub of a pale yellow, longer, lanker, and tougher than the other, with rows of feet all down his belly, and a red head alſo are the beſt, I ſay for a Grayling, becauſe, although a Trout will take both theſe (the Aſh-Grub eſpecially) yet he does not do it ſo freely as the other, and I have uſually taken ten Graylings for one Trout with that bait, though if a Trout come, I have obſerved, that he is commonly a very good one.

Theſe baits we uſually keep in Bran, in which an Aſh-Grub commonly grows tougher, and will better endure baiting, though he is yet ſo tender, that it will be neceſſary to warp in a piece of a ſtiff hair with your arming, leaving it ſtanding out about a ſtraw breadth at the head of your hook, ſo as to keep the Grub either from ſlipping totally off when baited, or at leaſt down to the point of the hook, by which means

means your arming will be left wholly naked and bare, which is neither so sightly, nor so likely to be taken; though to help that (which will however very oft fall out) I always arm the hook I design for this Bait with the whitest horse-hair I can chuse, which it self will resemble, and shine like that bait, and consequently will do more good, or less harm than an arming of any other colour. These Grubs are to be baited thus, the hook is to be put in under the head or Chaps of the bait, and guided down the middle of the belly without suffering it to peep out by the way (for then (the Ash-Grub especially) will issue out water and milk, till nothing but the skin shall remain, and the bend of the hook will appear black through it) till the point of your hook come so low, that the head of your bait may rest, and stick upon the hair that stands out to hold it, by which means it can neither slip of it self; neither will the force of the stream, nor quick pulling out, upon any mistake, strip it off.

Now the Caddis, or Cod-bait (which is a sure killing bait, and for the most part, by much, surer, than either of the other) may be put upon the Hook, two or three together, and is sometimes (to very great effect) joyn'd to a worm, and sometimes to an Artificial Flie to cover the point of the Hook; but is always to be Angled with at the bottom (when by it self espe-

especially) with the finest Tackle; and is for all times of the year, the most holding bait of all other whatever, both for Trout, and Grayling.

There are several other baits besides these few I have nam'd you, which also do very great execution at the bottom, and some that are peculiar to certain Countries, and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own place, make his own observation: and some others that I do not think fit to put you in mind of, because I would not corrupt you, and would have you, as in all things else I observe you to be a very honest Gentleman, a fair Angler. And so much for the second sort of Angling for a Trout at the bottom.

Viat. But Sir, I beseech you give me leave to ask you one question, Is there no art to be us'd to worms, to make them allure the Fish, and in a manner compel them to bite at the bait.

Pisc. Not that I know of; or did I know any such secret, I would not use it my self, and therefore would not teach it you. Though I will not deny to you, that in my younger days, I have made tryal of Oyl of Ospray, Oyl of Ivy, Camphire, Assa-fætida, juice of Nettles, and several other devices that I was taught by several Anglers I met with, but could never find any advantage by them; and can scarce believe

there is any thing to be done that way, though I muſt tell you I have ſeen ſome men, who I thought went to work no more artificially than I, and have yet with the ſame kind of worms I had, in my own ſight taken five, and ſometimes ten for one. But we'l let that buſineſs alone if you pleaſe; and becauſe we have time enough, and that I would deliver you from the trouble of any more Lectures, I will, if you pleaſe, proceed to the laſt way of angling for a Trout or Grayling, which is in the middle; after which I ſhall have no more to trouble you with.

Viat. 'Tis no trouble, *Sir*, but the greateſt ſatisfaction that can be, and I attend you.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

PISC. Angling in the middle then for a Trout or Grayling is of two sorts.

With a Pink or Minnow for a Trout:

or,

With a Worm, Grub or Caddis for a Grayling.

For the first, it is with a Minnow half a foot, or a foot within the *Superficies* of the water, and as to the rest that concerns this sort of angling, I shall wholly refer you to Mr. *Walton*'s direction, who is undoubtedly the best Angler with a Minnow in *England*; only in plain truth I do not approve of those baits he keeps in salt, unless where the Living ones are not possibly to be had (though I know he frequently kills with them, and peradventure more, than with any other, nay I have seen him refuse a living one for one of them) and much less of his artificial one; for though we do it with a counterfeit flie, me thinks it should hardly be expected, that a man should deceive a fish with a counterfeit fish. Which having said, I

ſhall only add, and that out of my own experience, that I do believe a Bull-head, with his Guill-fins cut off (at ſome times of the year eſpecially) to be a much better bait for a Trout, than a Minnow, and a Loach much better than that, to prove which I ſhall only tell you that I have much oftner taken Trouts with a Bull-head or a Loach in their Throats (for there a Trout has queſtionleſs his firſt digeſtion) than a Minnow; and that one day eſpecially, having Angled a good part of the day with a Minnow, and that in as hopeful a day, and as fit a water, as could be wiſht for that purpoſe, without raiſing any one Fiſh; I at laſt fell to't with the worm, and with that took fourteen in a very ſhort ſpace, amongſt all which, there was not to my remembrance, ſo much as one, that had not a Loach or two, and ſome of them three, four, five, and ſix Loaches, in his throat and ſtomach; from whence I concluded, that had I Angled with that bait, I had made a notable days work of't.

But after all, there is a better way of Angling with a Minnow, than perhaps is fit either to teach or to practice; to which I ſhall only add, that a Grayling will certainly riſe at, and ſometimes take a Minnow, though it will be hard to be believ'd by any one, who ſhall conſider the littleneſs of that Fiſhes mouth, very unfit to take ſo great a bait: but is affirm'd by many,

many, that he will ſometimes do it, and I my ſelf know it to be true, for though I never took a Grayling ſo, yet a Man of mine once did, and within ſo few paces of me, that I am as certain of it, as I can be of any thing I did not ſee, and (which made it appear the more ſtrange) the Grayling was not above eleven inches long.

I muſt here alſo beg leave of your Maſter, and mine, not to controvert, but to tell him, that I cannot conſent to his way of throwing in his Rod to an overgrown Trout, and afterwards recovering his Fiſh with his Tackle. For though I am ſatisfied he has ſometimes done it, becauſe he ſays ſo; yet I have found it quite otherwiſe, and though I have taken with the Angle, I may ſafely ſay, ſome thouſands of Trouts in my life, my top never ſnapt, though my Line ſtill continued faſt to the remaining part of my Rod (by ſome lengths of Line curl'd round about my top, and there faſtned with waxt ſilk, againſt ſuch an accident) nor my hand never ſlackt, or ſlipt by any other chance, but I almoſt always infallibly loſt my Fiſh, whether great, or little, though my Hook came home again. And I have often wondred how a Trout ſhould ſo ſuddainly diſengage himſelf from ſo great a Hook, as that we bait with a Minnow, and ſo deep bearded, as thoſe Hooks commonly are, when I have

ſeen by the forenam'd accidents, or the ſlipping of a knot in the upper part of the Line, by ſuddain, and hard ſtriking, that though the Line has immediately been recover'd, almoſt before it could be all drawn into the water, the Fiſh clear'd, and gone in a moment. And yet to juſtifie what he ſays, I have ſometimes known a Trout, having carried away a whole Line, found dead three, or four days after with the Hook faſt ſticking in him: but then it is to be ſuppos'd he had gorg'd it, which a Trout will do, if you be not too quick with him when he comes at a Minnow, as ſure and much ſooner than a Pike; and I my ſelf have alſo, once, or twice in my life, taken the ſame Fiſh with my own Flie ſticking in his Chaps, that he had taken from me the day before, by the ſlipping of a Hook in the arming: but I am very confident a Trout will not be troubled two hours with any Hook, that has ſo much as one handful of Line left behind with it, or that is not ſtruck through a bone, if it be in any part of his mouth only; nay, I do certainly know, that a Trout ſo ſoon as ever he feels himſelf prickt, if he carries away the Hook, goes immediately to the bottom, and will there root like a Hog upon the Gravel, till he either rub out, or break the Hook in the middle. And ſo much for this firſt ſort of Angling in the middle for a Trout.

The

The ſecond way of Angling in the middle, is with a Worm, Grub, Caddis, or any other Ground-bait for a Grayling, and that is vvith a Cork, and a foot from the bottom, a Grayling taking it much better there, than at the bottom, as has been ſaid before; and this always in a clear water, and with the fineſt Tackle.

To which we may alſo, and vvith very good reaſon, add the third way of Angling by hand with a Ground-bait, as a third way of Fiſhing in the middle, which is common to both Trout, and Grayling, and (as I ſaid before) the beſt way of Angling with a Worm, of all other I ever try'd whatever.

And now Sir, I have ſaid all I can at preſent think of concerning Angling for a Trout and Grayling; and I doubt not, have tir'd you ſufficiently: but I will give you no more trouble of this kind, whilſt you ſtay; vvhich I hope will be a good while longer.

Viat. That will not be above a day longer; but if I live till *May* come twelve Month, you are ſure of me again, either vvith my Maſter *Walton*, or without him, and in the mean time ſhall acquaint him how much you have made of me for his ſake, and I hope he loves me

well enough, to thank you for it.

Pisc. I shall be glad *Sir*, of your good Company at the time you speak of and shall be loath to part with you now; but when you tell me you must go, I will then wait upon you more Miles on your way, than I have tempted you out of it, and heartily wish you a good Journey.

FINIS.

To

To my most Honoured Friend, Charles Cotton, *Esq;*

SIR,

YOU Now see, I have return'd you, your very pleasant, and useful discourse of the Art of *Flie-Fishing*, Printed, just as 'twas sent me: for I have been so obedient to your desires, as to endure all the praises you have ventur'd to fix upon me in it. And, when I have thankt you for them, as the effects of an undissembled love: then, let me tell you *Sir*, that I will really endeavour to live up to the Character you have given of me, if there were no other reason; yet for this alone, that you, that love me so well; and always think what you speak, may not, for my sake, suffer by a mistake in your Judgment.

And *Sir*, I have ventur'd to fill a part of your Margin, by way of Paraphrase, for the Readers clearer understanding the situation both of your *Fishing-House*, and the pleasantness of that you dwell in. And I have ventur'd also to give him a Copy of Verses, that, you were pleas'd

pleas'd to ſend me, now ſome Years paſt; in which, he may ſee a good Picture of both; and, ſo much of your own mind too, as will make any Reader that is bleſt with a Generous Soul, to love you the better. I confeſs, that for doing this, you may juſtly Judg me too bold: if you do, I will ſay ſo too: and ſo far commute for my offence, that, though I be more than a hundred Miles from you, and in the eighty third Year of my Age, yet I will forget both, and next Month begin a Pilgrimage to beg your pardon, for, I would dye in your favour: and till then will live.

Sir,

London, *April.* 29*th.* 1676.

Your moſt affectionate

Father and Friend,

Izaak Walton.

THE RETIREMENT.

Stanzes Irreguliers TO Mr. *IZAAK WALTON.*

FArewell thou buſie World, and, may
We never meet again:
Here I can eat, and ſleep, and pray,
And do more good in one ſhort day,
Than he, who his whole Age out wears
Upon the moſt conſpicuous Theaters,
Where nought, but vanity and vice appears.

2.

Good God! how ſweet are all things here!
How beautiful the Fields appear!
How cleanly, do we feed and lye!
Lord! what good hours do we keep!
How quietly we ſleep!
What peace, what unanimity!
How innocent from the lewd faſhion,
Is all our buſineſs, all our recreation!

Oh,

3.

Oh, how happy here's our leasure!
Oh, how innocent our pleasure!
Oh, ye Valleys, Oh ye Mountains!
Oh, ye Groves, and Chrystal Fountains,
How I love at liberty,
By turns, to come and visit ye!

4.

Dear solitude, the Souls best friend,
That Man, acquainted with himself dost make,
And, all his makers wonders to intend,
With thee, I here converse at will,
And would be glad to do so still,
For, it is thou alone, that keep'st the Soul awake.

5.

How Calm, and quiet a delight,
Is it, alone
To read, and meditate, and write;
By none offended, and, offending none?
To walk, ride, sit, or sleep at ones own ease!
And, pleasing a Mans self, none other to displease.

Oh

6.

Oh my beloved Nymph fair Dove;
Princeſs of rivers, how I love
Upon thy flowry Banks to lye,
And view thy ſilver ſtream,
When guilded by a Summers beam!
And in it, all thy wanton fry
Playing at liberty:
And, with my Angle upon them
The all of treachery
I ever learnt induſtriouſly to try.

7.

Such ſtreams, Romes *yellow* Tyber *cannot ſhow,*
The Iberian Tagus *or Ligurian* Po;
The Mauſe, *the* Danube, *and the* Rhine
Are puddle water all, compar'd with thine:
And Loyres *pure ſtreams yet too polluted are*
With thine much purer to compare;
The rapid Garonne, *and the winding* Seine,
Are both too mean
Beloved Dove, *with thee*
To vie priority;
Nay, Tame *and* Iſis, *when conjoyn'd ſubmit,*
And lay their Trophies at thy ſilver feet.

8.

Oh my beloved Rocks *that rise*
To awe the Earth, and brave the Skies:
From some aspiring Mountains crown,
How dearly do I love,
Giddy with pleasure, to look down. (*above!*
And from the vales, to view the noble heights
Oh my beloved Caves! from dog-stars heat,
And all anxieties, my safe retreat:
What safety, privacy, what true delight,
In th' artificial night,
Your gloomy entrals make,
Have I taken, do I take!
How oft when grief has made me fly
To hide me from society,
Even, of my dearest friends, have I
In your recesses friendly shade;
All my sorrows open laid.
And, my most secret woes, entrusted to your privacy!

10.

Lord! would men let me alone;
What an over happy one
should I think my self to be!
Might I in this desart place
(*Which most Men in discourse disgrace*)
Live but undisturb'd and free!

Here,

Here, in this deſpis'd receſs
Would I, maugre Winters cold,
And the Summers worſt exceſs,
Try, to live out to ſixty full years old!
And, all the while
Without an envious eye,
On any thriving under fortunes ſmile,
Contented live, and then, contented dye.

C. C.

FINIS.

Courteous Reader.

YOU may be pleas'd to take notice, that at the Sign of the Three Trouts in St. *Paul's* Church-Yard, on the North ſide, you may be fitted with all ſorts of the beſt Fiſhing Tackle, by

John Margrave.

Sold by Rich Marriott

F H Van Hove fec

THE EXPERIENC'D ANGLER: OR, ANGLING IMPROV'D.

BEING

A General Diſcourſe

OF

ANGLING.

Imparting the Apteſt ways and Choiceſt Experiments for the taking of moſt ſorts of FISH in *Pond* or *River*.

By Col. *ROBERT VENABLES.*

The Fourth Edition much Enlarged.

LONDON,
Printed for *Richard Marriot*, 1676.

their Maſters: Beſides, thoſe Recreations are more ſubject to choler and paſſion, by how much thoſe Creatures exceed a Hook or Line in worth; And indeed in thoſe Exerciſes our pleaſure depends much upon the will and humor of a ſullen Cur, or *Kite*, (as I have heard their own paſſions phraſe them) which alſo require much attendance, care, and skill to keep her ſerviceable to our ends. Further, theſe delights are often prejudicial to the Husbandman in his Corn, Graſs and Fences; but in this pleaſant and harmleſs *Art of Angling*, a man hath none to quarrel with but himſelf, and we are uſually ſo intirely our own friends, as not to retain an irreconcileable hatred againſt our ſelves, but can in ſhort time eaſily compoſe the enmity; and beſides our ſelves none are offended, none endamaged; and this Recreation falleth within the capacity of the loweſt fortune to compaſs, affording alſo profit as well

as pleaſure; in following of which Exerciſe a man may imploy his thoughts in the nobleſt Studies, almoſt as freely as in his Cloſet.

The Minds of *Anglers* being uſually more calm and compoſed than many others, eſpecially *Hunters* and *Falkners*, who too frequently loſe their delight in their paſſion, and too often bring home more of melancholy and diſcontent than ſatisfaction in their thoughts; But the *Angler*, when he hath the worſt ſucceſs, looſeth but a Hook or Line, or perhaps (what he never poſſeſſed) a Fiſh, and ſuppoſe he take nothing, yet he enjoyeth a delightfull walk by pleaſant Rivers, in ſweet Paſtures, amongſt odoriferous Flowers, which gratifie his Senſes and delight his Mind; which Contentments induce many (who affect not *Angling*) to chooſe thoſe places of pleaſure for their Summers Recreation and Health.

But peradventure ſome may alledge

TO THE
READER.

Delight and *Pleaſure* are ſo faſt Rivetted and firmly Rooted in the Heart of Man, that I ſuppoſe there is none ſo moroſe or melancholy, that will not only pretend to, but plead for an intereſt in the ſame, moſt being ſo much enamoured therewith, that they judge that life but a living death, which is wholly deprived or abridged of all Pleaſure; and many purſue the ſame with ſo much eagerneſs and importunity, (as though they had been born for no other end) as that they not onely conſume their moſt precious time, but alſo totally ruine their Eſtates thereby: for in this looſe and licentious Age, when profuſe Prodigality paſſes for the Characteriſtical mark of true Generoſity; and Frugality (I mean not Niggardlineſs) is branded with the ig-

nominious blot of Baſeneſs, I expect not that this undervalued Subject (though it propound delight at an eaſie rate) will meet with any other Entertainment than Neglect , if not Contempt , it being an Art which few take pleaſure in, nothing paſſing for noble or delightful which is not coſtly ; as though men could not gratifie their Senſes , but with the conſumption of their Fortunes.

Hawking and *Hunting* have had their Excellencies celebrated with large *Encomiums* by divers Pens ; and although I intend not any undervaluing to thoſe noble Recreations, ſo much famed in all Ages and by all degrees, yet I muſt needs affirm , that they fall not within the compaſs of every ones ability to purſue, being, as it were, onely entailed on great perſons and vaſt Eſtates ; for if meaner Fortunes ſeek to enjoy them , *Actæon*'s Fable often proves a true ſtory, and thoſe Birds of Prey not ſeldom quarry upon their

thing, I know no ſort of men leſs ſubject to Melancholy than *Anglers*; many have caſt off other Recreations and embraced it, but I never knew any *Angler* wholly caſt off (though occaſions might interrupt) their affections to their beloved Recreation; and if this art may prove a *Noble, brave reſt* to my mind, 'tis all the ſatisfaction I covet.

I have one Requeſt for my ſelf; which is, that thou apply not what is ſpoken concerning clear and ſwift Rivers, to flow or more dark coloured waters, nor the contrary: and if ſome paſſages do appear at firſt view as if contradictory, read them again, and take them in their moſt moderate and reconcileable ſenſe, but force them not to claſh by thy Interpretation, which of themſelves intend it not; propoſing only (from different grounds and reaſons) to a further diſcovery, make particular inſtances and deductions from general Rules: But withal remember that

every

every general admits of particular exceptions, and ſo thou haſt my full ſcope and mind. To write ſo as to be plainly underſtood by every dull capacity, were to proſtitute this pleaſant Art, and render it contemptible; I deſire chiefly to ſpeak, ſo as to give Ingenuity liberty and ſcope to exerciſe it ſelf; and alſo to provoke others to correct Errors, and out of their own experience to ſupply defects, and thereby make this delightful Art complete and perfect, which would be very great content and ſatiſfaction to thy well-wiſhing Friend.

Robert Venables.

ledge that this art is mean, melancholy, and insipid: I suppose the old Answer, *De gustibus non est disputandum*, will hold as firmly in Recreations as Palats; many have supposed *Angling* void of delight, having never tried it, yet have afterwards experimented it so full of content, that they have quitted all other Recreation, (at least in its season) to pursue it, and I do perswade my self, that whosoever shall associate himself with some honest, expert *Angler*, who will freely and candidly communicate his skill unto him, will in short time be convinced, that *Ars non habet inimicum nisi ignorantem*; and the more any experiment its harmless delight, (not subject to passion or expence) probably he will be induc'd to relinquish those pleasures which are obnoxious to choler or contention (which so discompose the thoughts, that nothing during that unsettlement can relish or delight the Mind) to pursue that

Recre-

Recreation which composeth the Soul to that calmness and serenity, which gives a man the fullest possession and fruition of himself and all his enjoyments; this clearness and equanimity of Spirit being a matter of so high a concern and value in the judgments of many profound Philosophers, as any one may see that will bestow the pains to read *Seneca, De tranquillitate animi*, and *Petrarch, De utriusque conditionis statu:* Certainly he that lives *Sibi & Deo*, leads the most happy life; and if this Art do not dispose and incline the Mind of man to a quiet calm sedateness, I am confident it doth not (as many other delights) cast blocks and rubs before him to make his way more difficult and less pleasant. The cheapness of the Recreation abates not its pleasure, but with rational persons heightens it; and if it be delightful the charge of melancholy falls upon that score, and if Example (which is the best proof) may sway any thing,

TO HIS

Ingenious Friend the AUTHOR,

ON HIS

ANGLING Improv'd.

Honoured Sir,

THough I never (to my knowledg) had the happineſs to ſee your Face, yet accidentally coming to a view of this Diſcourſe before it went to the Preſs, I held my ſelf obliged in point of gratitude for the great advantage I received thereby, to tender you my particular acknowledgment, eſpecially having been for thirty years paſt, not only a Lover but a practiſer of that innocent Recreation, wherein by your judicious Precepts I find my ſelf fitted for a Higher Form ; *which expreſſion I take the boldneſs to uſe, becauſe I have read and*

practiſed

practiſed by many Books of this kind, formerly made publick; from which (although I received much advantage in the practick) yet (without prejudice to their worthy Authors) I could never find in them that height of Judgment *and* Reaſon, *which you have manifeſted in this (as I may call it)* Epitome of Angling, *ſince my reading whereof I cannot look upon ſome Notes of my own gathering, but methinks I do* puerilia tractare. *But leſt I ſhould be thought to go about to magnifie my own Judgment, in giving yours ſo ſmall a portion of its due, I humbly take leave with no more ambition than to kiſs your hand, and to be accounted*

Your humble and
thankful Servant,

J. W.

To the Author of the *Experienc'd Angler*,

By a Brother of the *Angle*.

UD's Fiſh, What have you done! y'ave half undon's,
The ART OF ANGLING to diſcloſe at once,
By Publiſhing this Book: What? you a Lover
Of the ſaid ART, and yet ſo much diſcover!
I cant but ſnap at you: Why, this ſame Book
Teacheth to ſtroy all Fiſh by Hook or Crook.
Your plain Directions when men underſtand,
No Fiſh above ground can eſcape their Hand;
For thereby *Pike*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Pearch*, *Gudgeon*, *trout*,
Etc. may have a total rout-
Pray tell's the reaſon, 'Tmuſt be no ſmall matter
That makes you ſtrive of them to clear the water.
You'r no *Recuſant*, ſure; if y'are, you'd ſtrive
More to preſerve, and keep their Race alive:
Your Book foreſhews, and makes it evident
That, *In few years, we cannot keep a Lent.*
But yet, Sir, 'Twas well done, therein to put
To every of theſe *Fiſh*, ſo fair a *Cut*;
That ſo when we o'th Fiſh deprived are,
The *Cuts* remain to ſhew what *Shape* they were.
Pardon, Sir, theſe confuſed Lines of mine;
In too much haſt, I've caſt in every Line:
I could not draw 'em ſmooth; For who could ſtay
Seeing Fiſh going all ſo plum away;
For I muſt ſay, *To catch Fiſh and to cheat 'em,*
Find who can ſurer wayes, and troth I'le eat 'em.

T. B.

THE CONTENTS OF THE CHAPTERS.

CHAP. I. *When to provide Tools, and how to make & fit them,* 1

II. *Divers sorts of Angling,* 11

III. *Of the artificial Flie,* 17

IV. *Of angling at the ground,* 31

V. *All sorts of Baits for each kind of Fish,* 47

VI. *How to find and keep your Baits,* 61

VII. *The haunts of several Fish,* 69

VIII. *What times are unseasonable to Angle in,* 75

IX. *Best times and seasons to Angle,* 78

X. *General observations,* 85

TO

THE EXPERIENC'D ANGLER: OR, Angling Improv'd.

Part. III.

CHAP. I.

When to provide Tools, and how to make them.

FOR the attaining of such Ends which our Desires purpose to themselves, of necessity we must make use of such common *Mediums*, as have a Natural Tendency to the producing of such Effects, as are in our Eye, and at which we aim; and as in any work, if

The Introduction to the ensuing Discourse.

one principal Material be wanting, the whole is at a ſtand, neither can the ſame be perfected: So in *Angling*, the end being Recreation, which conſiſteth in drawing the Fiſh to bite, that we may take them; if you want Tools though you have Baits, or Baits though you have Tackle, yet you have no part of pleaſure by either of theſe ſingly: Nay, if you have both, yet want skill to uſe them, all the reſt is to little purpoſe. I ſhall therefore firſt begin with your Tools, and ſo proceed in order with the reſt.

The time to provide Stocks and Tops.

1. In *Autumn*, when the Leaves are almoſt or altogether fallen (which is uſually about the Winter Solſtice) the Sap being then in the Root, which about the middle of *January* beginneth to aſcend again, and then the time is paſt to provide your ſelves with Stocks or Tops: you need not be ſo exactly curious for your Stocks, as the Tops; though I wiſh you to chooſe the neateſt Taper-ground you can for Stocks, but let your Tops be the moſt neat Ruſh-ground ſhoots you can get, ſtreight and ſmooth and (if for the ground-rod) near, or full two Yards long (the reaſon for that length ſhall be given preſently) and if for the Flie, of what length you pleaſe, becauſe you muſt either chooſe them

them to fit the Stock, or the Stock to fit them in a moſt exact proportion; neither do they need to be ſo very much Taper-ground as thoſe for the ground, for if your Rod be not moſt exactly proportionable; (as well as ſlender) it will neither caſt well, ſtrike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much endanger your Line. When you have fitted your ſelf with Tops, and Stocks (for all muſt be gathered in one ſeaſon) if any of them be crooked, bind them all together, and they will keep one another ſtraight; or lay them on ſome even boarded floor, with a Weight on the crooked parts, or elſe bind them cloſe to ſome ſtraight ſtaff or pole; but before you do this, you muſt breath them all, ſave the very top, in a gentle fire.

The uſe of the Reed or Cane.

For the ground-Angle, I prefer the Cane or Reed before all other, both for its length and lightneſs; and whereas ſome object againſt its colour and ſtiffneſs: I anſwer, both theſe inconveniencies are eaſily remedied, the colour by covering it with thin Leather or Parchment, and thoſe dyed into what colour you pleaſe, or you may colour the Cane it ſelf, as you ſee dayly done by thoſe that ſell them in *London*, eſpecially if you ſcrape off the ſhi-

ning yellow out-ſide, but that weakneth the Rod, the ſtiffneſs of the Cane is helped by the length and ſtrength of the top, which I would wiſh to be very much taper-grown, and of the full length I ſpoke of before, and ſo it will kill a very good Fiſh without ever ſtraining the Cane, which will (as you may obſerve) yield and bend a little; neither would I adviſe any to uſe a Reed that will not receive a Top of the fore-mentioned length. Such who moſt commend the Hazel rod (which I alſo value and praiſe, but for different reaſons) above the Cane, do it becauſe, ſay they, the ſlender Rod ſaveth the Line; but my opinion is, that the equal bending of the Rod chiefly (next to the skill of the *Angler*) ſaveth the Line, and the ſlenderneſs, I conceive, principally ſerveth to make the Flie-rod long and light, eaſie to be managed with one hand, and caſteth the Flie far, which are to me the conſiderations chiefly to be regarded in a Flie-rod; for if you obſerve, the ſlender part of the Rod (if ſtrained) ſhoots forth in length as if it were part of the Line, ſo that the whole ſtreſs or ſtrength of the Fiſh is born or ſuſtained by the thicker part of the Rod, which is no ſtronger than the ſtronger end of ſuch a Top as I did before

fore direct for the ground-rod: and you may prove what I ſay to be true, if you hang a Weight at the top of your Flie-rod, which you ſhall ſee ply and bend (in the ſtiff and thick part) more or leſs as the Weight is heavy or light. Having made this digreſſion for the Cane, I return to the making up of the top, of which at the upper or ſmall end I would have you to cut off about two foot or three quarters of a yard at moſt, and then piece neatly to the thick remaining part, a ſmall ſhoot of Black-thorn or Crab tree (gathered in the ſeaſon as before) fitted in a moſt exact proportion to the ſtrength of the Hazel, and then cut off a ſmall part of the ſlender end of the Black-thorn or Crab-tree, and lengthen out the ſame with a ſmall piece of Whalebone, made round, ſmooth and taper, all which will make your Rod to be very long, gentle, and not ſo apt to break or ſtand bent as the Hazel, both which are great inconveniences, eſpecially breaking, which will force you from your ſport to amend your top.

But when you make a Rod to Angle for the Roach, you muſt not make the top ſo tender and gentle, as I have juſt before preſcribed for the Flie, but you muſt either omit the Whalebone, or make it very ſtiff,

that ſo your Rod may exactly anſwer the motion of your hand, for the Roach being a Fiſh that only nibbleth, if you ſtrike him not juſt in that very moment of his nibbling you will miſs him, and a very tender top will fold and bend a little with a ſuddain jerk; I know the Roach will ſometimes bite ſurely, but that is ſeldom, and uſually a large one.

The making the Line.

2. To teach the way or manner how to make a Line, were time loſt, it being ſo eaſie and ordinary; yet to make the Line well, handſome, and to twiſt the hair even and neat, makes the Line ſtrong: For if one hair be long and another ſhort, the ſhort one receiveth no ſtrength from the long one, and ſo breaketh, and then the other (as too weak) breaketh alſo. Therefore you muſt twiſt them ſlowly, and in the twiſting, keep them from entangling together, which hindreth their right pleiting or bedding. Alſo I do not like the mixing of ſilk or thred with hair, but if you pleaſe you may (to make the Line ſtrong) make it all of ſilk or thred, or hair, as ſtrong as you pleaſe, and the loweſt part of the ſmalleſt Lute or Viol ſtrings, which I have proved to be very ſtrong, but will quickly rot in the water, but you may help that in having new and ſtrong to change the rotten

ten ones; but as to hair (the moſt uſual matter whereof Lines are made) I like ſorrel, white, and gray beſt; ſorrel in muddy and boggy Rivers, both the other for clear waters: I never could find ſuch vertue or worth in other colours, to give them ſo high praiſe as ſome do, yet if any other have worth in it, I muſt yield it to the pale watry green, and if you fancy that you may dye it thus; Take a pottle of Allom-water, a large handful of Marigolds, boyl them until a yellow ſcum ariſe, then take half a pound of green Copperas, and as much Verdigreece, beat them into a fine powder, put thoſe with the hair into the Allom-water, ſet all to cool for twelve hours, then take out the hair and lay it to dry.

In making your Lines you muſt put a difference betwixt one for the ground-Angle, and a Line for the Flie-Rod, your Line for the artificial Flie may be ſtronger than the ground-Line for the Trout, you may alſo in making a Line for the artificial Flie, much help your ſelf to caſt it well, for if you make the uppermoſt link twelve or twenty hairs ſtrong, and one or two hairs leſs in the next link, and ſo abate to that proportion in every link, untill you come to the Flie it ſelf: although you want

a very ſlender, gentle, and light Rod; or in caſe you be a Learner and no accurate Artiſt in caſting the Flie, yet by this means a very bungler will caſt a Flie well; you may alſo this way uſe a very long Rod of ſix or ſeven yards to manage with both hands, unto which accuſtoming your ſelf, you will in time angle as dextrouſly with ſuch a Rod, as if you had a very light one to uſe with one hand, and if you faſten your Hook, and cannot come to looſen it, you need not fear loſing above a jerk or two at moſt (though you pull to break it) in regard the Line is ſo ſtrong at the upper end. Leave a bought or bout at both ends of the Line, the one to put it to, and take it from your Rod; The other to hang your loweſt link upon, to which your hook is faſtned, and ſo you may change your hook ſo often as you pleaſe.

The ſhape of the Hook.

3. Let your hooks be long in the ſhank, and of a compaſs ſomewhat inclining to roundneſs, but the point muſt ſtand even and ſtreight, and the bending muſt be in the ſhank, for if the ſhank be ſtreight, the point will hang outward, though when ſet on it ſtand right, yet it will after the taking of a few Fiſh, cauſe the hair at the end of the ſhank to ſtand bent, and ſo (by conſequence) the point of the hook to hang

hang directly upwards. When you ſet on your hook, do it with ſtrong but ſmall ſilk, and lay your hair upon the inſide of the hook. for if on the outſide the ſilk will cut and fret it aſunder, and to avoid the fretting of the hair by the hook on the inſide, ſmooth all your hook upon a Whetſtone, from the inſide to the back of the hook ſlope-ways.

The flote.

4, Get the beſt Cork you can without flaws or holes (Quills and Pens are not able to bear the ſtrong ſtreams) bore the Cork through with a ſmall hot Iron, then put it into a Quill of a fit proportion, neither too large to ſplit it, or ſo ſmall to ſlip out, but ſo as it may ſtick in very cloſely: then pare your Cork into the form of a Pyramide, or a ſmall Pear, and into what bigneſs you pleaſe, then upon a ſmall Grindſtone, or with a Pumice make it complete, for you cannot pare it ſo ſmooth as you may grind it, have Corks of all ſizes.

To try the depth of the water.

5. Get a Muſquet or Carbine Bullet, make a hole through it, and put it in a ſtrong twiſt, hang this on your hook to try the depth of the River or Pond.

To carry your Lines or artificial Flies.

6. Take ſo much Parchment as will be about four Inches broad, and five long, make the longer end round, then take ſo many

many pieces more as will make five or six partitions, ſow them all together, leaving the ſide of the longer ſquare open, to put your Lines, ſpare links, hooks ready faſtned, and Flies ready made, into the ſeveral partitions; this will contain much (lie flat and cloſe in your Pocket) in a little room.

To ſharpen the hook that is dulled

7. Have alſo a little Whetſtone about two Inches long, and one quarter ſquare; its much better to ſharpen your hooks than a Flie, which either will not touch a well-tempered hook or leave it rough but not ſharp.

To carry Baits and other neceſſaries.

8. Have a piece of a Cane for the Bob and Palmer, with ſeveral Boxes of divers ſizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thred, Lead, Flies, &c.

9. Bags of Linnen and Woollen for all ſorts of Baits.

For Worms, Cadbait. To land great fiſh when you want an aſſiſtant.

10. Have a ſmall Pole, made with a loop at the end, like that of your Line, but much bigger, to which muſt be faſtned a ſmall Net to land great Fiſh, without which (if you want aſſiſtance) you will be in danger to loſe them: or which is better, much lighter, and leſs troubleſom, get a very large hook called a landing hook, with a ſcrew at the end, to ſcrew it into a ſocket fixed at the end of a pole, to ſtrike

ſtrike into the mouth or any part of the fiſh, and ſo draw them to land: you may alſo fit to the ſame ſocket and pole two other hooks, one ſharp to cut weeds away, the other to pull out wood.

11. Your Pannier cannot be too light: I have ſeen ſome made of Oſiers cleft into ſlender, long ſplinters, and ſo wrought up, which is very neat and exceeding light; you muſt ever carry with you ſtore of Hooks, Lines, Hair, Silk, Thred, Lead, Links, Corks of all ſizes, leſt if you loſe or break (as is uſual) any of them, you be forced to leave your ſport, and return for ſupplies. Your Pannier.

CHAP. II.

Divers ſorts of Angling: firſt, of the Fly.

AS there are many kinds and ſorts of Fiſh, ſo there are alſo various and different ways to take them; and therefore before we proceed to ſpeak how to take each kind, we muſt ſay ſomething in general of the ſeveral ways of Angling, as neceſſary to the better order of our work.

Angling therefore may be diſtinguiſhed either into fiſhing by day, or (which ſome commend Several ways of Angling.

commend, but the Cold and Dews cauſed me to diſreliſh that which impaired my health) by night; and theſe again are of two ſorts, either upon the ſuperficies of the water, or more or leſs under the ſurface thereof: of this ſort is angling with the ground-Line, (with lead, but no flote) for the *Trout*, or with lead and flote for all ſorts of fiſh or near the ſurface of the water for *Chub*, *Roach*, *&c.* or with a *Trowle* for the *Pike*, or a *Minnow* for the *Trout*; of which more in due place.

That way of angling upon or above the water, is with *Cankers*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillers*, *Cadbait*, or any worm bred on herbs or trees; or with Flies natural or artificial; of theſe laſt (*viz.* Flies) ſhall be our firſt diſcourſe, as compriſing much of the other laſt named, and as being the moſt pleaſant and delightful part of angling.

But I muſt here take leave to diſſent from the opinion of ſuch who aſſign a certain Fly to each month, whereas I am certain, ſcarce any one ſort of fly doth continue its colour and vertue one month; and generally all Flies laſt a much ſhorter time, except the ſtone-fly (which ſome call the *May-fly*) which is bred of the water-cricket, which creepeth out of the River, and gets under the ſtones by the water-ſide, and there turneth

turneth to a Flie, and lieth under the ſtones; the *May-flie*, and the reddiſh Flie with aſhy-gray wings. Beſides, the ſeaſon of the year may much vary the time of their coming in, a forward Spring bringeth them in ſooner, and a late Spring the later: For Flies being creatures bred of putrefaction, do take life as the heat doth further or diſpoſe the ſeminal vertue (by which they are generated) unto animation: and therefore all I can ſay as to time, is, that your own obſervation muſt be your beſt Inſtructor when is the time that each Flie cometh in and will be moſt acceptable to the Fiſh, of which I ſhall ſpeak more fully in the next Section; further alſo I have obſerved that ſeveral Rivers and Soils produce ſeveral ſorts of Flies, as the moſſy, boggy Soils have one ſort peculiar to them; the Clay-ſoil, gravelly and mountainous Country and Rivers, and a mellow, light ſoil, different from them all; yet ſome ſorts are common to all theſe ſorts of Rivers and Soils, but they are few, and alſo differ ſomewhat in colour from thoſe bred in another Soil.

What Fiſh riſe beſt at the Flie, both natural and artificial.

In general, all ſorts of Flies are very good in their ſeaſon, for ſuch Fiſh as will riſe at the Flie, as *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Umber*,

Umber, *Grayling*, *Bleak*, *Chevin*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *&c.* Though ſome of theſe fiſh do love ſome Flies better than other; except the Fiſh named, I know not any ſort or kind that will (ordinarily and freely) riſe at the Flie, though I know alſo ſome do Angle for *Bream* and *Pike* with artificial Flies, but I judg the labour loſt, and the knowledge a needleſs curioſity; thoſe Fiſh being taken much eaſier (eſpecially the *Pike*) by other ways: All the forementioned ſorts of Fiſh will ſometimes take the Flie much better at the top of the water, and at another time much better a little under the ſuperficies of the water, and in this your own obſervation muſt be your conſtant and daily Inſtructor (for if they will not riſe to the top, try them under) it not being poſſible (in my opinion) to give any certain rule in this particular: alſo the five ſorts of Fiſh firſt named will take the artificial Flie, ſo will not the other, except an *Oakworm* or *Cadbait* be put on the point of the hook, or ſome other Worm ſuitable (as the Flie muſt be) to the ſeaſon.

When Fiſh moſt covet ſuch ſort of flie.

You may alſo obſerve (which my own experience taught me) that the Fiſh never riſe eagerly and freely at any ſort of Flie, untill that kind come to the waters ſide; for though

though I have often at the first coming in of some Flies (which I judged they loved best) gotten several of them, yet I could never find that they did much (if at all) value them, until those sorts of Flies began to flock to the Rivers sides, and were to be found on the Trees and Bushes there in great numbers; for all sorts of Flies (where ever bred) do after a certain time come to the River's banks, (I suppose to moisten their bodies dried with the heat) and from the bushes and herbs there, skip and play upon the water, (where the Fish lie in wait for them) and after a short time die, and are not to be found; though of some kinds there come a second sort afterwards, but much less, as the *Orange Flie*; and when they thus flock to the River, then is the chiefest season to angle with that Flie: And that you may the better find what Flie they covet most at that instant, do thus:

How to find what Flie the fish at that instant most desire.

When you come first to the River in the morning, with your Rod beat upon the bushes or boughs which hang over the water, and by their falling upon the water, you will see what sorts of Flies are there in greatest numbers; if divers sorts and equal in number, try them all, and you will quickly find which they most desire. Sometimes

times they change their Flie (but its not very usual) twice or thrice in one day; but ordinarily they seek not for another sort of Flie, till they have for some days even glutted themselves with a former kind, which is commonly when those Flies die and go out. Directly contrary to our *London* Gallants, who must have the first of every thing, when hardly to be got, but scorn the same when kindly ripe, healthful, common, and cheap: but the Fish despise the first, and covet when plenty, and when that sort grow old and decay, and another cometh in abundantly, then they change; as if Nature taught them, that every thing is best in its own proper season, and not so desirable when not kindly ripe, or when through long continuance it beginneth to lose its native worth and goodness.

I shall add a few cautions and directions in the use of the natural Flie, and then proceed.

Directions in using the natural Flie.

1. When you Angle for *Chevin*, *Roach*, *Dace*, with the Flie, you must not move your Flie swiftly when you see the Fish coming towards it, but rather after one or two short and slow removes, suffer the Flie to glide gently with the stream towards the Fish; or if in a standing or very slow water, draw the Flie slowly, and not

(not directly upon him, but) sloaping and side-wise by him, which will make him more eager lest it escape him; for if you move it nimbly and quick, they will not (being fish of slow motion) follow as the *Trout* will.

2. When *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, shew themselves in a Sunshiny-day upon the top of the water, they are most easily caught with Baits proper for them; and you may choose from amongst them which you please to take.

3. They take an artificial flie with a *Cadbait* or *Oakworm* on the point of the Hook, and the *Oakworms*, when they shew themselves, is better upon the water than under, or than the flie it self, and more desired by them.

CHAP. III.

Of the Artificial Flie.

Of the artificial Flie.

BUT here I must premise, that it is much better to learn how to make a flie by sight, than by any Paper-direction can possibly be expressed, in regard the Terms of Art do in most parts of *England* differ, and also several sorts of flies are called by different names; some call

the flie bred of the Water-cricket or Creeper, a *May-flie*, and ſome a *Stone-flie*, ſome call the *Cadbait-flie* a *May-flie*, and ſome call a ſhort Flie of a ſad golden green colour, with ſhort brown wings, a *May-flie:* and I ſee no reaſon but all Flies bred in *May*, are properly enough called *May-flies*. Therefore except ſome one (that hath skill) would paint them, I can neither well give their names nor deſcribe them, without too much trouble and prolixity; nor, as I alledged, in regard of the variety of Soils and Rivers, deſcribe the Flies that are bred and frequent each: But the Angler (as I before directed) having found the Flie which the Fiſh at preſent affect, let him make one as like it as poſſibly he can, in colour, ſhape, and proportion: and for his better imitation let him lay the natural Flie before him. All this premiſed and conſidered, let him go on to make his Flie, which according to my own practice I thus adviſe:

How to make the artificial Flie ſeveral ways.

Firſt, I begin to ſet on my Hook (placing the hair on the inſide of its ſhank) with ſuch coloured Silk as I conceive moſt proper for the Flie, beginning at the end of the hook, and when I come to that place which I conceive moſt proportionable for the Wings, then I place ſuch coloured feathers

thers there; as I apprehend moſt reſemble the Wings of the Flie, and ſet the points of the wings towards the head, or elſe I run the feathers (and thoſe muſt be ſtript from the Quill or Pen, with part of it ſtill cleaving to the feathers) round the hook, and ſo make them faſt, if I turn the feathers round the hook, then I clip away thoſe that are upon the back of the hook, that ſo (if it be poſſible) the point of the hook may be forced by the feathers (left on the inſide of the hook) to ſwim upwards; and by this means I conceive the ſtream will carry your Flies wings in the poſture of one flying; whereas if you ſet the points of the wings backwards, towards the bending of the hook, the ſtream (if the feathers be gentle as they ought) will fold the points of the wings in the bending of the hook, as I have often found by experience: After I have ſet on the wing, I go on ſo far as I judge fit, till I faſten all, and then begin to make the body, and the head laſt; the body of the Flie I make ſeveral ways, if the Flie be one intire colour, then I take a Worſted thred, or Moccado end, or twiſt wool or fur into a kind of thred, or wax a ſmall ſlender ſilk thred, and lay wool, fur, &c. upon it, and then twiſt, and the materials

will ſtick to it, and then go on to make my Flie ſmall or large, as I pleaſe. If the Flie (as moſt are) be of ſeveral colours, and thoſe running in circles round the Flie, then I either take two of theſe threds (faſtning them firſt towards the bent of the Hook) and ſo run them round, and faſten all at the Wings, and then make the Head; or elſe I lay upon the Hook, wool, fur of Hare, Dog, Fox, Bear, Cow, Hog (which cloſe to their bodies have a fine fur) and with a ſilk of the other colour bind the ſame wool or fur down, and then faſten all: Or inſtead of the ſilk running thus round the Flie, you may pluck the feather from one ſide of thoſe long feathers which grow about a Cock or Capons neck or tail, (which ſome call *Hackle*) then run the ſame round your Flie, from head to tail, making both ends faſt; but you muſt be ſure to ſute the feather anſwerable to the colour you are to imitate in the Flie; and this way you may counterfeit thoſe rough Inſects (which ſome call Wool-beds, becauſe of their wool-like out-ſide, and rings of divers colours, I take them to be Palmer Worms) which the Fiſh much delight in. Let me add this only, that ſome Flies have forked tails, and ſome have horns, both which you muſt imitate with a ſlender hair faſtned

faſtned to the head or tail of your Flie, when you firſt ſet on your Hook, and in all things, as length, colour, as like the natural Flie as you can poſſibly. The Head is made after all the reſt of the body, of ſilk or hair, as being of a more ſhining gloſſy colour, than the other materials, as uſually the head of the Flie is more bright than the body, and is uſually of a different colour from the body: Sometimes I make the body of the Flie with a *Peacocks* feather, but that is only one ſort of Flie, whoſe colour nothing elſe that I could ever get would imitate, being the ſhort, ſad, golden, green, Flie I before mentioned, which I make thus; Take one ſtrain of a *Peacocks* feather (or if that be not ſufficient, then another) wrap it about the hook, till the body be according to your mind; if your Flie be of divers colours, and thoſe lying long-ways from head to tail, then I take my Dubbing, and lay them on the hook long-waies one colour by another (as they are mixt in the natural Flie from head to tail) then bind all on, and make it faſt with ſilk of the moſt predominant colour; and this I conceive is a more artificial way than is practiſed by many Anglers, who uſe to make ſuch a Flie of one colour, and bind it

on with silk, so that it looks like a Flie with round circles, but nothing at all resembles the Flie it is intended for; the head, horns, tail, are made as before. That you may the better counterfeit all sorts of Flies, get furs of all sorts and colours, you can possibly procure, as of Bears hair, Foxes, Cows, Hogs, Dogs, who next their bodies have a fine soft hair or fur, Moccado ends, Crewels, and dyed wool of all colours, with feathers of Cocks, Capons, Hens, Teals, Mallards, Widgeons, Pheasants, Partridges, the feather under the Mallard, Teal, or Widgeons-wings, and about their tails, about a Cock or Capons neck and tail, of all colours; and generally of all Birds, Kite, Hickwall, &c. that you may make yours exactly of the colour with the natural Flie. And here I must give some cautions and directions, as for the natural Flie, and so pass on to Baits for angling at the ground. I have observed that very many make their Flie suitable to the most Orient colour ye see in the natural Flie, which is usually the back-part, and commonly it excelleth the belly in lustre and splendor, and so ye conceive ye imitate the Flie exactly, when it is nothing so, because the back-part is out of the fishes eye, and if ye fail of sport as usually

ſually ye do, ye impute it to the want of the right flie, when as ye have not truly imitated the right colour of the flie, which the Fiſh chiefly ſee and regard, *viz.* the belly of the flie: Therefore.

Directions in making the artificial Flie.

1. In making the artificial flie, chiefly obſerve the belly of the Flie, for that colour the fiſh moſt take notice of, as being moſt in their eye.

2. When you try how to fit your colour of the Flie, wet your Fur, Hair, Wool, or Moccado, otherwiſe you will fail in your work; for though when thoſe materials are dry, they exactly ſute the colour of the Flie yet the water will alter moſt colours, and make them either brighter or darker.

3. Flies made for the *Salmon* are much better being made with four Wings, than if of two onely, and with ſix better than them of four; and if behind each pair of wings you place a different colour for the body of the flie, it is much the better: and this in my judgment argueth that he loveth to have ſeveral flies on the hook at once, for the flie looketh as if it were divers flies together.

Cautions for the uſe of the artificial Flie.

1. When you angle with the artificial flie, you muſt either fiſh in a River not fully cleared from ſome rain lately fallen,

that had diſcoloured it; or in a Mooriſh River diſcoloured by moſs or bogs; or elſe in a dark, cloudy day, when a gentle gale of wind moves the water; but if the wind be high, yet ſo as you may guide your tools with advantage, they will riſe in the plain Deeps, and then and there you will commonly kill the beſt Fiſh; but if the wind be little or none at all, you muſt Angle in the ſwift ſtreams.

2. You muſt keep your artificial flie in continual motion, though the day be dark, water muddy, and wind blow, or elſe the Fiſh will diſcern and refuſe it.

3. If you Angle in a River that is mudded by rain, or paſſing through moſſes or bogs, you muſt uſe a larger bodied Flie than ordinary; which argues that in clear Rivers the Flie muſt be ſmaller, and this not being obſerved by ſome, hindreth their ſport, and they impute their want of ſucceſs to the want of the right Flie, when perhaps they have it, but made too large.

Directions upon the water and its colours.

1. If the water be clear and low, then uſe a ſmall bodied Flie with ſlender wings,

2. When the water beginneth to clear after rain, and is of a browniſh colour, then a red or Orange Flie.

3. If

3. If the day be clear, then a light-coloured Flie, with ſlender body and wings.

4. In dark weather as well as dark waters, your Flie muſt be dark.

5. If the water be of a Whey-colour or whitiſh, then uſe a black or brown Flie: yet theſe five laſt Rules do not always hold, for there is no general but admits of particular exceptions, though uſually in cleareſt mountainous or hilly Rivers they do, or elſe I had altogether omitted them.

6. When you Angle with an artificial Flie, your Line may be twice the length of your Rod, except the River be much cumbred with wood and trees.

7. For every ſort of Flie have three, one of a lighter colour, another ſadder than the natural Flie, and a third of the exact colour with the Flie, to ſute all waters and weathers as before.

8. I could never find (by any experience of mine own or other mens obſervation) that Fiſh would freely and eagerly riſe at the artificial Fie, in any ſlow muddy River: by muddy Rivers I mean ſuch Rivers, whoſe bottom or ground is ſlime or mud: for ſuch as are mudded by rain (as I have already, and ſhall after-

afterwards further ſhew) at ſome times and ſeaſons I would chooſe to angle, yet in ſtanding Meers or Loughs I have known them (in a good wind) to riſe very well, but not ſo in ſlimy Rivers, either *Weever* in *Cheſhire*, or *Sow* in *Staffordſhire*, *&c.* and others in *Warwick-ſhire*, and *Black-water* in *Ulſter*; in the laſt, after many trials, I could never find (though in its beſt ſtreams) almoſt any ſport, ſave at its influx into *Lough Neaugh*, but there the working of the *Lough* makes it ſandy; and they will bite alſo near *Tome Shanes* Caſtle, *Mountjoy*, *Antrim*, *&c.* even to admiration; yet ſometimes they will riſe in that River a little, but not comparable to what they will do in every little Lough, in any ſmall gale of wind: And though I have often reaſoned in my own thoughts to ſearch out the true cauſe of this, yet I could never ſo fully ſatisfie my own judgment, ſo as to conclude any thing poſitively; yet have taken up theſe two enſuing particulars as moſt probable.

Two conjectures why Fiſh riſe not well at the artificial Flie in ſlimy Rivers.

1. I did conceive the depth of the Loughs might hinder the force of the Sun-beams from operating upon, or heating the mud, which in thoſe Rivers (though deep, yet not ſo deep by much as the Loughs) I apprehend it doth, becauſe in great

great droughts fish bite but little in any River, but nothing at all in slimy Rivers, in regard the mud is not cooled by the constant and swift motion of the River, as in gravelly or sandy Rivers, where (in fit seasons) they rise most freely, and bite most eagerly, save as before in droughts, notwithstanding at that season some sport may be had, (though not with the flie) whereas nothing at all will be done in muddy slow Rivers.

2. My second supposition was, Whether (according to that old received Axiom, *suo quæque simillima cælo*) the fish might not partake of the nature of the River, in which they are bred and live, as we see in men born in fenny, boggy, low, moist grounds, and thick air, who ordinarily want that present quickness, vivacity and activity of body and mind, which persons born in dry, hilly, sandy Soils and clear Air, are usually endued withall: And so the fish participating of the nature of muddy Rivers, which are ever slow, (for if they were swift, the stream would cleanse them from all mud) are not so quick, lively, and active, as those bred in swift, sandy, or stony Rivers, and so coming to the flie with more deliberation, discern the same to be counterfeit,

ſeit, and forſake it: whereas on the contrary, in ſtony, ſandy, ſwift Rivers (being more cold,) the fiſh are more active, and ſo more hungry and eager, the ſtream and hand keeping the flie in continual motion, they ſnap the ſame up, without any pauſe, leſt ſo deſirable a morſel eſcape them.

43. You muſt have a very quick eye, a nimble rod and hand, and ſtrike with the riſing of the fiſh, or he conſtantly finds his miſtake, and putteth out the hook again: I could never (my eye-ſight being weak) diſcern perfectly where my flie was, the wind and ſtream carrying it ſo to and again, that the Line was never any certain direction or guide to me; but if I ſaw any fiſh riſe, I uſe to ſtrike if I diſcerned it might be within the length of my Line.

14. Be ſure in caſting that your Flie fall firſt into the water, if the Line fall firſt, it ſcareth the fiſh, therefore draw it back, and caſt again, that the flie may fall firſt,. When you Angle in ſlow Rivers or ſtill places with the artificial flie, caſt your flie over croſs the River, and let it ſink a little in the water, and draw him gently back again, ſo as you break not the water, or raiſe any circles or motion in the water,

and

and let the current of the River carry the flie gently down with the ſtream, and this way I have found the beſt ſport in ſlow muddy Rivers with the artificial Flie.

The beſt way to angle with the *Caddis*, is to fiſh with it on the top of the water as you do with the flie; it muſt ſtand upon the ſhank of the Hook, as doth the artificial flie (if it come into the bent of the Hook, the Fiſh will little, or not at all value it, nor if you pull the blew gut out of it) and to make it keep that place, you muſt, when you ſet on your Hook, faſten a Horſe-hair or two under the ſilk, with the ends ſtanding a very little out from under the ſilk, and pointing towards the Line, and this will keep it from ſliding back into the bent: and thus uſed it is a moſt excellent Bait for a *Trout*. You may if you pleaſe place a ſmall ſlender Lead upon the ſhank of your Hook to ſink the Bait where the River is not violently ſwift, and draw the *Cadbait* over the Lead, you may make the head of black ſilk, and the body of yellow wax; this you muſt be often raiſing from the bottom, and ſo let it ſink again. How to Angle with the *Cadbait*.

You may imitate the *Cadbait*, by making the body of *Shammy*, the head black ſilk

ſilk. in a muddy water the Trout will not take the Cadbait, you muſt therefore only uſe him in clear waters.

I might here inſert ſeveral ſorts of flies, with the colours that are uſed to make them; but for the reaſons before given, that their colours alter in ſeveral Rivers and Soils, and alſo becauſe though I name the colours, yet its not eaſie to chooſe that colour by any deſcription, except ſo largely performed as would be over-large, and ſwell this ſmall piece beyond my intended conciſeneſs; and I ſuppoſe the former directions (which are eaſie and ſhort) if rightly obſerved, are full enough and ſufficient for making and finding out all ſorts of flies in all Rivers. I ſhall only add, that the *Salmon* flies muſt be made with Wings ſtanding one behind the other, whether two or four; alſo he delights in the moſt gaudy and orient colours you can chooſe; the Wings I mean chiefly, if not altogether, with long tails and wings.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of Angling at the Ground.

NOW we are come to the ſecond ſort of Angling *(viz.)* Under the water, which if it be with the ground-Line for the *Trout*, then you muſt not uſe any flote at all, only a Plumb of Lead, which I would wiſh might be a ſmall Bullet, the better to rowl on the ground; and it muſt alſo be lighter or heavier, as the ſtream runneth ſwift or ſlow, and you muſt place it about nine inches or a foot from the Hook, the Lead muſt run upon the ground, and you muſt keep your Line as ſtreight as poſſible, yet by no means ſo as to raiſe the Lead from the ground, but do not over-lead your Line by any means; and if you angle amongſt Weeds, place your Lead upon the ſhank of the hook, it will not be ſo apt to intangle upon them: your top muſt be very gentle, that the fiſh may more eaſily, and (to himſelf) inſenſibly run away with the Bait, and not be ſcared with the ſtiffneſs of the Rod; and if you make your top of Blackthorn and Whalebone as I before directed, it will conduce much to this purpoſe: Neither Ground-angling.

ther muſt you ſtrike ſo ſoon as you feel the fiſh bite, but ſlack your Line (a little) that ſo he may more ſecurely ſwallow the Bait and hook himſelf, which he will ſometimes do, eſpecially if he be a good one; however the leaſt jerk hooks him, and indeed you can ſcarce ſtrike too eaſily. Your Tackle muſt be very fine and ſlender, and ſo you will have more ſport than if you had ſtrong Lines (which fright the Fiſh) but the ſlender Line is eaſily broke with a ſmall jerk. If you uſe a Line much longer than your Rod, and fiſh with a Garden-worm without float or lead, drawing the ſame up and down the ſtream as you do the *Cad-bait*, you will take more *Trouts* than with Lead, chiefly if the day be clear. The Morning and Evening are beſt for the ground-Line for a *Trout* in clear weather and water, but in cloudy weather or muddy water, you may Angle at ground all day.

Great Fiſh (eſpecially *Trouts*) feed moſt in the Night if it be dark, for they are very wary and circumſpect to avoid danger whilſt they are gathering their food (as generally all wild Creatures are) and know the times and ſeaſons moſt fit for them to feed, and when they may moſt ſecurely range abroad, even as the

Buck

Buck when in ſeaſon and fat, lodgeth all day and grazeth in the Night, for the greater Trouts are moſt bold and eager in the darkeſt Nights, and then they bite not the next Day enſuing, except it prove dark and windy, and only then a little in the Afternoon.

2. You may alſo in the Night angle for the *Trout* with two great Garden-worms, hanging as equally in length as you can place them on your hook; caſt them from you as you would caſt the Flie; and draw them to you again upon the top of the water, and ſuffer them not to ſink; therefore you muſt uſe no Lead this way of Angling: you may hear the Fiſh riſe, give ſome time for him to gorge your Bait, as at the ground, then ſtrike gently. If he will not take them at the top, add ſome Lead, and try at the ground, as in the day-time. When you feel him bite, order your ſelf as in day angling at the ground: Uſually the beſt *Trouts* bite in the Night, and will riſe in the ſtill Deeps, but not ordinarily in the ſtream. Or you may uſe a black Snail, or with a little black Velvet may counterfeit one, this is an excellent way for a *Trout* in the Night, as the Snail is for a *Chub* alſo early in the Morning. Night Angling.

Angling for the *Trout* with a *Menow*.

3. You may angle also with a *Menow* for the *Trout*, which you must put on your hook thus; First, put your hook through the very point of his lower Chap, and draw it quite through, then put your hook in at his mouth, and bring the point to his tail, then draw your line streight, and it will bring him into a round compass, and close his mouth that no water get in, which you must avoid, or you may stitch up his mouth Or you may (when you set on your hook) fasten some bristles under the silk, leaving the points above a straws breadth and half, or almost half an inch standing out towards the line, which will keep him from slipping back. You may also imitate the *Menow* as well as the flie, but it must be done by an Artist with the Needle.

The use of the Swivel.

You must also have a Swivel or Turn, placed about a yard or more from your hook; you need no Lead on your line, you must continually draw your bait up the stream near to the top of the water.

If you miss a *Trout* how to take her afterwards.

If you strike a large *Trout*, and she either break hook or line, or get off, then near to her hold (if you can discover it) or the place you struck her, fix a short stick in the water, and with your Knife loose a small piece of the rind, so as you may lay your line in it, and yet the bark be close enough to

to keep your line in that it ſlip not out, nor the ſtream carry it away; bait your hook with a Garden or Lobworm (let your hook and line be very ſtrong) let the bait hang a foot from the ſtick, then faſten the other end of your line to ſome ſtick or bough in the Bank, and within one hour you may be ſure of her if all your tackle hold.

How to angle for the *Pike* with a *Trowle* and ſeveral other ways.

The next way of Angling is with a *Trowle* for the *Pike*, which is very delightful, you may buy your *Trowle* ready made, therefore I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to deſcribe it, only let it have a winch to wind it up withall. For this kind of Fiſh your tackle muſt be ſtrong, your Rod muſt not be very ſlender at the top, where you muſt place a ſmall ſlender ring for your line to run through, let your line be ſilk at leaſt two yards next the hook, and the reſt of ſtrong Shoomakers thred, your hook double, & ſtrongly armed with wire for above a foot, then with a probe or needle you muſt draw the wire in at the fiſhes mouth and out at the tail, that ſo the hook may lie in the mouth of the fiſh, and both the points on either ſide; upon the ſhank of the hook faſten ſome lead very ſmooth, that it go into the fiſhes mouth and ſink her with the head downward, as though ſhe had been playing on the top of the water, and were

returning to the bottom; your bait may be ſmall *Roch*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Loch*, or a frog ſometimes: your hook thus baited you muſt tie the tail of the fiſh cloſe and faſt to the wire, or elſe withdrawing to and again the fiſh will rend off the hook, or which I judge neater, with a needle and ſtrong thred, ſtitch through the fiſh on either ſide the wire and tie it very faſt: all being thus fitted, caſt your fiſh up and down in ſuch places as you know *Pikes* frequent, obſerving ſtill that he ſink ſome depth before you pull him up again. When the *Pike* cometh (if it be not ſunk deep) you may ſee the water move, at leaſt you may feel him, then ſlack your line and give him length enough to run away to his hold, whither he will go directly, and there pouch it, ever beginning (as you may obſerve) with the head, ſwallowing that firſt, thus let him lie untill you ſee the line move in the water, and then you may certainly conclude he hath pouched your bait & rangeth abroad for more, then with your trowl wind up your line till you think you have it almoſt ſtreight, then with a ſmart jerk hook him, and make your pleaſure to your content. Some uſe no Rod at all, but hold the line on links on their hand, uſing lead and float: others uſe a very great hook

hook with the hook at the tail of the fiſh, and when the *Pike* cometh, then they ſtrike at the firſt pull; others uſe to put a ſtrong ſtring or thred or at the mouth of the bait and out at one of the gills, and ſo over the head and in at the other gill, and ſo tye the bait to the hook, leaving a little length of the thred or ſtring betwixt the fiſh and the hook; that ſo the *Pike* may turn the head of the bait the better to ſwallow it, and then as before, after ſome pauſe ſtrike. Some uſe to tye the bait-hook and line to a bladder or bundle of flags or bul-ruſhes, faſtening the line very gently in the cleft of a ſmall ſtick, to hold the bait from ſinking more than (its allowed length) half a yard, and the ſtick muſt be faſtened to the bladder or flags, to which the line being tyed that it might eaſily unfold and run to its length, and ſo give the *Pike* liberty to run away with the bait, and by the bladder or flags recover their line again. You muſt obſerve this way to turn off your bait with the wind or ſtream, that they may carry it away, or ſome uſe (for more ſport, if the *Pike* be a great one) to tye the ſame to the foot of a gooſe, which the *Pike* (if large) will ſometimes pull under the water.

When you fiſh for the *Pike* at Snap, you

muſt give him leave to run a little, then ſtrike, but be ſure ſtrike the contrary way to that which he runneth: a double ſpring hook I conceive principally, if not only uſeful in this way of angling, and much to be preferred before all other hooks; for the *Pike* will uſually hold the bait ſo faſt in his teeth that you may fail to pull it out of his mouth, and alſo ſtrike him; whereas with a ſpring hook, though he hold it never ſo faſt, the wire will draw through the bait, and ſo the ſpring will open, and you will very frequently hook him on the outſide of his mouth. I am opinionated, that angling with the Trowle is a ſurer, at leaſt a more eaſie way for a learner to practiſe (who wants an inſtructer) than the Snap; beſide, I judge the ſnap chiefly uſeful to take a *Pike*, which often pricking with the Trowle hath made wary and cunning (for one that hath not been ſcared, will ſwallow your bait boldly) ſuch a one is beſt taken at Snap: this way of angling put on your bait thus, make a hole with the point of your hook or probe in the fiſhes ſide as near the middle as you can, put in your armed wire, and draw it out at the mouth, and with a needle and thred ſew up the fiſhes mouth. Others uſe the probe to draw the arming wire under the skin only

(not

(not the ribs by any means)and out at the bone behind the gills,then again under the gills, and out at the mouth; this latter way I approve as much the better;becauſe there is only the skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the hook, whereas the former way,if the *Pike* hold faſt (as commonly he doth)all the fleſh on the outſide of the fiſh will be drawn into a heap or lump ſo thick, that the hook (except very large)can hardly reach through it to pierce the *Pikes* chaps.

1. After he hath taken your bait, if he move ſlowly, and make no ſtop, give him time,and you will ſeldom miſs him.

2. Or if he lie ſtill after he hath taken the bait(as ſomtimes he will)gently move your hand to try which way his head lieth if you cannot diſcover that, then ſtrike directly upwards,otherwiſe we may(inſtead of hooking him) pluck the bait out of his mouth.

3. If he take it upon the top of the water and lie ſtill, you ſee which way his head lieth and may order your ſelf accordingly.

4. Obſerve that at the Snap your tackle muſt be much ſtronger than for the Trowl, in regard you muſt ſtrike much more forcibly.

5. At ſnap you muſt give two luſty

jerks one after the other, and be ſure you ever ſtrike contrary to the way his head lyeth, leſt you pull the bait from him only.

6. Faſten your ſwivel to the end of your Line, and hook your armed wire upon the ſwivel.

7. For the Snap, caſt a piece of lead hollow and ſo wide as to go over the wire, and the end of the hook which you draw within the Fiſhes mouth, let it lie there to ſink his head downward, make it ſo rough that it ſlip not out, or ſew up the fiſhes mouth; I like this way much better than to place the lead upon the line (as ſome uſe) for the lead will often ſlip further, and alſo entangle the bait and line together.

8. Both with Trowle and at Snap, cloſe at the gills cut away one of the fins, and alſo behind the vent another on the contrary ſide, the bait will play the better.

9. In caſting with trowling, or at ſnap, be ſure to raiſe your hand a little when you ſee the bait ready to fall into the water, this will prevent that the bait daſh not violently into the water, in its fall, which I preſume ſometimes frights the *Pike* (though he be a bold fiſh) when it falls behind, and near to him.

10. Make your lead for the Trowle four-

four-square and much thicker and shorter than most use, the square will keep the hook in the same place as you set it, and the thick short lead sinks him with his head downward, so that he will not shoot sloop-wise, as he doth when the lead is long.

11. Joyn your wire links together with a steel ring, the bait will play and sink better, if it lye only in the baits mouth, it will not intangle in the line so often.

12. A large bait doth more invite the *Pike*, but the lesser takes him more surely, as soonest gorged, and the hook certainly taken into his mouth both at Snap and Trowel.

13. Use a large white *Menow* put on with the hook in his mouth, angle with him for a *Pike*, as you do for a *Trout*, and let your hook be small, use not a great hook with a small bait.

How to use the Menow *for a* Pike.

Get a single hook slender and long in the shank, let it resemble the shape of a Shepherd's crook, put lead upon it, as thick near the bent as will go into the *Menows* mouth, place the point of the hook directly up the face of the fish, let the

Rod

Rod be as long as you can handſomely manage, with a line of the ſame length, caſt up and down, and manage it as when you trowle with any other bait; if when the *Pike* hath taken your bait he run to the end of the line before he hath gorged it, do not ſtrike but hold ſtill only, and he will return back and ſwallow it: but if you uſe that bait with a Trowl, I rather prefer it before any other bait that I know,

Angling for *Roches* at *London Bridge*.

In the Months of *June* and *July*, a ſort of exceeding large and very excellent Roches, haunt about *London-Bridge* (in other Months none of that ſort are there to be found) and they Angle for them with this bait and in the manner following, *vix.* They take a ſtrong Cord, at the end of it they faſten a weight of Lead, about two or three pounds; then about a foot above the Lead they make a Packthred of ten or twelve fathom long faſt to the Cord, and unto the Packthred, (at due diſtances) they make ten or twelve ſtrong links of hair with Roch-hooks at them, baited with a Periwinckle, which they gather in the *Thames* in ſhells, they break the ſhells, and take the Periwinckle whole, (for if broken its ſpoiled) and that part which ſticks to the ſhell they cut off from the Fiſh and leave it ſticking to the ſhell, and

and bait their Hooks with the other, (I ſuppoſe a ſmall white Snail may ſerve in want of a *Periwinckle*, it's like it) and holding the ſtrong Cord in their hands, the biting of the Fiſh draweth the Packthred, and that the Cord, whereby they feel the Fiſhes biting, and ſo order themſelves according as their own judgments dictate, and ſometimes draw up two, three, or more *Roches* at once.

There are two ways of fiſhing for *Eels*, proper and peculiar to that Fiſh alone; the firſt is termed by ſome, *Brogling* for *Eels*, which is thus, Take a ſhort ſtrong Rod, and exceeding ſtrong Line, with a little compaſſed but ſtrong Hook, which you muſt bait with a large well ſcoured Red-worm, then place the end of the Hook very eaſily in the cleft of a ſtick, that it may very eaſily ſlip out; with this ſtick and hook thus baited, ſearch for holes under ſtones, Timber, Roots, or about Floud-gates; if there be a good *Eel*, give her time and ſhe will take it, but be ſure ſhe hath gorged it, and then you may conclude, if your Tackling or hold fail not, ſhe is your own. Brogling for *Eels*.

The other way is called *Bobbing* for *Eels*, which is thus, Take the largeſt Garden-worms, ſcour them well, and with a Needle Bobbing for *Eels*.

Needle run a very ſtrong thred or ſilk through them from end to end, take ſo many as that at laſt you may wrap them about a Board (for your hand will be too narrow) a dozen times at leaſt, then tye them faſt with the two ends of the thred or ſilk, that they may hang in ſo many long bouts or hanks, then faſten all to a ſtrong Cord, and ſomething more than a handful above the Worms faſten a plumb of Lead of about three quarters of a pound, and then make your Cord ſure to a long and ſtrong Pole; with theſe Worms thus ordered you muſt fiſh in a muddy water, and you will feel the *Eels* tug ſtrongly at them; when you think they have ſwallowed them as far as they can, gently draw up your Worms and *Eels*, and when you have them near the top of the water, hoiſt them amain to land; and thus you may take three or four at once, and good ones if there be ſtore.

But before I proceed to give you each ſort of Bait for every kind of Fiſh, give me leave to add a few Cautions and directions for the ground-Line and Angling, as I did for the natural and artificial Flie, and ſo we ſhall go on.

1. When

1. When you Angle at ground, keep your Line as ſtreight as poſſible, ſuffering none of it to lie in the water, becauſe it hindereth the nimble jerk of the Rod; but if (as ſometimes it will happen) you cannot avoid, but ſome little will lie in the water, yet keep it in the ſtream above your flote, by no means below it. Directions in Angling at the ground.

2. When you Angle at the ground for ſmall Fiſh, put two Hooks to your Line faſtned together thus; Lay the two Hooks together, then draw the one ſhorter than the other by nine Inches, this cauſeth the other end to over-reach as much as that is ſhorter at the Hooks, then turn that end back to make a bought or boughte, and with a water-knot (in which you muſt make both the links to faſten) tie them ſo as both links may hang cloſe together, and not come out at both ends of the knot; upon that link which hangeth longeſt, faſten your Lead near a foot above the Hook, put upon your Hooks two different Baits, and ſo you may try (with more eaſe and leſs time) what Bait the Fiſh love beſt: and alſo very often (as I have done) take two Fiſh at once with one Rod: You have alſo by this Experiment one Bait for ſuch as feed cloſe upon the ground, as *Gudgeon*, *Flounder*, *&c.* and

and another for ſuch as feed a little higher, as *Roach*, *Dace*, *&c.*

3. When you Angle at ground for the *Salmon*, put three or four Lob-worms well ſcowred on your Hook at once, and order your ſelf as when you Angle at ground for a *Trout*.

4. Some uſe to lead their Lines heavily, and to ſet their Cork about a foot or more from the end of the Rod, with a little Lead to buoy it up, and thus in violent ſwift ſtreams they avoid the offence of a flote, and yet perfectly diſcern the biting of the Fiſh, and ſo order themſelves accordingly; but this hath its inconvenience *(viz.)* The lying of the Line in the water.

5. Give all Fiſh time to gorge the bait and be not over-haſty, except you Angle with ſuch tender baits as will not endure nibbling at, but muſt upon every touch be ſtruck at (as Sheeps-blood, Flies, which are taken away at the firſt pull of the Fiſh) and therefore inforce you at the firſt touch to try your fortune.

Now we are to ſpeak next of Baits more particularly proper for every Fiſh, wherein I ſhall obſerve this method; firſt, to name the Fiſh, then the Baits (according as my Experience hath proved them) grateful

grateful to the Fiſh, and to place them as near as I can in ſuch order as they come in ſeaſon, though many of them are in ſeaſon at one inſtant of time, and equally good. I would not be underſtood, as if when a new Bait cometh in, the old one were antiquated and uſeleſs: for I know the Worm laſteth all the year, the Flie all Summer, one ſort of bob all Winter, the other under Cow-dung in *June* and *July*; but I intimate that ſome are found when others are not *in rerum natura*.

CHAP. V.

Of all ſorts of Baits for each kind of Fiſh, and how to find and keep them.

1. THE *Salmon* taketh the artificial flie very well, but you muſt uſe a Trowl (as for the *Pike*) or he being a ſtrong Fiſh will hazard your Line, except you give him length; his Flies muſt be much larger than you uſe for other Fiſh, the Wings very long (two or four) behind one another, with very long tails; his chiefeſt ground-bait a great Garden or Lob-worm, he ſpawneth about *Michaelmas*: when you ſtrike him he uſually falleth to plunge and

Baits for the *Salmon*.

and leap, but doth not ordinarily endeavour to run to the end of the Line as the *Trout* will; young *Salmons* under a quarter of a yard long, have tender mouths, so as they are apt to break their hold: to obviate which inconvenience, I have known some that use to fasten two hooks together, in like manner as some double Pike hooks lately used in Trowling are made, not with the points opposite to one another, but about a quarter of a Circle from each other, and on them they make their Flie, that if one Hook break hold, the other may not fail.

To prevent breaking hold in tender-mouth'd Fishes.

2. The *Trout* takes all ſorts of Worms, eſpecially *Brandlings*; all ſorts of Flies, *Menow* young *Frogs*, *Marſhworm*, *Dock-worm*, *Flag-worm*; all ſorts of *Cadbait*, *Bob*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *Gentles*, *Waſps*, *Hornets*, *Dorrs*, *Bees*, *Graſhoppers*, *Cankers*, and *Bark-worm*; he is a ravenous greedy Fiſh, and loveth a large Bait at ground, and you muſt fit him accordingly: to that end take two large Garden-worms well ſcowred, cut them into equal halfs, put them on your Hook, this is a very good Bait.

When you Angle with a *Graſhopper* for *Trout* or *Grayling*, you muſt Lead your Hook upon the ſhank with a very ſlender plate of Lead made narroweſt and ſlendereſt at the bent of the Hook, that the Bait may the better come over it; let the *Graſhopper* be a large one, then drawhim over the Lead, after put a leſſer or a *Cadbait* on the point, and keep your Bait in continual motion; lifting it up, and ſinking again, pull off the *Graſhoppers* uppermoſt Wings: In *March*, and the beginning of *April*, uſe the *Tagtail*, which is a Worm much of the colour of a mans hand, with a yellow tagg on his tail about half an Inch long, you may find them in Marled Lands and Meddows in the Morning in calm weather,

not cold, or after a ſhower.

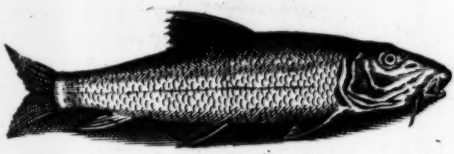
The *Trout* ſpawneth about *Michaelmas*, he is a very nimble quick Fiſh, and will ſtrive long and vigorouſly for his life, will run amongſt Weeds, Roots, or any thing that may entangle or break your Line.

3. The *Umber* is generally taken with the ſame Baits as the *Trout*, eſpecially *Flies*, *Cadbait*, *Barkworms*, and *Palmers*, artificial or natural *Flies* or *Palmers*: He is an eager Fiſh, biteth freely, and will riſe often at the ſame *Flie*, if you prick him not.

The *Umber* is a very nimble Fiſh, hath a very tender mouth, ſo that he is moſt uſually loſt by breaking his hold, which to prevent, make tryal of that way before directed for taking young *Salmons*.

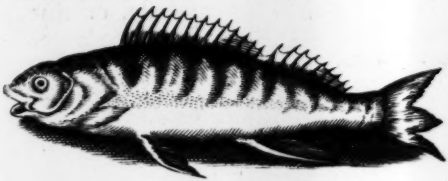
The

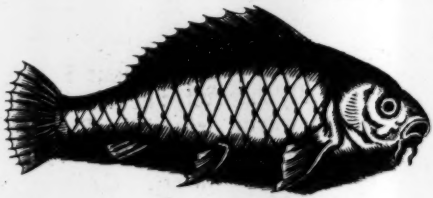
The *Barbel* bites beſt at great red Worms well ſcowred in Moſs, at Cheeſe and ſeveral ſorts of Paſtes, and *Gentles*; he ſpawns in *April*, is a wary ſubtile ſtrong Fiſh, will ſtruggle long, and except you manage him dextrouſly, or that your Line be very ſtrong, he will endanger to break it.



The *Pearch* is a very ravenous Fiſh, and biteth boldly and freely: he taketh all ſorts of Earth-worms, eſpecially *Brandlings* and *Lobworms*, if well ſcoured, *Bobs*, *Oakworms*, *Gentles*, *Cadbait*, *Waſps*, *Dores*, *Menow*, *Colewort-worms*, and often any Bait ſave the *Flie*: He

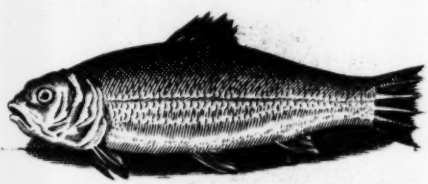
ſpawneth in *February* or *March*, and if a large ſtrong Fiſh, will contend long and hard for his life.





4. *Carp.*

4. *Carp* and *Tench* love the largeſt red Worms, the *Tench* eſpecially, if they ſmell much of *Tar*; to which end you may ſome ſmall time before you uſe them, take ſo many as you will uſe at that time, and put them by themſelves in a little *Tar*, but let them not lie long, leſt it kill them; Paſte alſo of all ſorts made with ſtrong-ſented *Oyls*, *Tar*, *Bread-grain* boyled ſoft, *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, *Marſh-worm*, *Flag-worm* eſpecially, feed much and often for theſe Fiſh. *Carp* ſpawneth in *May* and *June* uſually; and if when you ſtrike him you do not give him play, he will break all: he is a ſtrong Fiſh, will ſtruggle long and ſtoutly.



5. The *Pike* taketh all ſorts of Baits, (ſave the *Flie*) *Gudgeon*, *Roches*, *Dace*, *Loaches*, young *Frogs* in Summer, or a *Smelt* if freſh and ſweet, and well faſtned on the Hook, for it is a tender Fiſh, and will (if not carefully ordered) quickly break in pieces, but I have not known this Bait uſed higher than where it doth ebb and flow; yet higher than the ſalt-water floweth I have ſeen it practiſed with good ſucceſs.

A young *Pickerel* or *Parial Jacen* or *Trout*, is a good Bait to trowl with as you can uſe; you may halter him thus, Faſten a ſtrong Line with a ſnare at the end of it to the Pole, which if you go circumſpectly to work, he will permit you to put over his head, and then you muſt by ſtrength hoiſt him to land: He ſpawns in *February* the latter end, or in *March*. He is a ſtrong bold Fiſh, and a ravenous eager biter, will ſtruggle long and ſtrongly.

6. *Eels*, take great red Worms, Beef, Waſps, Guts of Fowls, and *Menow*: bait Night-hooks for him with ſmall *Roches*, the Hook muſt lie in the mouth of the Fiſh, as for the *Pike*; this way takes the greateſt *Eels*.

7. The *Gudgeon* and *Bleak* take the ſmalleſt red worms, *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, *Waſps*, he ſpawneth about the beginning of *May*. The *Bleak* takes the natural or artificial Flie, eſpecially in the Evening.

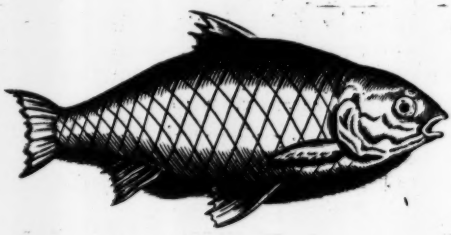
The *Ruff* taketh the ſame Baits as the *Pearch*, ſave that you muſt have leſſer Worms, he being a ſmaller Fiſh.

8. *Roch* and *Dace*, ſmall worms, *Cadbait*, Flies, Bobs, Sheeps bloud, ſmall white Snails, all ſorts of worms bred on herbs or trees, *Paſte*, *Waſps*, *Gnats*, *Cherries* and *Lipberries:* the *Dace* or *Dare* doth ſpawn about the middle of *March*, and the *Roch* about the middle of *May*; they are very eaſily taken and with little trouble.

8. The *Bleak* is an eager fiſh, and takes the ſame baits as the *Roch*, only they muſt be leſs: you may angle for him with as many hooks on your line at once, as you can conveniently faſten on it.

9. *Chevin*, all ſorts of earth worms, Bob, *Menow*. Flies of all ſorts, *Cadbait*, all ſorts of worms bred on herbs and trees, eſpecially *Oak-worms*, young *Frogs*, *Cherries*, *Waſps*, *Dorrs*, *Bees*, *Graſhopper* at the top of the water, Cheeſe, Grain, *Beetles*, a great brown Flie that lives on the *Oak* like a *Scarabee*, black Snails, their bellies ſlit that the white appear; he loveth a large bait, as a *Waſpe*, *Colwort-worm*, and then a *Waſpe* altogether. The *Chevin* loveth to have ſeveral flies, and of divers ſorts at once on the hook; he loveth alſo to have ſeveral ſorts of baits at one time on the hook together; as a *Waſp*, a young *Dorr* or *Humble-bee*, when his legs and wings

wings are a little grown forth,or a *Flie* a *Cadbait* or *Oak-worm* together; or the worm bred on a Crab-tree, with one or more of the other baits. The Pith or Marrow in the bone of an Ox back, take it out carefully,and be very tender in takeing off the tough outward skins, but be ſure you leave the inward and tender white skin ſafe and untouched,or your labour is loſt: this is an excellent bait for a *Chevin* all winter long. The *Chevin* ſpawneth in *March*, is a ſtrong fiſh but not very active, for after one or two turns he preſently yieldeth,if he be a very large one: but the leſſer, which are about a foot or fourteen inches long, will more endanger your line than one of twenty inches or more, for he will ſtrive longer.



xi. *Bream*

11. *Bream* loveth red worms, especially those that are got at the root of a great Dock, it lieth wrapped up in a knot or round Clue; *Paste*, *Flag-worms*, *Wasps*, *Green-flies*, *Butter-flies*, a *Grashopper* his legs cut off; he spawneth in *June* or beginning of *July*, is easily taken, for after one or two gentle turns, he falleth upon one side, and so is drawn to land with ease.

12. *Flounder*, *Shad*, *Suant*, *Thwait*, and *Mullet*, love red Worms of all sorts, *Wasps* and *Gentles*.

As for the *Menow*, *Loach*, *Bulhead*, or *Millers-thumb*, being usually Childrens recreation; I once proposed to have omitted them wholly, but considering they often are baits for better Fish, as *Trout*, *Pike*, *Eele*, *&c.* Neither could this Discourse be general if they were omitted; and though I should wave mentioning them, yet I cannot forget them, who have so often vexed me with their unwelcome eagerness, for the *Menow* will have a part in the play if you come where he is, which is almost every where, you need not seek him: I use to find him oftner than I desire, only deep still places he least frequents of any, and is not over-curious in his baits, any thing will serve that he can swallow,

ſwallow, and he will ſtrain hard for what he cannot gorge; but chiefly loveth the ſmalleſt red Worms, *Cadbait*, Worms bred on Herbs or Trees, and *Waſps*.

The *Loach* and *Bulhead* are much of the ſame diet, but their principal bait is the ſmalleſt red Worms.

Having

Several sorts of Pastes.

Having spoken before of Pastes, I shall now shew you how to make the same; and though there be as many kinds as men have fancies, yet I esteem these best.

1. Take the tendereſt part of the leg of a young Rabbet, Whelp or Catling, as much Virgins wax and Sheeps Suet, beat them in a Morter till they be perfectly incorporated, then with a little clarified Hony temper them before the Fire into a Paſte.

2. Sheeps Kidney Suet, as much Cheeſe, fine Flower or Manchet, make it into a Paſte, ſoften it with clarified Hony.

3. Sheeps bloud, Cheeſe, fine Manchet, clarified Hony, make all into a Paſte.

4. Cherries, Sheeps bloud, Saffron, and fine Manchet, make all into a Paſte.

5. Take the fatteſt oldeſt Cheeſe and the ſtrongeſt of the rennet you can get, fine Wheat flower, and Anniſeed water (and if you make it for a *Chub* add ſome reiſted bacon) beat all exceeding well into a Paſte.

6. Take the fatteſt old Cheeſe and ſtrongeſt of the rennet, Mutton Kidney Suet, and Turmerick, reduced into a fine powder, work all together into a Paſte, and add of the Turmerick untill the Paſte become

become a very lovely yellow colour; this is excellent for *Chevin*.

In *September* and all Winter, when you angle for *Chub*, and large fish, as *Carp*, *Bream*, *&c.* with Paste, you must make your bait as large as a good Nutmeg.

You may add to any Paste *Coculus Indiæ*, *Assa fœtida*, Oyl of *Polypody* of the *Oak*, of *Lignum vitæ*, of *Ivie*, or the gum of *Ivie* dissolved: I judge there is virtue in these Oyles, and gum especially, which I would add to all Pastes I make; as also a little Flax to keep the Paste that it wash not off the hook.

CHAP. VI.

To keep your Baits.

1. PAste will keep very long, if you put Virgin wax and clarified Honey into it, and stick well on the hook if you beat Cotton-wool or Flax into it, when you make your Paste.

2. Put your worms into very good long Moss, whether white, red, or green, I matter not; wash it well, and cleanse it from all earth and filth, wring it very dry, then put your Moss and worms into

into an earthen Pot, cover it close that they crawl not out, set it in a cool place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm place, that the Frost kill them not: every third day in Summer change your Moss, once in the week in Winter, the longer you keep them before you use them, the better. Clean scowring your Worms makes them clearer, redder, tougher, and to live long on the Hook, and to keep colour, and therefore more desirable to the Fish: A little *Bole-Armoniack* put to them will much further your desire, and scower them in a short time: Or you may put them all Night in water, & they will scower themselves, but will be weak; but a few hours in good Moss will recover them. But lest your Worms die, you may feed them with crums of Bread and Milk, or fine Flour and Milk, or the Yelk of an Egg and sweet Cream coagulated over the fire, give them a little and often; If you take the strongest sweet Wort you can get (in which there hath been no Hops) wet your Moss well with the same, and over night put so many Worms into that Moss as you intend to use the next day, and I suppose the Fish will bite the better at them, but they must not lie over long in the Moss thus wet, in regard it will much swell them, and in time

time spoyl them; sometimes also put to them earth cast out of a Grave, the newer the Grave the better, I mean the shorter time the party hath been buried, you will find the Fish will exceedingly covet them after this earth, and here you may gather what Gum that is, which *J. D.* in his *Secrets of Angling* calleth *Gum of life.*

3. You must keep all other sorts of Worms with the leaves of those Trees and Herbs on which they are bred, renewing the Leaves often in a day, and put in fresh for the old ones: The Boxes you keep them in must have a few small holes to let in air.

4. Keep *Gentles* or *Maggots* with dead flesh, Beasts Livers or Suet, cleanse or scower them in Meal or Bran which is better; you may breed them by pricking a Beasts Liver full of holes, hang it in the Sun in Summer time, set an old course Barrel or small Firken with Clay and Bran in it, into which they will drop, and cleanse themselves in it. How to breed *Gentles.*

5. There are two, some say three sorts of *Cadbait*, the one bred under stones that lye hollow in shallow Rivers or small Brooks, in a very fine gravelly case or husk, these are yellow when ripe; the other in old Pits, Ponds, or slow running Rivers *Cadbait* his kinds

Rivers or Ditches, in cases or husks of Straw, sticks or Rushes, these are green when ripe; both are excellent for a *Trout*, used as before is directed, and for most sorts of small Fish. The green sort, which is bred in Pits, Ponds or Ditches, may be found in *March* before the other yellow ones come in; the other yellow ones come in season with *May* or the end of *April*, and go out in *July*: a second sort, but smaller, come in again in *August*.

Cadbait.

6. *Cadbait* cannot endure the wind and cold, therefore keep them in a thick woollen Bag, with some Gravel amongst them, wet them once a day at least if in the house, but often in the hot weather; when you carry them forth, fill the bag full of water, then hold the mouth close, that they drop not out, and so let the water run from them; I have thus kept them three weeks: Or you may put them into an earthen Pot full of water, with some Gravel at the bottom, and take them forth into your bag as you use them.

Bobs two sorts.

7. Yellow Bobs are also of two sorts, the one bred in mellow light soils, and gathered after the Plough when the Land is first broken up from Grazing, and are in season in the Winter till *March*; the other is bred under Cowdung, hath a red head; and

and theſe are in ſeaſon in the Summer only: ſcower them in Bran, or dry Moſs, or Meal.

8. The ſpawn of ſome Fiſh is a good bait, to be uſed at ſuch time as that Fiſh ſpawneth, ſome days before they ſpawn they will bite eagerly; if you take one that is full bellied, take out the ſpawn, boil it ſo hard as to ſtick on your hook, and ſo uſe it; or not boil it at all: the ſpawn of *Salmon* is beſt of all ſorts of ſpawn. Spawn of Fiſh.

9. I have obſerved, that *Chevin*, *Roach*, *Dace*, bite much better at the *Oak-worm*, (or any worm bred on herbs or trees) eſpecially if you angle with the ſame (when they ſhew themſelves) at the top of the water (as with the natural flie) than if you uſe it under; for I have obſerved, that when a gale of wind ſhaketh the trees, the worms fall into the water, and preſently riſe and flote on the top, where I have ſeen the Fiſh riſe at them as at flies, which taught me this experience; and indeed they ſink not, till toſt and beaten by the ſtream, and ſo they dye, and loſe their colour, and then the Fiſh (as you may ſee by your own on your hook) do not much eſteem hem. The chiefeſt way to uſe the *Oak-worm*.

10. Under the bark of an Oak, Aſh, Alder, and Birch eſpecially, if they lie a year or more after they are fallen, you Bark-worms.

may find a great white Worm, with a brown head, ſomething reſembling a *Dore-Bee* or *Humble-Bee*, this is in ſeaſon all the year, eſpecially from *September* untill *June*, or mid-*May*, the *Umber* covets this bait above any, ſave *Flie* and *Cadbait*: you may alſo find this worm in the body of a rotted Alder, if you break it with an Ax or Beetle, but be careful only to ſhake the Tree in pieces with beating, and cruſh not the Worm: you may alſo find him under the bark of the ſtump of a Tree, if decayed.

How to uſe Waſps. 11. Dry your *Waſps*, *Dores*, or *Bees*, upon a Tile-ſtone, or in an Oven cooled after baking, leſt they burn; and to avoid that, you muſt lay them on a thin board or chip, and cover them with another ſo ſupported, as not to cruſh them, or elſe clap two Cakes together: this way they will keep long, and ſtick on your hook well: If you boil them hard, they grow black in a few days.

Sheeps blood, how to uſe it. 12. Dry your Sheeps blood in the Air upon a dry board, till it become a pretty hard lump; then cut it into ſmall pieces for your uſe.

How to order Grain. 13. When you uſe Grain, boyl it ſoft in milk, or which I like better, in ſweet wort, and peel off the outward rind which is the bran; and then if you will, you may

fry

fry the ſame in Honey and Milk, or ſome ſtrong ſcented Oyls, as *Amber*, *Polypody*, *Spike*, *Ivy*, *Turpentine*; for Nature, which maketh nothing in vain, hath given the Fiſh Noſtrils, and that they can ſmell is undeniable; and, I am perſwaded, are more guided by the ſenſe of ſmelling, than ſight; for ſometimes they will come to the float, if any Wax be upon it, ſmell at it and go away. We ſee alſo that ſtrong ſcents draw them together; as, put Grains, Worms, or Snails in a bottle of Hay tyed pretty cloſe, and you will if you pluck it out ſuddenly, ſometimes draw up *Eels* in it. But I never yet made tryal of any of theſe Oyls; for, when I had the Oyls, I wanted time to try them; or when I had time, I wanted the Oyls; but I recommend them to tryal of others, and do purpoſe (God willing) to prove their virtue my ſelf, eſpecially that Oyntment ſo highly commended by *I. D.* in his *Secrets of Angling*.

14. When you ſee the *Ant-flies* in greateſt plenty, go to the *Ant-hills* where they breed, take a great handfull of the earth, with as much of the roots of the graſs that groweth on thoſe hills, put all into a large glaſs bottle, then gather a pottle full of the blackeſt *Ant-flies* unbruiſed, put them into the bottle (or into Ant-flies.

a firkin, if you would keep them long) firſt waſhed with Honey, or Water and Honey; *Roach* and *Dace* will bite at theſe Flies under water near the ground.

Bobs after the Plough.

15. When you gather Bobs after the Plough, put them into a Firkin with ſufficient of the ſoil they were bred in, to preſerve them, ſtop the veſſel exceeding cloſe, or all will ſpoil, ſet it where neither wind nor froſt may offend them, and they will keep all winter for your uſe.

To breed and keep Gentles.

16. At the latter end of *September*, take ſome dead Carrion that hath ſome Maggots bred in it that begin to creep, bury all deep in the ground, that the froſt kill them not, and they will ſerve in *March* or *April* following to uſe.

To find the flag-worm.

17. To find the *Flag-worm* do thus, go to an old pond or pit where there are ſtore of Flags or (as ſome call them) Sedges, pull ſome up by the roots, then ſhake thoſe roots in the water, till all the mud and dirt be waſhed away from them, then amongſt the ſmall ſtrings or fibres that grow to the roots, you will find little husks or caſes of a reddiſh or yelloviſh, and ſome of other colours, open theſe carefully with a pin, and you will find in them a little ſmall worm, white as a *Gentle*, but longer and ſlenderer; this is an excellent bait for *Tench*,

Bream,

Bream, eſpecially *Carp*: if you pull the Flags in ſunder, and cut open the round ſtalk, you will alſo find a Worm like the former in the husk, but tougher, and in that reſpect better.

18. Carry your baits for the *Pike* in Bran, which will dry up the ſlimy moiſture that is on them, and ſo keep them longer, and make them ſtick more firmly on your Hook: beſides, there is a green watery ſubſtance that iſſueth out of the Fiſh which will infect and rot them, but the Bran drying the ſame up, preventeth that miſchief.

19. Fiſh bite beſt at *Graſhoppers* in the latter end of *July*, and in *Auguſt*, you muſt cut off their legs and outmoſt wings; the middle ſize is better than either the extraordinary great ones, or the ſmall.

CHAP. VII.

Of ſeveral haunts or reſorts of Fiſhes, and in what Rivers, or places of them they are moſt uſually found.

THis part of our Diſcourſe being a diſcovery of the ſeveral places or Rivers each kind of Fiſh doth moſt haunt or covet, and in which they are ordinarily found.

The ſeveral ſorts of Rivers, Streams,

Soyls, and Waters they moſt frequent, is a matter (in this undervalued Art) of no ſmall importance; for if you come with Baits for the *Trout* or *Umber*, and angle for them in ſlow muddy Rivers or places, you will have little (if any) ſport at all: and to ſeek for *Carp* or *Tench* in ſtony ſwift Rivers, is equally prepoſterous; and tho I know that ſometimes you may meet with Fiſh in ſuch Rivers & places, as they do not uſually frequent (for no general Rule but admits of particular Exceptions) yet the exact knowledg of what Rivers or Soyls, or what part of the River (for ſome Rivers have ſwift gravelly ſtreams, and alſo ſlow, deep, muddy places) ſuch or ſuch ſorts of fiſh do moſt frequent, will exceedingly adapt you to know what Rivers, or what part of them are moſt fit for your baits, or what baits ſuit beſt with each River, and the Fiſh in the ſame.

1. The *Salmon* loveth large ſwift Rivers where it ebbeth and floweth, & there they are found in greateſt numbers, never the leſs I have known them to be found in leſſer Rivers, high up in the country, yet chiefly in the latter end of the year, when they come thither to ſpawn, he chooſeth the moſt ſwift and violent ſtreams, (or rather Cataracts) and in *England* the cleareſt gravelly rivers uſually with rocks or weeds, but in *Ireland* I do not know any River (I mean high in the

the Country) that hath ſuch plenty of them, as the black-water by *Charlemont*, and the broad-water by *Shanes* Caſtle, both which have their heads in great bogs, and are of a dark muddy colour, and very few (comparatively) in the upper ban, though clearer and ſwifter than they.

2. The *Trout* loveth ſmall purling Brooks, or Rivers that are very ſwift, and run upon ſtones or gravel: he feedeth whilſt ſtrong in the ſwifteſt ſtreams, and in the deepeſt part of it (eſpecially if he be a large one) and behind a ſtone-block, or ſome bank that ſhooteth forth with a point into the River; upon which the ſtream beareth much, and cauſeth a whirling of the water back by the bank-ſide, much like the eddy of the tide: and he the more willingly maketh choice of this place, if there be a ſhade over his head, as a buſh, foam, or a hollow hanging Bank, under which he can ſhelter himſelf; behind a ſtone, log, or ſome ſmall bank that ſhooteth into the River, which the ſtream beareth upon, and there he lieth watching for what cometh down the ſtream, & ſuddenly catcheth it up; his hold is uſually in the deep, under a hollow place of the bank, or a ſtone that lieth hollow, which he loveth exceedingly: & ſometimes, but not ſo uſually, he is found in weeds.

3. The *Pearch* loveth a gentle ſtream of

a reasonable depth (seldom shallow) close by a hollow Bank; and though these three sorts of fish covet clear and swift Rivers, green weeds and stony gravel; yet they are sometimes found (but not in such plenty and goodness) in slow muddy Rivers.

4. *Carp*, *Tench* and *Eels*, seek mud and a still water; *Eeles* under roots or stones: a *Carp* chuseth the deepest and stillest place of Pond or River, so doth the *Tench*, and also green weeds, which he loveth exceedingly: Greatest *Eeles* love, as before, but the smaller ones are found in all sorts of rivers and soils.

5. *Pike*, *Bream* and *Chub*, chuse Sand or Clay; the *Bream* a gentle stream, and broadest part of the River; the *Pike* still Pools full of Frie, and shelters himself (the better to surprise his prey unawares) amongst Bull-rushes, water docks, or under Bushes; the *Chub* loves the same ground (is more rarely found without some tree to shade and cover him) large Rivers and streams.

6. *Barbel*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Ruff*, seek gravel and sand more than the *Bream*, and the deepest parts of the River, where shady Trees are more grateful to them, than to the *Chub* or *Chevin*.

7. The *Umber* desires Marle, Clay, clear waters, swift streams, far from the Sea (for I never saw any taken near it) & the greatest plenty

plenty of them that I know of, are found in the mountainous parts of *Derby-ſhire*, and *Stafford-ſhire*, as *Dove*, *Trent*, *Derwen*, &c.

8. *Gudgeon* deſires ſandy, gravelly, gentle ſtreams, and ſmaller Rivers, but I have known them taken in great abundance in *Trent* in *Derby-ſhire*, where it is very large, but conceive them to be in greater plenty nearer the head of that river about or above *Heywood*: I can ſay the ſame of other Rivers, and therefore conceive they love ſmaller Rivers rather than the larger, or the ſmall Brooks; for I never found them in ſo great plenty in Brooks, as ſmall Rivers: He bites beſt in the Spring till he ſpawns, and little after, till *Waſp* time.

9. *Shad*, *Thwait*, *Peel*, *Mullet*, *Suant*, and *Flounder*, love chiefly to be in or near the ſaltiſh waters, where it ebbeth and floweth; I have known the *Flounder* taken (in good plenty) in freſh Rivers, they covet Sand and Gravel, deep gentle ſtreams near the Bank, or at the end of a ſtream in a deep ſtill place: Though theſe rules may, and do hold good in the general, yet I have found them admit of particular exceptions; but every mans Habitation engageth him to one (or uſually at moſt to) two Rivers, his own experience will quickly inform him of the nature of the ſame, & the fiſh in them. I would perſwade all that love

Angling,

Angling & desire to be complete Anglers, to spend some time in all sorts of waters, Ponds: Rivers, swift & slow, stony, gravelly, muddy, & slimy; & to observe all the differences in the nature of the fish, the waters & baits, & by this means he will be able to take fish where ever he angleth; otherwise (through want of experience) he will be like the man that could read in no book but his own; besides a man (his occasions or desires drawing him from home) must only stand as an idle spectator, whilst others kill fish, but he none, & so lose the repute of a compleat Angler, how excellent soever he be at his own known River.

Fish change places with the season

Furthermore, you must understand, hath as some fish covet one soyl more than another, so they differ in their choice of place in every season, some keep all Summer long near the top, some never leave the bottom; for the former sort you may angle with a Quill or small flote near the top, with a flie or any sort of worm bred on herbs or trees, or with a flie at the top: the latter sort you will all summer long find at the tails of Wiers, Mills, Flood-gates, Arches of Bridges, or the more shallow parts of the River, in a strong, swift, or gentle stream except *Carp*, & *Tench* & *Eel*; in Winter all flie unto the deep still places; where it ebbeth and floweth they will sometimes bite

best

beſt, in the ebb moſt uſually, ſometimes when it floweth, rarely at full water, near the Arches of Bridges, Wiers, Flood-gates.

CHAP. VIII.

What times are unſeaſonable to Angle in.

When unſeaſonable to angle.

THere being a time for all things; in which with eaſe and facility the ſame may be accompliſhed, and moſt difficult, if not impoſſible at another: The skil and knowledge how to chuſe the beſt ſeaſon to angle, and how to avoid the contrary, come next to be handled; which I ſhall do firſt Negatively, *viz.* What times are unfit to angle; and then Affirmatively, which are the beſt ſeaſons.

1. When the Earth is parched with a great drought, ſo that the Rivers run with a much leſs current than uſually, its to no purpoſe to Angle; and indeed the heat of the day in Summer (except cooled by winds, and ſhadowed with Clouds, though there be no drought) you will find very little ſport, eſpecially in muddy, or very ſhallow and clear Rivers.

2. In cold, froſty, ſnowy weather, I know the Fiſh muſt eat in all ſeaſons, and that a man may kill Fiſh when he muſt firſt break the

the Ice; yet I conceive the ſport is not then worth purſuing, the extream cold taking away the delight; beſides, the indangering health (if not life) by thoſe colds, which at leaſt cauſe Rheums and Coughs: Wherefore I leave Winter and night-angling to ſuch ſtrong healthful bodies, whoſe extraordinary delight in angling, or thoſe whoſe neceſſity enforceth them to ſeek profit by their recreation in ſuch unſeaſonable times.

3. When there happeneth in the Spring-time (eſpecially) or Summer, any ſmall hoary froſt, all that day after the fiſh will not riſe freely and kindly, except in the evening, and that the ſame prove very pleaſant.

4. If the wind be extreme high, ſo that you cannot guide your tools to advantage.

5. When Shepherds or Country-men waſh their Sheep, though whilſt they are waſhing (I mean the firſt time only) the fiſh will bite exceedingly well; I ſuppoſe the filth that falleth from the Sheep doth draw them (as your baiting a place) together, and then they ſo glut themſelves, that till the whole waſhing time be over, and they have digeſted their fulneſs, they will not take any artificial baits.

6. Sharp, bitter, nipping winds, which moſt uſually blow out of the North or Eaſt eſpecially, blaſt your recreation; but

but this is rather the Seaſon, than the wind, though I alſo judge thoſe winds have a ſecret malign quality to hinder the recreation.

7. After any ſort of fiſh have ſpawned they will not bite any thing to purpoſe, untill they have recovered their ſtrength and former appetite.

8. When any clouds ariſe that will certainly bring a ſhower or ſtorm (though in the midſt of Summer) they will not bite: I have obſerv'd that tho the fiſh bite moſt eagerly, and to your hearts content, yet upon the firſt appearing of any clouds, that will certainly bring rain (though my own judgment could not then apprehend, or in the leaſt conjecture, that a ſtorm was ariſing) they have immediately left off biting; and that hath been all that hath given me to underſtand that a ſhower was coming, and that it was Prudence to ſeek ſhelter againſt the ſame.

9. When the nights prove dark & cloudy, and that the Moon ſhines not at all, or but very little, the day enſuing you will have little or no ſport, except at the ſmall ones; for when the great fiſh, that prey on others, range abroad, the leſſer hide themſelves in their holes, to eſcape the danger of devouring: for prudent Nature hath endowed all Creatures with that natural inſtinct, as to

avoid

avoid times of danger, as we see wild Beasts and beasts of prey range abroad in the Night, the tame Cattle feed in the day; and you never see the *Menow*, a Fish the *Trout* covets) stir in the Night or in dark windy weather when the great *Trouts* are abroad, but his most usual time is from an hour after Sun-rising (if the day prove fair) till an hour before Sun-set; so that when the Nights are very dark or windy, the next day rarely proves very successful to the Angler for great *Trout*.

10. In small and clear Brooks where the Mills stand and keep up the water, you will not ordinarily do any good, at the ground especially, and but little with the Flie, for the *Trout* will at such a time hardly come out of his hold.

CHAP. IX.

The best times and seasons to Angle.

When it is best to Angle.

WE now come to the Affirmative part which is the best season to angle, that as before we discovered when it would be lost labour to seek recreation: so now you may learn to improve opportunity (when it offers it self) to best advantage.

1. Calm, clear (or which is better) cool cloudy weather in Summer the wind blowing

ing gently, ſo as you may guide your tools with eaſe; in the hotteſt Months the cooler the better.

2. When the floods have carried away all the filth that the rain had waſhed from the higher grounds into the River, and that the River keepeth his uſual bounds, and looketh of a Whey-colour.

3. When a ſudden violent ſhower hath a little mudded and raiſed the River, then if you go forth in, or immediately after ſuch a ſhower, and Angle in the ſtream at the ground (with a red Worm chiefly) if there be ſtore of Fiſh in the River, you will have ſport to your own deſire.

4. A little before any Fiſh ſpawn (your own obſervation will inform you of the time by the fulneſs of their bellies) they come into the gravelly ſandy ſoards to rub and looſen their bellies, and then they bite very freely.

5. When Rivers after rain do riſe, yet ſo as they keep within their banks, in ſwift rivers the violence of the ſtream forceth the Fiſh to ſeek ſhelter and quiet eaſe, in the little and milder currents of ſmall Brooks, where they fall into larger Rivers, and behind the ends of bridges that are longer than the bredth of the River, making a low vacancy, where the Bridge defends a ſmall ſpot of ground from the violence of the ſtream,

ſtream, or in any low place near the Rivers ſide, where the fiſh may lie at reſt & ſecure from the diſturbance of the rapid ſtream; in ſuch a place (being not very deep) and at ſuch a time, you will find ſport: my ſelf have ever found it equal to the beſt ſeaſon.

6. Early in the morning from (*Carp* and *Tench* before) Sun-riſing, until eight of the clook; and from four afternoon till night: *Carp* and *Tench*, from Sun-ſet till far in the night in the hot months. In the heat of the day in *June* and *July*, when *Carps* ſhew themſelves upon the top of the water, if you take a well ſcour'd lob-worm, and caſt the ſame to them, as you would Angle with a natural flie, they will bite well; but you muſt be very careful to keep out of their ſight, or you will do no good; they bite this way beſt amongſt weeds.

7. In *March*, beginning of *April*, latter end of *September*, and all winter, fiſh bite beſt in the warmth of the day, no winds ſtirring, the air clear; in ſummer months, morning and evening is beſt, or cool cloudy weather: if you can find ſhelter, no matter how high the wind be.

8. Fiſh riſe beſt at the flie after a ſhower that hath not mudded the water, yet hath beaten the Gnats and flies into the Rivers, you may in ſuch a ſhower obſerve them riſe much if you will endure the rain; alſo the

beſt

best Months for the flie are *March*, *April*, *May*, part of *June*; in the cooler months, in the warmest time of the day; in warmer weather, about nine in the morning; three afternoon, if any gentle gale blow; sometimes in a warm evening, when the Gnats play much.

9. In calm clear and star-light nights, especially if the Moon shine, *Trouts* are as wary and fearful as in dark windy days, and stir not; but if the next day prove cloudy and windy, and the water in order, you may assure your self of sport, if there be store of fish in the River; for having abstained from food all night, they are more hungry and eager, and the darkness and windiness of the day makes them more bold to bite.

10. In small and clear Brooks if you come in, or immediately after a shower, that hath raised the water, or take it just as any Mill-water beginneth to come down, and so go along with the course of the water, *Trouts* will then bite well; for at such a time they come forth to seek food, which they expect the water will bring down with it.

11. In *May* especially, and generally all Summer, if the morning prove extream cold, as sometimes it doth (although there be no frost) the fish will not bite to any purpose, until the day wax warmer; and if it

prove cold all day long, they will bite beſt where the Sun ſhines, but not at all in the ſhady parts of the River.

Alſo after the River is cleared from a flood they riſe exceeding well, I conceive they were glutted with ground-baits, and now covet the flie, having wanted it a time.

1. A *Trout* bites beſt in a muddy riſing water, in dark, cloudy, windy weather, early in the morning, from half an hour after eight till ten; and in the afternoon, from three till after four, and ſometimes in the evening; but nine in the morning, and three in the afternoon, are his chiefeſt and moſt conſtant hours of biting at ground or flie, as the water ſuits either; *March*, *April*, *May*, and part of *June* are his chiefeſt months, though he bites well in *July*, *Auguſt* and *September*. After a ſhower in the evening he riſeth well at gnats, he taketh the *Menow* beſt when the wind is in the ſouth or ſouth-weſt, and bloweth ſtrongly, curling the waters, and raiſing high waves. The *Trout* bites beſt at the *Menow* in *March*, and beginning of *April*, and in *September*; but in the Summer months he bites not freely at the *Menow* in the day time, except the ſame be dark, and the wind very high; and in the Summer months you muſt add ſome Lead to your line, and ſink the *Menow* to the bottom,

om, for otherwiſe the *Trout* will not take him at the top in Summer, and clear weather. In little Brooks that fall into large Rivers where it ebbs & flows, only in freſh water or a little brackiſh (for the ſalt water I have not tryed) if you begin at the mouth of ſuch Brooks, juſt as the tide cometh in, and go up the Brook with the head of the tide, and return with the ebbing of the water, you will often take good *Trouts*, and have much ſport; and if the tide do not muddy the water, they will alſo riſe at the flie at ſuch a time.

2. *Salmon*, three after noon, chiefly in *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, a clear water and ſome wind; and he biteth beſt when the wind bloweth againſt the ſtream, and near the Sea.

3. The *Barbel* biteth beſt early in the morning, till nine or ten of the clock; the latter end of *May*, *June*, *July*, and beginning of *Auguſt*.

4. The *Pearch* biteth well all the day long, in cool cloudy weather, yet chiefly from eight in the morning till ten; & from a little before three in the afternoon, till about five; and ſometimes later, eſpecially in hot weather and midſt of Summer: The *Ruff* is much of his nature and diſpoſition.

5. *Carp* and *Tench*, morning and evening

very early and late, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, or indeed in the night in the ſtill parts of the River.

6. A *Chevin* from Sun-riſing or earlier (at Snails eſpecially, for in the heat of the day he careth not for them) in *June* and *July*, till about eight; again at three afternoon at ground or flie; and his chief flie which he moſt delights in, is a great *Moth*, with a very great head, not unlike to an Owl, with whitiſh wings & yellowiſh body (you may find them flying abroad in Summer evenings in Gardens) ſome wind ſtirring, large Rivers chiefly, ſtreams or ſhade: he will take a ſmall *Lamprey* or *Seven-eyes*, and *Eel-brood*, either of them about a ſtraws bigneſs.

7. *Pike* bites beſt about three afternoon, in a clear water, a gentle gale; *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, *October*, uſually in the ſtill places, or at leaſt in a gentle ſtream. In the months of *Auguſt*, *September*, and all Winter, he bites all the day long, eſpecially about three afternoon, the water clear, and the day windy: In *April*, *May*, *June*, and beginning of *July*, he bites beſt early in the morning, and late in the evening; I could never obſerve that he would bite any thing to purpoſe in the night, of all the year.

8. A *Bream* from about Sun-riſing till eight, in a muddy water, a good gale of wind;

wind; and in Ponds the higher the wind, and where the waves are higheſt, and nearer the middle of the Pond, the better; end of *May*, *June*, *July* (eſpecially) and *Auguſt*, in a gentle ſtream or near to it.

9. *Roach* and *Dace* all day long, beſt at the top, at flie or *Oak-worm* principally, and at all other worms bred on herbs or trees. *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *&c.* in plain Rivers or Ponds, under Water-dock leaves, under ſhady trees.

10. *Gudgeon*, *April*, and till he have ſpawned, in *May*, and a little after that till *Waſp* time, except in cool weather or after a ſhower or Land-floud; and then to the end of the year all day long, in or near to a gentle ſtream. When you angle for the *Gudgeon*, ſtir or rake the Sand or Gravel with a long pole, and they will gather to that place and bite much the better.

11. *Flounder* all day in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, in a good ſwift ſtream, ſometimes in the ſtill deep; but not ſo ordinarily as in the ſtream.

CHAP. X.

General Obſervations.

ALthough this whole Treatiſe be in the greateſt part of it only General Obſervations, yet there are ſome Directions which fall not under any conſideration; but are as applicable to the flie as the ground angle; and as equally uſeful (for their practical part) in the one kind of angling as the other, For although all ground-baits are uſeful and certain almoſt in every River, yet it is not ſo in the Flie, which varieth in kind, colour, or proportion well nigh in every River; and therefore no general Rules (as I conceive) can be given in that particular, more than are already delivered: except every particular circumſtance ſhould be mentioned, which would be too tedious, and indeed unneceſſary to any ingenious nature; who may with eaſe from the former general Rules, draw particular concluſions; by the help of his own Practice and Experience in thoſe Rivers he moſt uſually and frequently angleth at; For as to ſuch Rivers of which a man hath had no experience, he muſt either learn ſomething (I mean as to flie-angling) from

from such as know the River, otherwise (though the most expert of Anglers) he will be at a loss, until his own Experience (which by reason of his knowledg in variety of Rivers and Soils, they walk through) will adapt him with more ease and facility, to make Observations upon the same: But these that follow are of an universal use and nature.

1. Let the Anglers Apparel be sad, dark colours, as sad grays, tawny, purple, hair or musk-colour.

2. Use Shoomakers wax to your silk or thred, with which you make or mend either Rod or Flie; it holds more firmly, and sticketh better than any other.

3. Into such places as you use to Angle at, once a week at least cast in all sorts of Corn boyled soft, Grains washed in blood, blood dried and cast into pieces, Snails, worms chopt small, pieces of fowl or beasts Guts, beasts Livers; for *Carp* and *Tench* you cannot feed too often, or too much, his course draweth the Fish to the place you desire: And to keep them together, cast about twenty grains of ground-Malt at a time, now and then as you Angle; and indeed all sorts of Baits are good to cast in, especially whilst you are Angling with that Bait, principally *Cadbait*, *Gentles*, & *Wasps*,

and you will find they will ſnap up yours more eagerly, and with leſs ſuſpicion; but by no means when you angle in a ſtream caſt them in at your hook, but ſomething above where you angle, leſt the ſtream carry them beyond your hook, and ſo inſtead of drawing them to you, you draw them from you.

4. If you deſire to feed the Fiſh, ſo as you may draw them into a ſtream, where you may rationally conclude that all ſuch feeding as is caſt into the ſame after the ordinary manner will be carried away: you muſt get Boxes of Tin, Wood, or Iron made full of holes, ſo wide as the Worms may creep through them, and with a Weight of Lead faſtned to the Tin or Wood to ſink them (filled with Worms) in the ſtream, faſten a ſtrong Cord or Packthred to the Boxes, to recover them again at your pleaſure; this way the Worms will come forth leaſurely and not all at once, and the Fiſh will be about the Boxes to gather them up as they crawl forth.

5. Take fine Clay, Barley, Malt ground, Water, or Milk, or (which I like better) blood, make all into a Paſte; and if you pleaſe put ſome of thoſe ſtrong ſented Oyls, named before Page 55. or Gum of Ivy; make this into ſeveral large Cakes, and

and caſt them into the ſtream where you deſign to draw the Fiſh, and they will come to ſuck at it, and if you pleaſe you may ſtitch Worms unto it, or mould their heads into it. This is the beſt way to feed in a ſtream for *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Umber*, *&c.* that I have heard any Angler diſcourſe of, or known practiſed. But if after you have baited any place twice or thrice, yet notwithſtanding when you come to Angle there if you find no ſport, if no man hath been before you at that place, or that there appear no grand impediment in the ſeaſon or water; you may rationally conclude, ſome ravenous *Pike* or greedy *Pearch* hath taken up that place for his quarter, and affrights all other Fiſh, that they dare not adventure thither (as Merchants put not forth to Sea, when Pirates inteſt the ſame) for fear of being made a prey; to remedy which evil, you muſt have your *Trowle* and a Bait of thoſe named for the *Pike* ready, and ſo fall to work for him; and when that impediment is removed you may expect ſport.

6. Deſtroy all Beaſts or Birds that devour the Fiſh or their ſpawn, and endeavour (whether in Authority or not) to ſee all Statutes put in execution againſt ſuch as uſe unlawful Nets or means to take Fiſh; eſpecially

ſpecially bare Netting and Night-hooking.

7. Get your Rods and Tops without knots, they are dangerous for breaking.

8. Keep your Rod dry, leſt it rot, and not near the fire, leſt it grow brittle.

9. In drought wet your Rod a little before you begin to Angle.

10. *Lob-worms*, *Dew-worms*, and great Garden-worms all one.

11. When you angle at ground, or with the natural Flie, your Line muſt not exceed the length of your Rod. For the *Trout* at ground it muſt be ſhorter, and in ſome caſes not half the length, as in ſmall Brooks or Woody Rivers, either at ground or with the natural Flie.

12. When you have hooked a good Fiſh, have an eſpecial care to keep your Rod bent, leſt he run to the end of the Line, and break your hook or his hold.

13. Such tops or ſtocks as you get, muſt not be uſed till fully ſeaſoned, which will not be in leſs time than one year and a quarter; But I like them better if kept till they be two years old.

14. The firſt Fiſh you catch take up his belly, and you may then ſee his ſtomach: it is known by its largeneſs and place, lying from the Gills to the ſmall Guts; take it out very tenderly (if you bruiſe it your labour

bour and design are lost) and with a sharp knife cut it open without bruising, and then you find his food in it, and thereby discover what bait the fish at that instant takes best, flies or ground baits, and so fit them accordingly.

15. Fish are frighted with any the least sight or motion, therefore by all means keep out of sight, either by sheltring your self behind some bush or tree, or by standing so far off the Rivers side, that you can see nothing but your flie or flote; to effect this, a long Rod at ground, and a long Line with the artificial flie may be of use to you. And here I meet with two different opinions & practises, some always cast their flie & bait up the water, and so they say nothing occurreth to the Fishes sight but the Line: others fish down the River, and so suppose (the Rod and Line being long) the quantity of water takes away, or at least lesseneth the Fishes sight; but the other affirm, that Rod and Line, and perhaps your self, are seen also. In this difference of opinions I shall only say, in small Brooks you may angle upwards, or else in great Rivers you must wade, as I have known some, who thereby got the *Sciatica*, and I would not wish you to purchase pleasure at so dear a rate; besides casting up the River you cannot

not keep your Line out of the water, which we noted for a fault before; and they that use this way confess that if in casting your flie, the line fall into the water before it, the flie were better uncast, because it frights the fish; then certainly it must do it this way, whether the flie fall first or not, the line must first come to the fish or fall on him which undoubtedly will fright him: Therefore my opinion is, that you angle down the River, for the other way you traverse twice so much, and beat not so much ground as downwards.

16. Keep the Sun (and Moon, if Night) before you, if your eyes will endure it, (which I much question) at least be sure to have those Planets on your side, for if they be on your back, your Rod will with its shadow offend much, and the Fish see further and clearer, when they look towards those Lights, than the contrary; as you may experiment thus, in a dark Night if a man come betwixt you and any light, you see him clearly: but not at all if the light come betwixt you and him.

17. When you angle for the *Trout*, you need not make above three or four tryals in one place, either with Flie or ground-bait; for he will then either take it, or make an offer, or not stir at all, and so you lose time

time to ſtay there any longer.

18. To preſerve Hazels, whether ſtocks or tops from worm-eating or rotting; twice or thrice in the year, as you ſee neceſſity requires, rub them all over with Sallet-Oyle, or Lind-ſeed Oyle; ſweet Butter which was never ſalted, or Tallow, and with much rubbing chaſe the ſame very well into them; and if they be bored, pour into them either of the Oyles, or the Butter or Tallow melted, untill they be full; if you uſe Butter or Tallow, keep them ſo warm as that they freeze not, or grow hard by cooling: Let them ſtand thus a day or night, more or leſs, as you ſee the Oyle ſink into them; afterward pour the Oyle back into the Bottle, to ſerve again for the ſame purpoſe another time; you muſt keep the end that ſtands downwards cloſe ſtopped, leſt the Oyls, Butter, or Tallow run out as it is put in.

19. When you Angle for the *Salmon* or *Trout*, and of all Day long have had little, or rather no ſport, neither at ground or with the Flie; the very Night following, eſpecially in the beginning of it, and until Midnight, or near it, they will not fail to bite (at ground or Flie, as the ſeaſon and water ſute beſt for either) very freely and eagerly if the weather be not nipping cold or froſty.

20. Fiſh

20. Fish take all sorts of baits most eagerly and freely, and with the least suspicion or bogling, when you present the same unto them in such order and manner, as Nature affords them, or as themselves ordinarily gather them.

21. if you desire to angle in a very swift stream, and have your bait rest in one place, and yet not over burden your Line with Lead, take a Stone-bow or small Pistol-bullet, make a hole through it, wider at each side than in the middle; yet so open in every place, as that the Line may easily pass through it without any stop; place a very small piece of Lead on your Line, that may keep this Bullet from falling nearer the Hook than that piece of Lead, and if your float be made large enough to bear above water against the force of the stream, the Fish will, when they bite, run away with the bait as securely, as if there were no more weight upon your line, than the little piece of Lead, because the hole in the Bullet gives passage to the Line, as if it were not there.

22. When Cattle in Summer come into the Foards, their Dung draweth the Fish unto the lower end of the Foard; at such a time angle for a *Chevin* with baits fit for him, and you will have sport.

23. Before

23. Before you ſet your Hook to your Line, arm the Line by turning the ſilk five or ſix times about the link, and ſo with the ſame ſilk ſet on your Hook; this preſerves your Line, that your Hook cut it not in ſunder, and alſo that it will not, when you uſe the caſt Flie, ſnap off ſo eaſily, which it is very ſubject to do.

24. In very wet ſeaſons, when the Rains raiſe the Rivers, and almoſt continually keep them equal with their Banks, or at leaſt above their ordinary height; the *Trouts* leave the Rivers and larger Brooks, and flee into ſuch little Brooks as ſcarce run at all in dry Summers.

25. To all ſorts of Paſtes add Flax, Cotton, or Wool, to keep the Paſte from falling off your hook.

26. Deny not part of what your endeavours ſhall purchaſe unto any ſick or indigent perſons, but willingly diſtribute a part of your purchaſe to thoſe who may deſire a ſhare.

27. If you cut Weeds in a River, the better to make a place clear to angle in for *Carps*; they will not (although before the cutting of the Weeds they haunted the place very much) come there again of two or three Months.

28. If you come to angle for *Carp* in ſome

ſome broad place of Pond or River, where you cannot reach with any ordinary Rod or Line; If you take a Boat that you may more eaſily caſt your Bait to that part you deſigne to angle in: and although you have Bull-ruſhes or Weeds betwixt you and it, ſo as you may hope to ſhadow your ſelf from the Fiſhes ſight; yet though you row never ſo circumſpectly, the Boat will ſo move the water, that you will affright them, ſo as for that time you will have no ſport: therefore you muſt have a Rod of ſuch a length as will from the Bank without a Boat reach the place, or you will kill no *Carps*, they are ſo very wary and fearful.

29. The Eyes of thoſe Fiſhes you catch, if you pull them out and uſe them on the Hook, are an excellent Bait for moſt ſort of Fiſh.

30. Make not a daily practice (which is nothing elſe but a profeſſion) of any recreation, leſt your immoderate love and delight therein, bring a croſs with it, and blaſt all your content and pleaſure in the ſame.

FINIS.

THE

TABLE.

A Page

ANgling Tools when to provide, 2
Angling the ſeveral kinds, 11
Angling for the *Trout* at ground, 31
Angling in the Night, 33
Angling with the *Menow*, 34
Angling with the *Trowl* for a *Pike*, 35
Angling for the *Eel*, 39
Angling for the *Roch*, 42
Angling at ground, Directions, 40
Ant-flies to keep, 67
Angle in a ſwift ſtream how. 93

B

Bags for Worms, 10
Barbel his Baits, 51
his time of ſpawning, 51
his haunt, 72
his chiefeſt time of biting, 83
Barkworm, 65
Bleak his Baits, haunt, *&c.* as the *Roch*, 56
Blood how to order, 66
Bobs their kinds how to find, 58
how to keep them, 63
Boxes for *Flies*, *Cankers*, *&c.* 10

Bobbing for *Eels*, 39
Brogling for *Eels*, *ibid.*
Breaking hold in tender-mouth'd Fiſh,
how to prevent, 48
Bream his Baits, 58
his ſpawning-time, *ibid.*
his haunt, 72
his beſt time of biting. 84
Bulhead his Baits. 60

C

Cadbait his kinds; 63
how to keep them, 64
how to uſe them, 29
Cane or Reed its beſt uſe 3
Carp his Baits, 52
his time of ſpawning, *ibid.*
his haunts, 72
his beſt times of biting, 83
Chevin or *Chub* his Baits, 56
his ſpawning-time, 57
his haunt, 72
his beſt ſeaſons of biting. 83

D

Dace his Baits, 56
his time of ſpawning, *ibid.*
his haunt, 91
his beſt time of biting, 85
Depth of water to try. 9

E

Eel his Baits, 55

his

his haunt, 72
his beſt times of biting in a muddy water, 44

F

Flie natural to angle with, 13
directions for it, 16
Flie, what Fiſh riſe beſt at it, 13
when each Flie cometh in, 14
how to find that time, 15
when Fiſh riſe beſt at the Flie, 13
Flie artificial angling with it, 17
Flie artificial to make, 18
directions in making it, 23
directions how to uſe the ſame, *ibid.*
directions as to the waters, 24
Feeding in a ſtream, 87
Feeding Fiſh the beſt way, 88
Float to make, 9
Flag-worm, 68
Flounder his Baits, 57
his haunt, 73
his beſt time of biting, 85
Fiſh change places with the ſeaſon. 74

G

Gudgeon his Baits, 55
his time of ſpawning, *ibid.*
his haunt, 73
what time he biteth beſt, 81
Great Fiſh how to land, 10
Grain how to order, 66

Grayling, vide *Umber*.

H

Hooks their ſhape, 8
how to ſet them to the Line, *ibid.*
how to ſharpen them, 9
Hooks how to arm. 94

L

Lines how to make, 6
Lines, Links, Flies, to carry 11
Loach his haunt, baits, *&c.* 59

M

Menow his baits, haunt, *&c.* 57
Mullet his baits, 58
his haunt, biting-time as the *Flounder*, 85
Maggot or *Gentles* to breed and keep, 68

N

Night, what time fiſh certainly bite, 93

O

Oke-worm, and how to keep, 63
when and how the Fiſh take it beſt, 17 & 66

P

Panier, 11
Paſtes to make, 60
Pearch his baits, 51
his time of ſpawning, 52
his haunt, 71
what times he biteth beſt, 83
Pike his Baits, 54
his time of ſpawning, *ibid.*

his

his haunt, 72
what ſeaſons he biteth beſt, 84
to *Trowl* for him, 35
to halter him, 49

R

Roch his baits, 54
his time of ſpawning, *ibid.*
his haunt, 72
what times he biteth beſt, 84
Rods of Hazel to preſerve, 92
Ruffe his baits, 55
his haunts, 71
what times he biteth beſt. 83

S

Salmon his baits, 47
his ſpawning time, *ibid.*
his haunt, 70
what ſeaſons he biteth beſt, 82
Shad, Suant, &c. their baits, haunt, biting-times as the *Flounder*, 58
Sight of Fiſh how to avoid, 90
Spawn of Fiſh how to uſe, 65
Swivel how to uſe. 34
Sun, offence by it to avoid. 91

T

Tench his baits, 53
his haunt, 72
what times he biteth beſt, 83
Trout his baits, 49
his ſpawning-time, *ibid.* *ibid.*

his

his haunt, 71
what ſeaſons he biteth beſt; 82
Trout to angle at the ground, 31
Trout you have miſſed to take, 34
Trouts in wet ſeaſon where to find, 94

U

Umber his baits, 49
his haunt, 72
what times he biteth beſt. 82

W

Waſps, Dores, &c. how to order, 66
Worms how to order, 61, 62
Worm Bags, 10
Wet ſeaſons to find *Trouts*, 94
When Fiſh bite certainly in the Night, 93

FINIS.